Trials@uspto.gov
571-272-7822

Paper 8
Date: April 1, 2024

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

ZIMVIE, INC. AND ZIMMER BIOMET SPINE, INC.,
Petitioner,

v.

ROGER P. JACKSON,
Patent Owner.

IPR2023-01433
Patent 11,129,646 B2

Before ULRIKE W. JENKS, SHERIDAN K. SNEDDEN, and ZHENYU YANG, *Administrative Patent Judges.*

YANG, *Administrative Patent Judge*.

DECISION
Denying Institution of *Inter Partes* Review
35 U.S.C. § 314

I. INTRODUCTION

ZimVie, Inc. and Zimmer Biomet Spine, Inc. (collectively, "Petitioner") filed a Petition (Paper 2, "Pet."), seeking *inter partes* review of claims 1–20 of U.S. Patent No. 11,129,646 B2 (Ex. 1001, "the '646 patent"). Dr. Roger P. Jackson ("Patent Owner") filed a Patent Owner Preliminary Response. Paper 6 ("Prelim. Resp.").

We have authority under 35 U.S.C. § 314, which provides that an *inter partes* review may not be instituted "unless . . . there is a reasonable likelihood that the petitioner would prevail with respect to at least 1 of the claims challenged in the petition." 35 U.S.C. § 314(a).

For the reasons provided below, we determine Petitioner has not demonstrated a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail with respect to at least one claim challenged in the Petition. Accordingly, we deny institution of *inter partes* review.

A. Related Matters

According to Petitioner, Patent Owner asserted the '646 patent against Petitioner in *Jackson v. ZimVie Inc.*, Case No. 1:22-cv-00891 (D. Del.). Pet. 1. Petitioner also filed IPR2023-01430,[1] IPR2023-01431, and IPR2023-01432, seeking *inter partes* review of three other patents related to the '646 patent. *Id.*

B. The '646 Patent and Related Background

The '646 patent relates to a medical implant assembly including a receiver and a plug. Ex. 1001, Abstract; *see also id.* at 1:27–31 ("The present invention is directed to structure[s] for joining together parts of a medical

[1] Patent Owner filed a statutory disclaimer disclaiming all claims of the patent challenged in IPR2023-01430.

implant, in particular to closure mechanisms for use with open bone anchors in spinal surgery, and in some embodiments thereof, for use with spinal bone anchors such as polyaxial screws.").

The '646 patent explains that bone anchors, such as bone screws, were used in many types of spinal surgery to secure implants to vertebrae along the spinal column to stabilize and/or adjust spinal alignment. *Id.* at 1:32–38. Both open-ended or closed-ended bone anchors were known. *Id.* at 1:39–40. According to the '646 patent, open-ended bone screws typically "include a threaded shank with a head or receiver having a pair of parallel projecting branches or arms which form a yoke with a U-shaped slot or channel to receive a rod or other longitudinal connecting member." *Id.* at 1:54–58. "The open-ended head or rod receiver portion of such implants typically includes a pair of spaced arms forming a channel closed by a closure member after the rod or other longitudinal connecting member is placed in the channel." *Id.* at 1:61–65.

The '646 patent states that

> spinal misalignments, irregularities and the placement of other surgical tools make it difficult to place the rod or other connector between the arms of the implant while a closure structure is mated with the open implant as well as used to push the rod or other connector downwardly into the implant. For example, when the closure is a cylindrical plug having a single start helically wound guide and advancement structure, such structure must be aligned with mating structure on one of the implant arms and then rotated until a portion of the structure is captured by mating guide and advancement structure on both arms of the implant, all the while the closure is being pressed down on the rod while other forces are pushing and pulling the rod back out of the implant.

Id. at 2:14–27.

The '646 patent discloses a closure structure with one or more helically wound guide and advancement features, each feature having a start structure located at or near a bottom surface of the closure, "each start structure simultaneously engaging and being captured by each of the spaced arms of the open implant upon initial rotation of the closure structure with respect to the open implant arms." *Id.* at 2:39–47. Specifically, the '646 patent discloses a double-start closure "having two helically wound forms thereon, each form having a start structure for simultaneously engaging a mating helical form on a respective open implant arm." *Id.* at 2:48–51.

C. Illustrative Claims

Among the challenged claims, claims 1 and 12 are independent. They are illustrative of the claimed subject matter and are reproduced below.

> 1. A medical implant assembly comprising:
>
> a receiver having an upper portion with an inner surface at least partially configured as a helically wound thread extending up to a top surface of the receiver, and a channel formed in the upper portion of the receiver and configured to receive a rod; and
>
> a plug being threaded and configured to be positioned within the upper portion, the plug having an axis of rotation, a continuously helically wound thread form, and a substantially flat bottom surface with an annular outer edge, the substantially flat bottom surface configured to engage the rod, the continuously helically wound thread form having a start structure with an upper surface extending between a root and a crest of the continuously helically wound thread form, the start structure having a leading face extending below the upper surface to a lower surface of the start structure, the leading face including a partial concave surface adjacent the root and a partial convex surface adjacent the crest, the partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other, the lower surface of the start structure being spaced apart and above the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom

surface so as to not be connected with the annular outer edge thereof.

Ex. 1001, 25:12–37.

12. A medical implant assembly comprising:

a receiver having an upper portion with an inner surface, a top surface, and a channel, the inner surface having a helically wound thread extending up to the top surface, the channel configured to receive a rod; and

a plug configured for positioning within the upper portion of the receiver, the plug having an axis of rotation, a continuously helically wound thread form comprising a first thread and a second thread, a substantially flat bottom surface with an annular outer edge, and an outward facing surface encircling the substantially flat bottom surface, the first thread comprising a first start structure and a first upper surface extending between a first root and a first crest of the first thread, the first start structure including a first leading face extending below the first upper surface to a first lower surface, the second thread comprising a second start structure and a second upper surface extending between a second root and a second crest of the second thread, the second start structure including a second leading face extending below the second upper surface to a second lower surface, the first and second leading faces each including a partial concave surface adjacent the first and second root, respectively, and a partial convex surface adjacent the first and second crest, respectively, the partial concave and partial convex surfaces of the first and second leading faces each defined by a radius of curvature, the first lower surface of the first thread and from the second lower surface of the second thread are spaced above and apart from the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom surface of the plug.

Id. at 26:26–57.

D. Asserted Challenges to Patentability

Petitioner asserts the following challenges to patentability:

Claim(s) Challenged	35 U.S.C. §[2]	Reference(s)
1, 2, 4–9	102 or 103	The '477 publication[3]
1, 2, 4–9	103	The '477 publication, Kirschman[4]
10, 11	103	The '477 publication, Johnson,[5] or the '477 publication, Kirschman, Johnson
3, 12–18, 20	103	The '477 publication, Boschert[6]
3, 12–18, 20	103	The '477 publication, Boschert, Kirschman
19	103	The '477 publication, Boschert, Johnson, or the '477 publication, Boschert, Kirschman, Johnson

To support its Petition, Petitioner relies on the declaration of Carl McMillin, Ph.D. Ex. 1003.

---

[2] The Leahy-Smith America Invents Act ("AIA"), Pub. L. No. 112–29, 125 Stat. 284, 287–88 (2011), amended 35 U.S.C. §§ 102, 103, effective March 16, 2013. Because the '646 patent has an effective filing date before March 16, 2013, we apply the pre-AIA version of §§ 102, 103.

[3] Jackson, US Patent Application Publication No. 2005/0267477 A1, published December 1, 2005 (Ex. 1005, "the '477 publication").

[4] Kirschman, US Patent Application Publication No. 2011/0152947 A1, published June 23, 2011 (Ex. 1007, "Kirschman").

[5] Johnson et al., US Patent Application Publication No. 2007/0088357 A1, published April 19, 2007 (Ex. 1008, "Johnson").

[6] Boschert, US Patent No. 7,857,834 B2, issued December 28, 2010 (Ex. 1006, "Boschert").

II. ANALYSIS

A. Claim Construction

In an *inter partes* review, we construe a claim term "using the same claim construction standard that would be used to construe the claim in a civil action under 35 U.S.C. [§] 282(b)." 37 C.F.R. § 42.100(b). Under this standard, we construe the claim term "in accordance with the ordinary and customary meaning of such claim as understood by one of ordinary skill in the art and the prosecution history pertaining to the patent." *Id.*; *see also Phillips v. AWH Corp.*, 415 F.3d 1303, 1312–13 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (en banc) (holding that the words of a claim "are generally given their ordinary and customary meaning," which is "the meaning that the term would have to a person of ordinary skill in the art in question at the time of the invention, i.e., as of the effective filing date of the patent application").

Claim 1 recites "the start structure having a leading face . . . the leading face including a partial concave surface . . . and a partial convex surface." Similarly, claim 12 recites "the first start structure including a first leading face," "the second start structure including a second leading face," and "the first and second leading faces each including a partial concave surface . . . and a partial convex surface."

Petitioner argues that based on the disclosure of the '646 patent, "and consistent with the plain meaning, a POSA would have understood that a 'start structure' is the beginning of a thread and the 'leading face' is the forward most surface of the thread in the direction the thread is to be rotated." Pet. 15–16 (citing Ex. 1001, 9:38–42, Fig. 5; Ex. 1003 ¶¶ 158, 159). Petitioner further asserts that the concave portion is "inwardly curving," and the convex portion is "outwardly curving." *Id.* at 16 (citing Ex. 1003 ¶ 161).

Patent Owner does not propose any claim construction for these terms. *See* Prelim. Resp. 7. Instead, Patent Owner asserts that "there are no express constructions for the Board to consider or the Patent Owner to address." *Id.* We disagree with Patent Owner's allegation because Petitioner sufficiently explains the plain meaning of the terms "start structure," "leading face," "concave surface portion," and "convex surface portion." Pet. 15–16. On this record, and for purposes of this Decision, we adopt Petitioner's proposed constructions of these terms.

Claim terms need only be construed to the extent necessary to resolve the controversy. *Wellman, Inc. v. Eastman Chem. Co.*, 642 F.3d 1355, 1361 (Fed. Cir. 2011). On this record, and for purposes of this Decision, we see no need to address the construction of any other claim term.

B. Alleged Unpatentability of Claims 1, 2, and 4–9 over the '477 Publication

Petitioner asserts that the '477 publication anticipates or renders obvious claims 1, 2, and 4–9 of the '646 patent. Pet. 26–45. Based on this record, and for at least the following reasons, we determine Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in this assertion.

1. The '477 Publication

The '477 publication relates to "[a] closure for use in conjunction with an open receiver of a medical implant for capturing and locking a rod member in the implant." Ex. 1005, Abstract. The implant may be an open or closed element used in a spinal implant system, such as a bone screw. *Id.* ¶ 7.

Specifically, the '477 publication teaches that

> [a] typical implant for use with a closure of the invention includes a receiver having a pair of spaced arms with an open channel located therebetween. The channel receives a rod or

> other elongate structure. A closure of the invention is used to capture and fix the rod in the receiver subsequent to the receiver receiving the rod. In particular, internal surfaces of the arms of the receiver include a discontinuous guide and advancement structure, and the closure includes cooperating external guide and advancement structure so as to be rotated and driven into the receiver. Once the closure is matingly received in the receiver, the closure acts to capture the rod member.

Id.

The '477 publication depicts an embodiment of the disclosed closure in Figure 7, reproduced below.

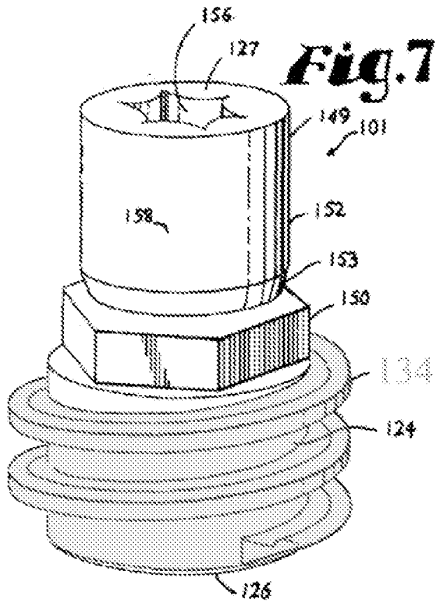


Fig.7.

Reproduced above is Figure 7 of the '477 publication, as annotated by Petitioner. Pet. 32. It is an enlarged and perspective view of a bone screw closure, showing the closure 101 having a cylindrical closure body 124 with a guide and advancement structure 134. Ex. 1005 ¶¶ 20, 41. The closure 101 also includes a break-off head 149 and a removal head 150 that are coaxially attached to the body 124. *Id.* ¶ 42.

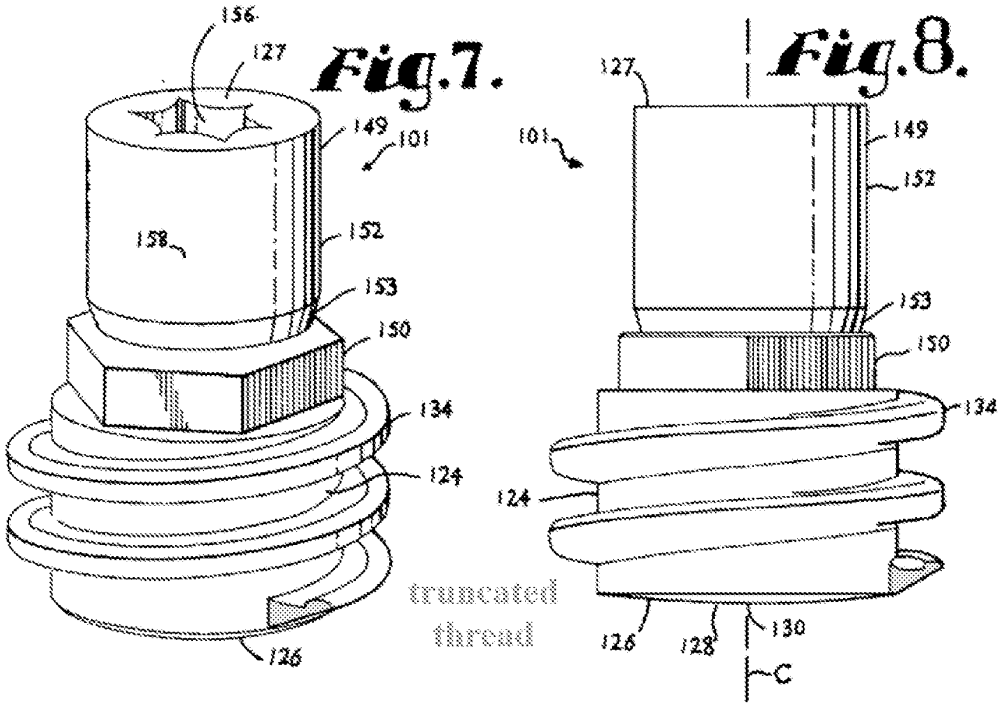
2. Analysis

We focus our analysis on claim 1. Petitioner contends that the '477 publication discloses or suggest each limitation of claim 1. Pet. 26–38.

Patent Owner counters that Petitioner fails to show the '477 publication teaches (1) "a substantially flat bottom surface with an annular outer edge . . . the lower surface of the start structure being spaced apart and above the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom surface so as to not be connected with the annular outer edge thereof" (Prelim. Resp. 12–16); (2) "the leading face including a partial concave surface adjacent the root and a partial convex surface adjacent the crest" (*id.* at 20–34); and (3) "the partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other" (*id.* at 35–41). We focus our analysis on Patent Owner's latter two arguments. Based on this record, and as explained below, we find them persuasive.

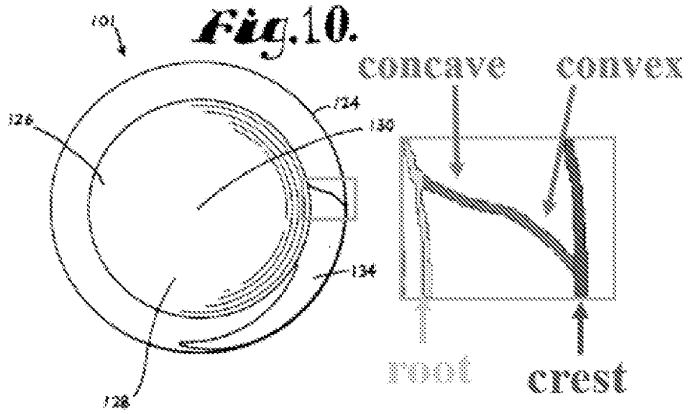
a. Leading Face

Petitioner argues that the '477 publication discloses "a truncated thread start" with a leading face. Pet. 27–28 (citing Ex. 1003 ¶ 186; Ex. 1005, Figs. 7, 8), 35 (citing Ex. 1003 ¶ 233; Ex. 1005, Figs. 7, 8). Petitioner annotates Figures 7 and 8 as follows:



The figures above are reproductions of Petitioner's annotated Figures 7 and 8 of the '477 publication. Pet. 28. We find these figures sufficiently supports Petitioner's assertion that the '477 publication discloses a start structure having a leading face. Patent Owner does not disagree.

Petitioner next refers to an annotated Figure 10, reproduced below:



Ex. 1005, Fig. 10

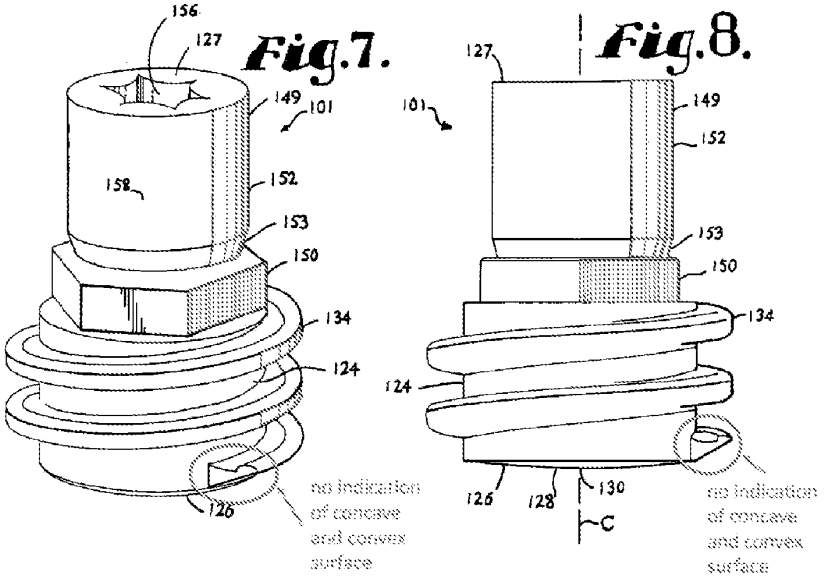
The figure above is a reproduction of Petitioner's annotated Figure 10 of the '477 publication. Pet. 29, 36. Petitioner asserts that this figure shows "the leading face of the start structure is formed in an s-curve, with both concave and convex curves." *Id.* at 35 (citing Ex. 1003 ¶ 234); *see also id.* at 28 (citing Ex. 1003 ¶ 186; Ex. 1005, Fig. 10) ("The leading face is curvate and formed in an s-curve, with a partial concave surface adjacent the root and a partial convex surface adjacent the crest."). We are not persuaded.

As Patent Owner correctly points out, the '477 publication does not describe, or even identify, the line in Figure 10 that Petitioner relies on as the leading face. Prelim. Resp. 20. Thus, the only evidence purportedly supports Petitioner's argument that the unidentified and undescribed line is the leading surface is Dr. McMillin's testimony. *See* Ex. 1003 ¶¶ 186, 234. In paragraph 186, Dr. McMillin's testimony merely repeats, nearly verbatim, Petitioner's argument, without any explanation or other evidentiary support. *See id.* ¶ 186. As a result, we accord limited weight to this testimony. *See Xerox Corp. v. Bytemark, Inc.*, IPR2022-00624, Paper 9 at 15 (PTAB Aug. 24, 2022) (precedential).

In paragraph 234, Dr. McMillin testifies that an ordinarily skilled artisan would have recognized the unidentified and undescribed line of Figure 10 "as the leading face of the thread, at least because it is the only feature shown that matches with leading face shown in Fig. 8." Ex. 1003 ¶ 234. We find this testimony inconsistent with the disclosures in Figures 7 and 8.

Figures 7, 8, and 10 show the same bone screw closure from different viewpoints. Ex. 1005 ¶¶ 20, 21, 23 (stating Figure 7 shows the "perspective view," Figure 8 shows the "front elevational view of the closure of FIG. 7,"

and Figure 10 shows the "bottom plan view of the closure of FIG. 7"). Patent Owner contends that Figures 7 and 8 do not show any curved surface in the leading face. Prelim. Resp. 21–24. Patent Owner annotates Figures 7 and 8 as follows:



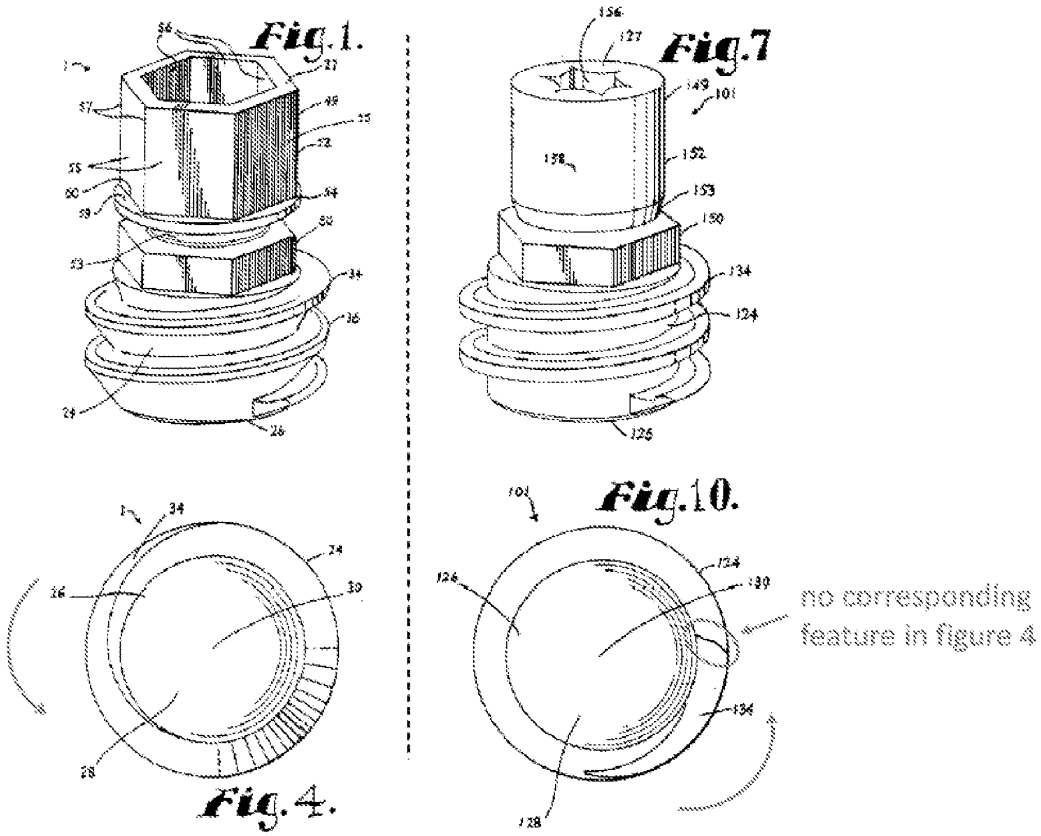
The figures above are the reproduction of Patent Owner's annotated Figures 7 and 8 of the '477 publication. Prelim. Resp. 23. We agree with Patent Owner that Figures 7 and 8 appear to depict a flat surface for the leading face, rather than a partially concave surface and a partially convex surface, as required in claim 1. *Id.* at 22–23.

We are also persuaded by Patent Owner's showing that, in the challenged '646 patent, the partially concave and partially convex surface is "visible across all views." *Id.* at 23–24 (citing Ex. 1001, Figs. 1, 2, 5); *see also* Ex. 1001, 3:42–45 (explaining each of Figures 1 and 2 is a perspective view of the same closure), 3:55–56 (explaining Figure 5 is a bottom plan view of the closure of Figure 1). In other words, if the '477 publication taught the curved leading face, the partially concave and partially convex

surface would have been visible not only in Figure 10 (the bottom plan view), but also in Figures 7 and 8 (the perspective view). Yet, the leading faces shown in Figures 7 and 8 appear flat. This contradicts Dr. McMillin's testimony that the leading face represented by the unidentified and undescribed line of Figure 10 "matches with leading face shown in Fig. 8." *See* Ex. 1003 ¶ 234. As a result, we find Dr. McMillin's testimony insufficient to support Petitioner's argument on this point.

Petitioner's argument that the unidentified and undescribed line in Figure 10 shows a leading face is also inconsistent with the disclosure for another embodiment in the '477 publication. The '477 publication teaches two embodiments of bone screw closure, one shown in Figures 1–4, the other in Figures 7–10. Ex. 1005 ¶¶ 14–17, 20–23; *see also* Pet. 27 ("The '477 Publication discloses two embodiments of the closure."). Petitioner acknowledges that "[t]he primary difference between the embodiments is the shape of the break-off head." Pet. 27 (citing Ex. 1005 ¶¶ 33, 43, Figs. 1, 7). Thus, we agree with Patent Owner that an ordinarily skilled artisan "would understand the leading face between the two embodiments is substantially the same." Prelim. Resp. 28.

Patent Owner annotates Figures 1, 4, 7 and 10, which we reproduce below:



The figures above are the reproduction of Patent Owner's annotated Figures 1, 4, 7, and 10 of the '477 publication. Prelim. Resp. 28. Figures 1 and 4 depict the same first embodiment of a closure from the perspective view and bottom plan view, respectively. Ex. 1005 ¶¶ 14, 17. Similarly, Figures 7 and 10 depict the same second embodiment of a closure from the perspective view and bottom plan view, respectively. Ex. 1005 ¶¶ 20, 23.

Patent Owner argues that

> Given the similarity in their leading faces, one would expect the same depiction of the leading faces across all embodiments. However, the bottom view of Figure 1 (as shown in Figure 4) does not contain the same line depicted in the bottom view of Figure 7 (as shown in Figure 10) that Petitioner relies on[.]

Prelim. Resp. 28.

We find Patent Owner's argument persuasive. Indeed, from the perspective view, closure 1 shown in Figure 1 and closure 101 shown in Figure 7 appear to have substantially the same leading faces. Yet, from the bottom plan view, Figure 4 (closure 1) does not appear to have a curved line similar to the one shown in Figure 10 (closure 101), which Petitioner alleges as representing a leading face with a partially concave surface and a partially convex surface. *See* Pet. 28–29, 35–36. Petitioner does not explain this discrepancy.

For the foregoing reasons, Petitioner does not persuade us that the unidentified and undescribed line in Figure 10 of the '477 publication represents a leading surface having a partially concave surface and a partially convex surface as required in claim 1.[7] For this reason alone, on this record, Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in its challenge of claim 1 based on the '477 publication.

Each of claims 2 and 4–9 depends from claim 1. For the same reasons as explained above, Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in its obviousness challenge of these claims either.

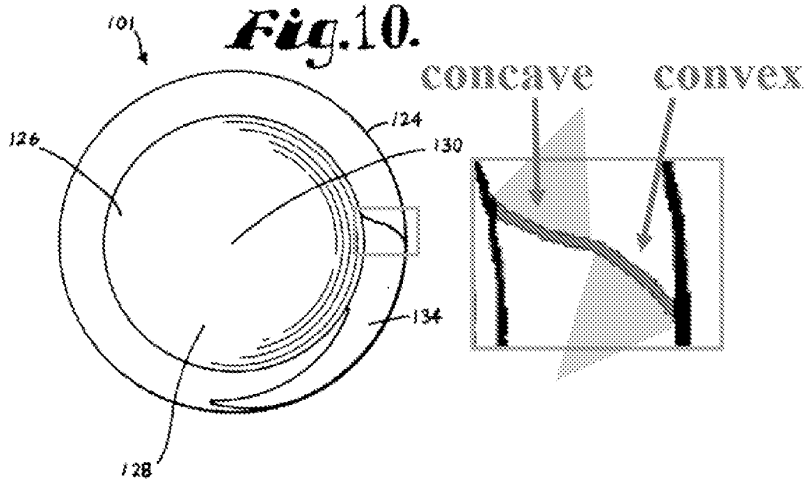
b. Substantially Equal Radius of Curvature

Claim 1 requires "the partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to

---

[7] We also express doubt on whether Petitioner adequately shows the line in Figure 10 is partially concave and partially convex, as required in the disputed limitation. Petitioner's argument on this point is predicated on an enlarged section of a small drawing, showing a single unidentified and undescribed line that was not apparently intended to demonstrate the direction of any curvature. Ultimately, we do not need to address this issue, because Petitioner does not sufficiently persuade us that the line depicts the leading face recited in the disputed limitation.

each other." For this limitation, Petitioner, again, relies on Figure 10 of the '477 publication. Pet. 36. Petitioner's annotated Figure 10 is reproduced below:



The figure above is a reproduction of Petitioner's annotated Figure 10 of the '477 publication. *Id.* Petitioner's argument relating to this limitation, in its entirety, reads:

> The '477 Publication discloses this limitation. EX1003, ¶235. Annotated and enlarged Figure 10 shows that the partial concave surface adjacent the root and the partial convex surface adjacent the crest, *see supra* §VI.B.1.f, are each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other. EX1003, ¶235.

Id.

Petitioner's argument runs afoul of the Federal Circuit law. Indeed, the court instructed that "patent drawings do not define the precise proportions of the elements and may not be relied on to show particular sizes if the specification is completely silent on the issue." *Hockerson-Halberstadt, Inc. v. Avia Grp. Int'l Inc.*, 222 F.3d 951, 956 (Fed. Cir. 2000); *see also Nystrom v. TREX Co.*, 424 F.3d 1136, 1149 (Fed.

Cir. 2005) ("[S]peculative modeling premised on unstated assumptions in prior art patent drawings cannot be the basis for challenging the validity of claims reciting specific dimensions not disclosed directly in such prior art.").

Here, the line Petitioner relies on is unidentified and undescribed in the '477 publication. Even assuming it depicts the leading face, and further assuming it shows a partially concave and partially convex surface, the '477 publication is completely silent on the radii of the curves. Thus, we reject Petitioner's argument that its annotated Figure 10 shows that the partial concave surface and the partial convex surface are each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other. *See In re Wright*, 569 F.2d 1124, 1127 (CCPA 1977) ("Absent any written description in the specification of quantitative values, arguments based on measurement of a drawing are of little value.").

In sum, Petitioner does not persuade us that the unidentified and undescribed line in Figure 10 of the '477 publication discloses "the partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other," as required in claim 1. For this additional reason, on this record, Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in its challenge of claim 1, as well as its dependent claims 2 and 4–9, based on the '477 publication.

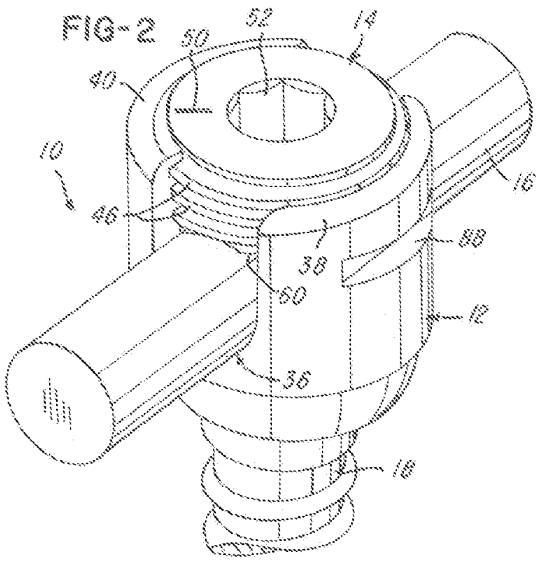
C. Alleged Obviousness of Claims 1, 2, and 4–9 over the '477 Publication and Kirschman

Petitioner asserts that claims 1, 2, and 4–9 would have been obvious over the combination of the '477 publication and Kirschman. Pet. 46–54. Based on this record, and for at least the following reasons, we determine Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in this assertion.

1. Kirschman

Kirschman "relates to a spinal implant system and method and, more particularly, to an implant having . . . a lock aid that provides at least one of improved guidance, tactile or visual feedback or enhanced fixation and locking of a cap in a receiver of the implant." Ex. 1007 ¶ 2.

Figure 2, reproduced below, shows an embodiment of Kirschman's implant and polyaxial screw system.



The figure above is an assembled view of an embodiment of an implant and polyaxial screw system. *Id.* ¶¶ 24, 25, 34, 35. The system 10 includes a cap 14 which is threadably mounted to a receiver 12 containing a rod 16 and a polyaxial screw 18. *Id.* The receiver 12 has a first arcuate wall 38 with threads and a generally opposing second arcuate wall 40 with threads that lay between first and second rod receiving openings 36. *Id.* ¶¶ 35, 36. The threads of the first arcuate wall 38 and the second arcuate wall 40 receive male threads 46 on the cap 14 to allow the cap 14 to be screwed onto the receiver 12 to lock the rod 16 in the receiver 12. *Id.* The cap 14 includes a tool-receiving opening 52 that receives a tool (e.g., hex

wrench) for rotatably driving the cap 14. *Id.* ¶¶ 44, 56. The receiver 12 includes notched out areas 88 to enable the user to position or hold the receiver 12 using a fork tool. *Id.*

The system 10 includes lock aids associated with the receiver 12 and/or the cap 14 to provide the user with tactile or visual feedback (e.g., indicia 50) indicating that the cap 14 is properly aligned and mounted on the receiver 12. *Id.* ¶¶ 36, 38. The lock aid may include a deformable area 60 on the cap 14 that deforms around the rod 16 as the cap 14 is screwed into the receiver 12. *Id.* ¶ 45.

2. Analysis

Petitioner contends that the '477 publication "already anticipates or renders obvious every limitation of Claims 1–2 and 4–9." Pet. 48. According to Petitioner, "Kirschman further reinforces the obviousness of certain limitations." *Id.* at 48–49. The "certain limitations" discussed under this ground do not include (1) the "leading surface including a partially concave surface . . . and a partially convex surface;" or (2) "the partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other." *See id.* at 49–54. In other words, here, Petitioner relies solely on the '477 publication for teaching these two limitations. For the same reasons explained above, we are not persuaded by Petitioner's arguments. *See supra* Section II.B.2. Thus, on this record, Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in its challenge of claims 1, 2, and 4–9, based on the combination of the '477 publication and Kirschman.

D. Alleged Obviousness of Claims 10 and 11

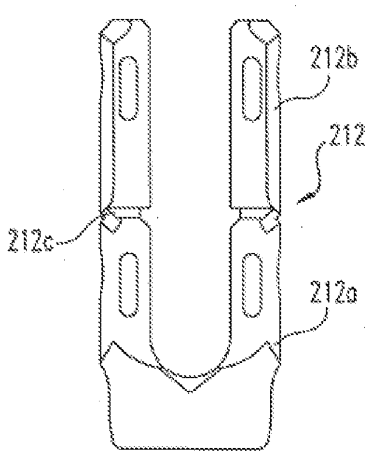
Petitioner contends that claims 10 and 11 would have been obvious over the combination of the '477 publication and Johnson, or further in view

of Kirschman. Pet. 54–60. Based on this record, and for at least the following reasons, we determine Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in this assertion.

1. Johnson

Johnson "relates to devices and methods useful in surgery, such as orthopedic surgery. In particular, it relates to anchors and other implants for use in tissue, to be placed during orthopedic surgery." Ex. 1008 ¶ 1.

Specifically, Johnson teaches an adjustable bone anchor assembly that includes a receiver. *Id.* ¶ 31. An embodiment of the assembly is illustrated in Figure 10, the receiver portion of which is reproduced below.



The figure above is a portion of Johnson's Figure 10, showing the receiver 212 of an adjustable bone anchor assembly. Ex. 1008 ¶¶ 22–23, 50. Receiver 212 has a lower portion 212*a* and an upper portion 212*b* separated by a thinned section 212*c*. *Id.* ¶ 51. According to Johnson, after the receiver receives an elongated member, a compression member is inserted to force the elongated member through the upper portion 212b to the bottom of the lower portion 212a. *Id.* ¶ 55. Once the assembly is locked, upper portion

212*b* may be cut or sheared off or otherwise removed from lower portion 212*a*. *Id.* ¶ 56.

2. Analysis

Claim 10, through its dependency from claim 9, which in turn, depends from claim 1, requires "the upper portion of the receiver includes a first arm and a second arm," and the first and second arm each has a "breakoff extension." Claim 11 depends from claim 10, and recites further limitations.

Petitioner contends that an ordinarily skilled artisan "would have been motivated to apply Johnson's teachings of breakoff extension arms to the closure and receiver system taught by the '477 Publication (with or without modifications in view of Kirschman)." Pet. 56. In other words, Petitioner relies on Johnson only for teaching the additional limitations recited in claims 10 and 11, and on the '477 publication, with or without Kirschman, for teaching the limitations recited in claim 1. *Id.* at 57–60.

As explained above, Petitioner does not show the '477 publication, either alone or in combination with Kirschman, teaches or suggests (1) the "leading surface including a partially concave surface . . . and a partially convex surface;" or (2) "the partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other." *See supra* Sections II.B.2, II.C.2. Thus, on this record, Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in its challenge of claims 10 and 11, based on the '477 publication and Johnson, or further in view of Kirschman.

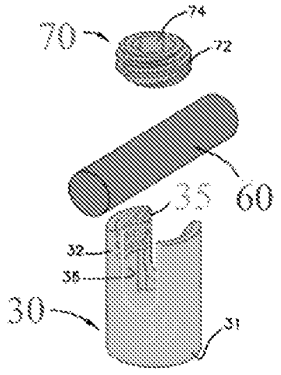
E. Alleged Obviousness of Claims 3, 12–18, and 20

Petitioner argues that claims 3, 12–18, and 20 would have been obvious over the combination of the '477 publication and Boschert

(Pet. 61–77), or further in view of Kirschman (*id.* at 78–81). Based on this record, and for at least the following reasons, we determine Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in either of these assertions.

1. Boschert

Boschert describes an orthopedic fixation device for securing a rod to a bone, and specifically, an intervertebral connection system suited for stabilization of the spine. Ex. 1006, Abstract, 1:5–7. It depicts an embodiment of the disclosed device in Figure 1, the relevant portion of which is reproduced below.



Reproduced above is a portion of Figure 1 of Boschert, as annotated by Petitioner. Pet. 61. It is an exploded perspective view of an orthopedic fixation device, including a receiver 30 having a top portion 32 defining a saddle 39 (i.e., a pocket) for receiving a rod 60. Ex. 1006, 2:58–61, 4:16–18. The fixation device also includes a setscrew 70 for clamping the rod 60 within the saddle 39 of the receiver 30. *Id.* at 4:26–38.

Boschert teaches that the threads 72 of the setscrew 70 can "be designed with a double lead to allow the setscrew 70 to start more easily than with a single lead." *Id.* at 7:21–23.

2. Analysis

Claim 3 depends from claim 1, and further recites "the start structure is a first start structure disposed at a diametrically opposite location on the plug from a second start structure." Claim 12 is independent. Relevant to our analysis, it recites "a first start structure . . . including a first leading face," "a second start structure . . . including a second leading face," "the first and second leading faces each including a partial concave surface . . . and a partial convex surface." Each of claims 13–18 and 20 depends from claim 12.

Petitioner contends that an ordinarily skilled artisan would have had a reason "to combine the closure of the '477 Publication and the double lead thread of Boschert." Pet. 62. In other words, Petitioner relies on Boschert only for teaching two start structures, and on the '477 publication, with or without Kirschman, for teaching the other limitations. *Id.* at 62–77.

Indeed, when analyzing independent 12, Petitioner repeatedly refers back to its analysis of claim 1. *Id.* at 67–72. Specifically, Petitioner relies on the '477 publication for teaching "the curvate leading face." *Id.* at 71. According to Petitioner, an ordinarily skilled artisan would have used "the curvate leading face of the '477 Publication as the start structure on each of the two start threads taught by Boschert." *Id.* at 71–72.

As explained above, Petitioner does not show the '477 publication, either alone or in combination with Kirschman, teaches or suggests the "leading surface including a partially concave surface . . . and a partially convex surface." *See supra* Sections II.B.2.a, II.C.2. For the same reasons, Petitioner does not show the asserted prior art references teach or suggest "the first and second leading faces each including a partial concave surface . . . and a partial convex surface," as recited in claim 12. Thus, on

this record, Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in its challenge of claims 3, 12–18, and 20, based on the combination of the '477 publication and Boschert, or further in view of Kirschman.

F. Alleged Obviousness of Claim 19

Petitioner asserts that claim 19 would have been obvious over the combination of the '477 publication, Boschert, and Johnson, or further in view of Kirschman. Pet. 81–83. Based on this record, and for at least the following reasons, we determine Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in either of these assertions.

Claim 19 depends from claim 18, which in turn, depends from claim 12. For this challenge, Petitioner does not discuss the leading faces recited in claim 12. *See id.* at 82. Instead, Petitioner cites to Johnson solely for its teaching that "'[t]hreads 256 may [be] configured so that they are essentially continuous from upper portion 212 b to lower portion 212 a' so that a compression member 'can be inserted into upper portion 212 b and moved down to lower portion 212 a.'" *Id.* (quoting Ex. 1008 ¶ 53). In other words, Petitioner relies on the '477 publication, Boschert, with or without Kirschman, for teaching the limitations recited in claim 12, including the leading faces.

As explained above, Petitioner does not show the asserted prior art references teach or suggest "the first and second leading faces each including a partial concave surface . . . and a partial convex surface," as recited in claim 12. *See supra* Sections II.E.2. Thus, on this record, Petitioner has not established a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail in its challenge of claim 19.

III. CONCLUSION

Based on the current record, and for the reasons explained above, we find Petitioner has not demonstrated a reasonable likelihood that it would prevail with respect to at least one claim challenged in the Petition. Thus, we decline to institute *inter partes* review.

IV. ORDER

In consideration of the foregoing, it is hereby:

ORDERED that the Petition is denied, and no trial is instituted.

FOR PETITIONER:

Victor Jonas
Lauren Barta
RAEGRE DRINKER BIDDLE & REATH LLP
victor.jonas.ptab@faegredrinker.com
lauren.barta@faegredrinker.com

FOR PATENT OWNER:

James Murphy
Patrick Muffo
POLSINELLI PC
jpmurphy@polsinelli.com
pmuffo@polsinelli.com

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	ISSUE DATE	PATENT NO.	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/123,499	09/28/2021	11129646	JAC023-667905	2823

24030 7590 09/08/2021

POLSINELLI PC
PO Box 140310
KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310

ISSUE NOTIFICATION

The projected patent number and issue date are specified above.

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)
(application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment is 0 day(s). Any patent to issue from the above-identified application will include an indication of the adjustment on the front page.

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (http://pair.uspto.gov).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Application Assistance Unit (AAU) of the Office of Data Management (ODM) at (571)-272-4200.

APPLICANT(s) (Please see PAIR WEB site http://pair.uspto.gov for additional applicants):

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS;

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The USA offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to encourage and facilitate business investment. To learn more about why the USA is the best country in the world to develop technology, manufacture products, and grow your business, visit SelectUSA.gov.

IR103 (Rev. 10/09)

ATTACHMENT A
APPLN. NO. TBD
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
FOR
STATEMENT UNDER MPEP § 2001.06(b)

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials	**Patent No.**	**Issue Date**	**Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document**
	8,377,100	02/19/2013	Jackson
	9,636,146	5/02/2017	Jackson et al.
Change(s) applied	9,717,533	8/01/2017	Jackson et al.
to document,	9,743,957	~~8/29/2014~~ 08/2017	Jackson
/T.W./	9,861,394	1/09/2018	Jackson
6/30/2021	10,004,541	6/26/2018	Jackson
	10,206,716	02/19/2019	Jackson et al.

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials	**Publication No.**	**Publication Date**	**Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document**
	2014/0214097	7/31/2014	Jackson et al.
	2015/0119942	4/30/2015	Jackson et al.
	2015/0148846	5/28/2015	Jackson
	2015/0164558	6/18/2015	Jackson et al.
	2016/0038188	2/11/2016	Jackson et al.
	2016/0242818	8/25/2016	Jackson
	2017/0189073	7/06/2017	Jackson et al.
	2017/0333083	11/23/2017	Jackson et al.
	2017/0354443	12/14/2017	Jackson
	2017/0354441	12/14/2017	Jackson et al.
	2018/0243013	08/30/2018	Jackson et al.
	2018/0296249	10/18/2018	Jackson
	2019/0231400	08/01/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0175225	06/13/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0274734	09/12/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0298415	10/03/2019	Jackson et al.
	2020/0163702	05/28/2020	Jackson et al.
	2020/0179014	06/11/2020	Jackson

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A77.	4,538,947	09/195	Burkholder	
	A78.	4,764,068	08-1988	Crispell	
	A79.	5,005,562	04-1991	Cotrel	
	A80.	5,073,074	12-1991	Corrigan et al.	
	A81.	5,667,508	09-1997	Errico et al.	
	A82.	5,697,929	12-1997	Mellinger	
	A83.	5,885,286	03-1999	Sherman et al.	
	A84.	6,004,349	12-1999	Jackson	
	A85.	6,056,753	05-2000	Jackson	
	A86.	6,224,596	05-2001	Jackson	
	A87.	6,261,288	07-2001	Jackson	
	A88.	6,565,565	05-2003	Yuan et al.	
	A89.	6,786,903	09-2004	Lin	
	A90.	6,843,791	01-2005	Serhan	
	A91.	7,141,051	11-2006	Janowski	
	A92.	7,641,674	01-2010	Young	
	A93.	7,566,163	07-2009	Inoue	
	A94.	7,490,394	02-2009	Zakrzewski	
	A95.	7,334,307	02-2008	Helenowski	
	A96.	7,320,570	01-2008	Czarnek	
	A97.	7,311,563	12-2007	Siebens	
	A98.	7,247,020	07-2007	Takahashi	
	A99.	7,232,104	06-2007	Krapels	
Change(s) applied to document, /N.W.S/ 7/2/2021	**A100.**	7,515,220	~~12-2006~~ 04/2009	~~Rubin de la Borbolla~~ Ko, et al.	
	A101.	7,096,071	08-2006	Ollivier	
	A102.	6,851,337	02-2005	Stokes	
	A103.	6,817,910	11-2004	Borgstrom	
	A104.	6,788,756	09-2004	Erbes	
	A105.	6,764,354	07-2004	Kaine	
	A106.	6,699,248	03-2004	Jackson	
	A107.	6,688,921	02-2004	Borgstrom	
	A108.	6,634,842	10-2003	Ueno	
	A109.	6,634,246	10-2003	Ohya	
	A110.	6,550,959	04-2003	Huber	
	A111.	6,478,795	11-2002	Gournay	
	A112.	6,454,772	09-2002	Jackson	
	A113.	6,454,768	09-2002	Jackson	
	A114.	6,361,535	03-2002	Jackson	
	A115.	6,302,888	10-2001	Mellinger	
	A116.	6,224,598	05-2001	Jackson	
	A117.	6,209,575	04-2001	Graziano	
	A118.	6,193,719	02-2001	Gournay	

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), by mail or fax, or via EFS-Web.

By mail, send to: Mail Stop ISSUE FEE
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

By fax, send to: (571)-273-2885

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

24030 7590 06/24/2021

POLSINELLI PC
900 WEST 48TH PLACE
SUITE 900
KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being transmitted to the USPTO via EFS-Web or by facsimile to (571) 273-2885, on the date below.

Helen Miswell Maiden	(Typed or printed name)
/Helen Miswell Maiden/	(Signature)
August 26, 2021	(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/123,499	12/16/2020	Roger P. Jackson	JAC023-667905	2823

TITLE OF INVENTION: MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	UNDISCOUNTED	$1200	$0.00	$0.00	$1200	09/24/2021

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
COMSTOCK, DAVID C	3773	606-306000

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).

☐ Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.

☐ "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-09 or more recent) attached. **Use of a Customer Number is required.**

2. For printing on the patent front page, list
(1) The names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively,
(2) The name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.

1 Polsinelli PC
2
3

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document must have been previously recorded, or filed for recordation, as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11 and 37 CFR 3.81(a). Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE	(B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY)
Roger P. Jackson	Prairie Village, KS

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent) : ☒ Individual ☐ Corporation or other private group entity ☐ Government

4a. Fees submitted: ☒ Issue Fee ☐ Publication Fee (if required) ☐ Advance Order - # of Copies _____

4b. Method of Payment: *(Please first reapply any previously paid fee shown above)*

☒ Electronic Payment via EFS-Web ☐ Enclosed check ☐ Non-electronic payment by credit card (Attach form PTO-2038)

☒ The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 50-1662

5. **Change in Entity Status** (from status indicated above)

☐ Applicant certifying micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29

☐ Applicant asserting small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27

☐ Applicant changing to regular undiscounted fee status.

NOTE: Absent a valid certification of Micro Entity Status (see forms PTO/SB/15A and 15B), issue fee payment in the micro entity amount will not be accepted at the risk of application abandonment.
NOTE: If the application was previously under micro entity status, checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to micro entity status.
NOTE: Checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to small or micro entity status, as applicable.

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.31 and 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications.

Authorized Signature /Joshua J. Pranckun/ Date August 26, 2021

Typed or printed name Joshua J. Pranckun Registration No. 70712

PTOL-85 Part B (08-18) Approved for use through 01/31/2020 OMB 0651-0033 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	17123499
Filing Date:	16-Dec-2020
Title of Invention:	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED PLUG HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Roger P. Jackson
Filer:	Joshua Pranckun/Helen Miswell
Attorney Docket Number:	JAC023-667905

Filed as Large Entity

Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
UTILITY APPL ISSUE FEE	1501	1	1200	1200

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Extension-of-Time:				
Miscellaneous:				
		Total in USD ($)		**1200**

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	43615889
Application Number:	17123499
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	2823
Title of Invention:	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED PLUG HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Roger P. Jackson
Customer Number:	24030
Filer:	Joshua Pranckun/Helen Miswell
Filer Authorized By:	Joshua Pranckun
Attorney Docket Number:	JAC023-667905
Receipt Date:	26-AUG-2021
Filing Date:	16-DEC-2020
Time Stamp:	17:41:58
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	DA
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$1200
RAM confirmation Number	E20218PH42250217
Deposit Account	501662
Authorized User	Helen Miswell
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: 37 CFR 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees) 37 CFR 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

37 CFR 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

37 CFR 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Issue Fee Payment (PTO-85B)	17123499_IssueFeeTransmittal.pdf	1090308 34a9ec826fba7902744f93a10c87e148ec779a67	no	1
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	38145 d47784dd4c656f10b541b15960288641a43fdbf6	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
		Total Files Size (in bytes):	1128453		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTY.DOCKET.NO	TOT CLAIMS	IND CLAIMS
17/123,499	12/16/2020	3773	1820	JAC023-667905	17	2

CONFIRMATION NO. 2823

CORRECTED FILING RECEIPT

24030
POLSINELLI PC
900 WEST 48TH PLACE
SUITE 900
KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895



Date Mailed: 07/01/2021

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional utility patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF FIRST INVENTOR, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection.

Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a corrected Filing Receipt, including a properly marked-up ADS showing the changes with strike-through for deletions and underlining for additions. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" or other Notice requiring a response for this application, please submit any request for correction to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections provided that the request is grantable.

Inventor(s)

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS;
James L. Surber, Kansas City, KS;

Applicant(s)

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS;

Assignment For Published Patent Application

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS

Power of Attorney: The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 24030

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 16/779,304 01/31/2020 PAT 10898233
which is a CON of 15/964,502 04/27/2018 PAT 10548641
which is a CON of 15/469,076 03/24/2017 PAT 9956004
which is a CON of 14/566,356 12/10/2014 PAT 9636146
which is a CON of 13/694,849 01/10/2013 PAT 8911479
which claims benefit of 61/634,361 02/28/2012
and claims benefit of 61/631,746 01/10/2012

Foreign Applications for which priority is claimed (You may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at the USPTO. Please see http://www.uspto.gov for more information.) - None.
Foreign application information must be provided in an Application Data Sheet in order to constitute a claim to foreign priority. See 37 CFR 1.55 and 1.76.

Permission to Access Application via Priority Document Exchange: Yes

Permission to Access Search Results: Yes

Applicant may provide or rescind an authorization for access using Form PTO/SB/39 or Form PTO/SB/69 as appropriate.

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 01/26/2021

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 17/123,499**

Projected Publication Date: Not Applicable

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

Title

MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED PLUG HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

Preliminary Class

606

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications: No

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, http://www.stopfakes.gov. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4258).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign AssetsControl, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

SelectUSA

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The U.S. offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to promote and facilitate business investment. SelectUSA provides information assistance to the international investor

community; serves as an ombudsman for existing and potential investors; advocates on behalf of U.S. cities, states, and regions competing for global investment; and counsels U.S. economic development organizations on investment attraction best practices. To learn more about why the United States is the best country in the world to develop technology, manufacture products, deliver services, and grow your business, visit http://www.SelectUSA.gov or call +1-202-482-6800.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

24030 7590 06/24/2021

POLSINELLI PC
900 WEST 48TH PLACE
SUITE 900
KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895

EXAMINER	
COMSTOCK, DAVID C	
ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
3773	

DATE MAILED: 06/24/2021

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/123,499	12/16/2020	Roger P. Jackson	JAC023-667905	2823

TITLE OF INVENTION: MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	UNDISCOUNTED	$1200	$0.00	$0.00	$1200	09/24/2021

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN THREE MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE DOES NOT REFLECT A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE IN THIS APPLICATION. IF AN ISSUE FEE HAS PREVIOUSLY BEEN PAID IN THIS APPLICATION (AS SHOWN ABOVE), THE RETURN OF PART B OF THIS FORM WILL BE CONSIDERED A REQUEST TO REAPPLY THE PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE TOWARD THE ISSUE FEE NOW DUE.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the ENTITY STATUS shown above. If the ENTITY STATUS is shown as SMALL or MICRO, verify whether entitlement to that entity status still applies.

If the ENTITY STATUS is the same as shown above, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.

If the ENTITY STATUS is changed from that shown above, on PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, complete section number 5 titled "Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)".

For purposes of this notice, small entity fees are 1/2 the amount of undiscounted fees, and micro entity fees are 1/2 the amount of small entity fees.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, or its equivalent, must be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted. If an equivalent of Part B is filed, a request to reapply a previously paid issue fee must be clearly made, and delays in processing may occur due to the difficulty in recognizing the paper as an equivalent of Part B.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Mail Stop ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Maintenance fees are due in utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due. More information is available at www.uspto.gov/PatentMaintenanceFees.

PTOL-85 (Rev. 02/11)

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), by mail or fax, or via EFS-Web.

By mail, send to: Mail Stop ISSUE FEE
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

By fax, send to: (571)-273-2885

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

24030 7590 06/24/2021

POLSINELLI PC
900 WEST 48TH PLACE
SUITE 900
KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being transmitted to the USPTO via EFS-Web or by facsimile to (571) 273-2885, on the date below.

(Typed or printed name)
(Signature)
(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/123,499	12/16/2020	Roger P. Jackson	JAC023-667905	2823

TITLE OF INVENTION: MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	UNDISCOUNTED	$1200	$0.00	$0.00	$1200	09/24/2021

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
COMSTOCK, DAVID C	3773	606-306000

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).

❑ Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.

❑ "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-09 or more recent) attached. **Use of a Customer Number is required.**

2. For printing on the patent front page, list
(1) The names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively,
(2) The name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document must have been previously recorded, or filed for recordation, as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11 and 37 CFR 3.81(a). Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE (B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY)

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent) : ❑ Individual ❑ Corporation or other private group entity ❑ Government

4a. Fees submitted: ❑ Issue Fee ❑ Publication Fee (if required) ❑ Advance Order - # of Copies _____

4b. Method of Payment: *(Please first reapply any previously paid fee shown above)*

❑ Electronic Payment via EFS-Web ❑ Enclosed check ❑ Non-electronic payment by credit card (Attach form PTO-2038)

❑ The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. _____

5. **Change in Entity Status** (from status indicated above)

❑ Applicant certifying micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29

❑ Applicant asserting small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27

❑ Applicant changing to regular undiscounted fee status.

NOTE: Absent a valid certification of Micro Entity Status (see forms PTO/SB/15A and 15B), issue fee payment in the micro entity amount will not be accepted at the risk of application abandonment.
NOTE: If the application was previously under micro entity status, checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to micro entity status.
NOTE: Checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to small or micro entity status, as applicable.

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.31 and 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications.

Authorized Signature _____ Date _____

Typed or printed name _____ Registration No. _____

PTOL-85 Part B (08-18) Approved for use through 01/31/2020 OMB 0651-0033 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/123,499	12/16/2020	Roger P. Jackson	JAC023-667905	2823

24030 7590 06/24/2021

POLSINELLI PC
900 WEST 48TH PLACE
SUITE 900
KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895

EXAMINER	
COMSTOCK, DAVID C	
ART UNIT	**PAPER NUMBER**
3773	

DATE MAILED: 06/24/2021

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)
(Applications filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Office has discontinued providing a Patent Term Adjustment (PTA) calculation with the Notice of Allowance.

Section 1(h)(2) of the AIA Technical Corrections Act amended 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(3)(B)(i) to eliminate the requirement that the Office provide a patent term adjustment determination with the notice of allowance. See Revisions to Patent Term Adjustment, 78 Fed. Reg. 19416, 19417 (Apr. 1, 2013). Therefore, the Office is no longer providing an initial patent term adjustment determination with the notice of allowance. The Office will continue to provide a patent term adjustment determination with the Issue Notification Letter that is mailed to applicant approximately three weeks prior to the issue date of the patent, and will include the patent term adjustment on the patent. Any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment determination (or reinstatement of patent term adjustment) should follow the process outlined in 37 CFR 1.705.

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at 1-(888)-786-0101 or (571)-272-4200.

PTOL-85 (Rev. 02/11)

OMB Clearance and PRA Burden Statement for PTOL-85 Part B

The Paperwork Reduction Act (PRA) of 1995 requires Federal agencies to obtain Office of Management and Budget approval before requesting most types of information from the public. When OMB approves an agency request to collect information from the public, OMB (i) provides a valid OMB Control Number and expiration date for the agency to display on the instrument that will be used to collect the information and (ii) requires the agency to inform the public about the OMB Control Number's legal significance in accordance with 5 CFR 1320.5(b).

The information collected by PTOL-85 Part B is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 30 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

Notice of Allowability	Application No. 17/123,499	Applicant(s) Jackson et al.	
	Examiner DAVID C COMSTOCK	Art Unit 3773	AIA (FITF) Status No

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address--

All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in this application. If not included herewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTOL-85) or other appropriate communication will be mailed in due course. **THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS.** This application is subject to withdrawal from issue at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR 1.313 and MPEP 1308.

1. ☑ This communication is responsive to amendment and arguments filed 09 June 2021.
   ☐ A declaration(s)/affidavit(s) under **37 CFR 1.130(b)** was/were filed on _____.

2. ☐ An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on _____; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.

3. ☑ The allowed claim(s) is/are 1-3,5-13 and 15-22 . As a result of the allowed claim(s), you may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at a participating intellectual property office for the corresponding application. For more information , please see **http://www.uspto.gov/patents/init_events/pph/index.jsp** or send an inquiry to **PPHfeedback@uspto.gov.**

4. ☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).

   Certified copies:

   a) ☐All b) ☐ Some *c) ☐ None of the:

   1. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
   2. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____ .
   3. ☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this national stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

   * Certified copies not received: _____ .

Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DATE" of this communication to file a reply complying with the requirements noted below. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application.
THIS THREE-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE.

5. ☐ CORRECTED DRAWINGS (as "replacement sheets") must be submitted.
   ☐ including changes required by the attached Examiner's Amendment / Comment or in the Office action of Paper No./Mail Date _____ .

   Identifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the drawings in the front (not the back) of each sheet. Replacement sheet(s) should be labeled as such in the header according to 37 CFR 1.121(d).

6. ☐ DEPOSIT OF and/or INFORMATION about the deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL must be submitted. Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT FOR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL.

Attachment(s)

1. ☐ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
2. ☑ Information Disclosure Statements (PTO/SB/08), Paper No./Mail Date 09 June 2021.
3. ☐ Examiner's Comment Regarding Requirement for Deposit of Biological Material _____.
4. ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413), Paper No./Mail Date. _____.
5. ☑ Examiner's Amendment/Comment
6. ☐ Examiner's Statement of Reasons for Allowance
7. ☐ Other _____.

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/ Examiner, Art Unit 3773	/EDUARDO C ROBERT/ Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3773

EXAMINER'S COMMENT

The double patenting rejection set forth in the Office action mailed 09 March 2021 has been withdrawn because the amended claims now recite elements that are not found in the claims of the issued patent (10,548,641). Specifically, the issued patent does not recite the limitations directed to the configuration of the start structure and the lower surface of the thread spaced from an annular outer edge of a substantially flat bottom of a plug of a receiver, as set forth in independent claims 1 and 11.

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to David Comstock whose telephone number is (571) 272-4710. The examiner can normally be reached Monday-Friday, 9 a.m. - 6 p.m.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, ***please contact*** **the examiner's supervisor, SPE, *at* (571) 272-4719**. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pair-direct.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/
Examiner, Art Unit 3773

/EDUARDO C ROBERT/
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3773

Issue Classification	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

CPC						
Symbol					**Type**	**Version**
A61B	/	17	/	7035	F	2013-01-01
A61B	/	17	/	7032	I	2013-01-01
A61B	/	17	/	8665	I	2013-01-01
A61B	/	17	/	863	I	2013-01-01
A61B	/	17	/	8685	I	2013-01-01
A61B	/	2090	/	037	A	2016-02-01
A61B	/	2017	/	8655	A	2013-01-01

CPC Combination Sets							
Symbol					**Type**	**Set**	**Ranking**	**Version**
	/		/					

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/ Examiner, Art Unit 3773	17 June 2021	**Total Claims Allowed:**	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	20	
/EDUARDO C ROBERT/ Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3773	17 June 2021	O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Figure
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)	1	8

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office — Part of Paper No.: 20210617

Issue Classification	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION				
CLAIMED				
A61B	/	17	/	70

NON-CLAIMED				
	/		/	

US ORIGINAL CLASSIFICATION	
CLASS	**SUBCLASS**
606	270

CROSS REFERENCES(S)						
CLASS	**SUBCLASS (ONE SUBCLASS PER BLOCK)**					

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/ Examiner, Art Unit 3773	17 June 2021	**Total Claims Allowed:**	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	20	
/EDUARDO C ROBERT/ Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3773	17 June 2021	O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Figure
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)	1	8

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office — Part of Paper No.: 20210617

Issue Classification	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

CLAIMS

Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original
1	1	7	10	9	19										
2	2	12	11	17	20										
3	3	13	12	18	21										
	4	14	13	20	22										
4	5		14												
10	6	15	15												
11	7	19	16												
5	8	16	17												
6	9	8	18												

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/ Examiner, Art Unit 3773	17 June 2021	**Total Claims Allowed:**
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	20
/EDUARDO C ROBERT/ Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3773	17 June 2021	O.G. Print Claim(s): 1 / O.G. Print Figure: 8
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)	

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office — Part of Paper No.: 20210617

Index of Claims	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

CLAIMS

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	02/26/2021	06/17/2021							
1	1	✓	=							
2	2	✓	=							
3	3	✓	=							
	4	✓	-							
4	5	✓	=							
10	6	✓	=							
11	7	✓	=							
5	8	✓	=							
6	9	✓	=							
7	10	✓	=							
12	11	✓	=							
13	12	✓	=							
14	13	✓	=							
	14	✓	-							
15	15	✓	=							
19	16	✓	=							
16	17	✓	=							
8	18		=							
9	19		=							
17	20		=							
18	21		=							
20	22		=							

Search Notes	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	Art Unit
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

CPC - Searched*		
Symbol	**Date**	**Examiner**
A61B17/7035, 7032, 863, 8665, 8685	02/26/2021	/DC/
A61B2090/037	02/26/2021	/DC/
A61B2017/8655	02/26/2021	/DC/
Search updated	06/17/2021	/DC/

CPC Combination Sets - Searched*		
Symbol	**Date**	**Examiner**

US Classification - Searched*			
Class	**Subclass**	**Date**	**Examiner**
606	264, 265, 266, 267, 270, 273, 306	02/26/2021	/DC/
403	362	02/26/2021	/DC/
411	386, 393	02/26/2021	/DC/
Search updated		06/17/2021	/DC/

* See search history printout included with this form or the SEARCH NOTES box below to determine the scope of the search.

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/ Examiner, Art Unit 3773	

Search Notes	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	Art Unit
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

Search Notes		
Search Notes	**Date**	**Examiner**
PLUS search	02/25/2021	/DC/
EAST text search--see EAST search history (CPC and US classification search text limited except where otherwise indicated)	02/26/2021	/DC/
Inventor name search--see EAST search history	02/26/2021	/DC/
Consulted Daniel Wiley in class 403 (joints and connections): recommended speaking with Fleming Saether in class 411	02/25/2021	/DC/
Consulted Fleming Saether in class 411 (threaded fasteners): search 411/386 and F16B25/0052, 0042	02/25/2021	/DC/
References cited in parent applications 16779304, 15964502, 15469076, 14566356 and 13694849 have been reviewed	02/26/2021	/DC/
EAST text search updated--see EAST search history	06/17/2021	/DC/

Interference Search			
US Class/CPC Symbol	**US Subclass/CPC Group**	**Date**	**Examiner**
See EAST interference search	N/A	06/17/2021	/DC/

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/ Examiner, Art Unit 3773	

EAST Search History

EAST Search History (Prior Art)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L7	673	(setscrew or "set screw" or closure) same thread same (higby or higbee or truncated)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:33
L9	29	L7 and (vertebr$2 or (fixation with rod) or surgery or surgical or medical)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:33
L10	797	(411/386).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/06/17 00:34
L11	341	L10 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:34
L12	211	L10 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:34
L13	552	L11 L12	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:34
L14	133	L13 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:34

L15	515	(411/393).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/06/17 00:35
L16	119	L15 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:35
L17	56	L15 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:35
L18	175	L16 L17	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:35
L19	10	L18 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:35
L20	10	L18 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:35
L21	165	L18 not L20	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:35
L22	301	(vertebr$2 or surgical or surgery or medical) and ((setscrew or "set screw") same ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick)))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:36

L23	75	L22 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:36
L24	2	L22 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:36
L25	77	L23 L24	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:36
L26	1,914	F16B25/0052,0042.cpc.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:36
L27	158	L26 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:36
L28	1,080	L26 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:36
L29	1,238	L27 L28	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:36
L30	1,568	(403/362).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/06/17 00:37
L31	386	L30 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:37
L32	161	L30 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:37

L33	547	L31 L32	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:37
L34	11	L33 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:37
L35	16	(vertebr$2 or surgical or surgery or medical) and ((setscrew or "set screw") same (thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) same truncat$3)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:37
L36	6,189	A61B17/863.cpc.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L37	747	L36 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L38	2,970	L36 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L39	3,717	L37 L38	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L40	250	L39 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick or truncat$3))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38

L41	37,456	A61B17/7035,7032,863,8665,8685.cpc. A61B2090/037.cpc. A61B2017/8655.cpc.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L42	5,651	L41 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L43	18,738	L41 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L44	24,389	L42 L43	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L45	151	L44 and ((arm or extension) with (break$4 or frangibl$1)) and (setscrew or "set screw" or (closure with thread$3))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:38
L46	22	L44 and (setscrew or "set screw" or (closure with thread$3)) same ((thread$3 or (helically with wound) or (guide with advancement)) with (truncat$3 or start))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:39
L47	3,547	(606/264,265,266,267,270,273,306).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/06/17 00:39
L48	1,836	L47 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:39
L49	1,166	L47 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:39

L50	3,002	L48 L49	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:39
L51	98	L50 and (setscrew or "set screw" or (closure with thread$3)) and (((extension or arm) with (break$4 or frangible)) or ((higby or truncated) with thread$3))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:39
L52	469	(606/270).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/06/17 00:40
L53	7	(7 9 13 14 18 19 21 25 29 33 34 35 40 45 46 51 52) and @pd>"20210227"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:43

EAST Search History (Interference)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L54	0	(implant and assembly and receiver and upper and portion and inner and surface and helically and wound and thread and extending and top and channel and rod and plug and positioned and axis and rotation and continuously and flat and bottom and annular and outer and edge and engage and form and start and structure and root and crest and leading and face and partial and concave and convex and radius and curvature and equal and spaced and apart and above and connected).clm.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:47
L56	0	(implant and assembly and receiver and upper and portion and inner and surface and helically and wound and thread and extending and top and channel and rod and plug and positioning and axis and rotation and continuously and flat and bottom and annular and outer and edge	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2021/06/17 00:56

		and outward and facing and encircling and start and structure and root and crest and leading and face and partial and concave and convex and radius and curvature and spaced and above).clm.				

6/17/2021 12:57:52 AM
C:\Users\dcomstock\Documents\EAST\Workspaces\17123499.wsp

PTO/SB/08A (08-03) U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE Substitute for Form 1449A/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT *(Use as many sheets as necessary)*	APPLICATION NO.: 17/123,499	FILING DATE: December 16, 2020
	INVENTOR(S): Roger P. Jackson et al.	ART UNIT: 3773
	EXAMINER NAME: David C. Comstock	ATTY. DOCKET NO.: JAC023-667905

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		5,562,663	10-1996	Wisnewski et al.	

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PUBLICATION NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	DOCUMENT NUMBER Country Code[3] – Number[4] – Kind Code[5] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T[6]

OTHER PRIOR ART – NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of Author, title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), volume-issue number(s), publisher, page(s) and date.	T[6]

EXAMINER	/DAVID C COMSTOCK/	DATE CONSIDERED	06/17/2021

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

* EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

[1] Applicant's unique citation number (optional). [2] See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. [3] Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). [4] For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. [5] Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. [6] Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

PTO/SB/08A (08-03) U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE Substitute for Form 1449A/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT *(Use as many sheets as necessary)*	APPLICATION NO.: 17/123,499	FILING DATE: December 16, 2020
	INVENTOR(S): Roger P. Jackson et al.	ART UNIT: 3773
	EXAMINER NAME: David C. Comstock	ATTY. DOCKET NO.: JAC023-667905

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		5,562,663	10-1996	Wisnewski et al.	

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PUBLICATION NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	DOCUMENT NUMBER Country Code[3] – Number[4] – Kind Code[5] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T[6]

OTHER PRIOR ART – NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of Author, title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), volume-issue number(s), publisher, page(s) and date.	T[6]

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

* EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

[1] Applicant's unique citation number (optional). [2] See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. [3] Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). [4] For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. [5] Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. [6] Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	17123499
Filing Date:	16-Dec-2020
Title of Invention:	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Roger P. Jackson
Filer:	Joshua Pranckun/Helen Miswell
Attorney Docket Number:	JAC023-667905

Filed as Large Entity

Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Miscellaneous:				
SUBMISSION- INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STMT	1806	1	260	260
		Total in USD ($)		**260**

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	42942657
Application Number:	17123499
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	2823
Title of Invention:	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Roger P. Jackson
Customer Number:	24030
Filer:	Joshua Pranckun/Helen Miswell
Filer Authorized By:	Joshua Pranckun
Attorney Docket Number:	JAC023-667905
Receipt Date:	09-JUN-2021
Filing Date:	16-DEC-2020
Time Stamp:	15:33:25
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	DA
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$260
RAM confirmation Number	E202169F33492820
Deposit Account	501662
Authorized User	Helen Miswell
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: 37 CFR 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees) 37 CFR 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

37 CFR 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		17-123499_ResponsetoNonFinalOA.pdf	714111 468e6645395ee43efdc812750fab8e6859ad732c	yes	13

	Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description		
	Document Description	**Start**	**End**
	Amendment/Req. Reconsideration-After Non-Final Reject	1	1
	Specification	2	2
	Claims	3	6
	Applicant Arguments/Remarks Made in an Amendment	7	13

Warnings:

Information:

2		17-123499_InformationDisclosureStatement.pdf	379764 63f262d17f3c934d8e6de26606dc91f3b068fcb5	yes	6

	Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description		
	Document Description	**Start**	**End**
	Transmittal Letter	1	5
	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	6	6

Warnings:

Information:

3	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	30984 c5c65187071af551dfce247352cadd9f95cb1ca6	no	2

Warnings:

Information:

Total Files Size (in bytes):	1124859

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of:

Inventor(s):	Roger P. Jackson et al.		
App. No.:	17/123,499	Con. No.:	2823
Filed:	December 16, 2020	Art Unit:	3773
Title:	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	Examiner:	David C. Comstock

AMENDMENT AND RESPONSE TO NON-FINAL OFFICE ACTION

Via EFS
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450
Dear Commissioner:

In response to the Non-Final Office action dated March 9, 2021, please consider the following remarks and amend the above-identified application as follows:

Amendments to the Specification begin on page 2 of this paper.

Amendments to the Claims begin on page 3 of this paper.

Remarks begin on page 7 of this paper.

Amendments to the Specification

Please replace the Title on page 1 of the Specification with the following showing markings to show all changes relative to the previous version:

MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED PLUG ~~CLOSURE~~ HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

Please replace the Abstract on page 38 of the Specification with the following showing markings to show all changes relative to the previous version:

A medical implant assembly including a receiver and a plug ~~closure~~. The receiver ~~having~~ can be configured with first and second arms [[each]] having a ~~discontinuously~~ helically wound thread extending up to a top surface thereof. The plug ~~closure~~ being at least partially threadably positioned within ~~threaded and configured to close~~ the channel. The plug ~~closure~~ having an axis of rotation and a continuously helically wound thread form. The continuously helically wound thread form having a start structure and an upper ~~loading~~ surface extending between a root and a crest of the continuously helically wound thread form. The start structure having a leading face extending below the upper ~~loading~~ surface. The leading face including a partial concave surface adjacent the root and a partial convex surface adjacent the crest. The partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that [[is]] can be substantially equal with respect to each other.

AMENDMENTS TO THE CLAIMS

The following listing of claims will replace all prior listings and versions of claims in this application.

1. (Currently Amended) A medical implant assembly comprising:

a receiver having ~~a first arm and a second arm spaced apart from each other by a channel, the first arm and the second arm each having a top surface and~~ an upper portion with an inner surface~~, the first and second arms each having a discontinuously~~ at least partially configured as a helically wound thread extending up to [[the]] a top surface of the receiver, and a [[the]] channel ~~being~~ formed in the upper portion of the receiver ~~by the first arm and the second arm opening onto the top surfaces~~ and configured to receive a rod; and

a ~~closure~~ plug being threaded and configured to be positioned within the upper portion ~~close the channel~~, the ~~closure~~ plug having an axis of rotation, [[and]] a continuously helically wound thread form, and a substantially flat bottom surface with an annular outer edge, the substantially flat bottom surface configured to engage the rod, the continuously helically wound thread form having a start structure [[and]] with an upper ~~loading~~ surface extending between a root and a crest of the continuously helically wound thread form, the start structure having a leading face extending below the upper ~~loading~~ surface to a lower surface of the start structure, the leading face including a partial concave surface adjacent the root and a partial convex surface adjacent the crest, the partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other, the lower surface of the start structure being spaced apart and above the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom surface so as to not be connected with the annular outer edge thereof.

2. (Original) The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the partial concave surface tangentially blends with the partial convex surface.

3. (Currently Amended) The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the start structure is a first start structure disposed at a diametrically opposite location on the ~~closure~~ plug from a second start structure.

4. (Canceled)

5. (Original) The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the leading face of the start structure includes at least a partial planar surface.

6. (Currently Amended) The medical implant assembly of claim [[1]] 19, wherein the first arm includes a first breakoff extension coupled to the top surface of the first arm, and the second arm includes a second breakoff extension coupled to the top surface of the second arm, each of the first and second breakoff extensions including an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread form, the discontinuously helically wound thread form of the first breakoff extension configured to cooperate with the discontinuously helically wound thread of the first arm, and the discontinuously helically wound thread form of the second breakoff extension configured to cooperate with the discontinuously helically wound thread of the second arm to rotatably transfer the plug therebetween ~~closure there between~~ prior to the first and second breakoff extensions being separated from the first and second arms, respectively.

7. (Original) The medical implant assembly of claim 6, wherein a first outer radiused notch is located at a convergence of the first breakoff extension and the first arm at the top surface thereof, and a second outer radiused notch is located at a convergence of the second breakoff extension and the second arm at the top surface thereof, the first outer radiused notch being located opposite a first inner radiused recess, and the second outer radiused notch being located opposite a second inner radiused recess.

8. (Currently Amended) The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the lower surface of the start structure includes a bottom beveled surface.

9. (Currently Amended) The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the upper ~~loading~~ surface of the continuously helically wound thread form of the threaded ~~closure~~ plug slopes rearward from the root [[to]] towards the crest.

10. (Currently Amended) The medical implant assembly of claim 9, wherein [[the]] a slope of the upper ~~loading~~ surface is at an angle greater than five degrees measured between a ~~from a horizontal~~ line drawn perpendicular to the axis of rotation of the plug and a tangent line drawn ~~tangent~~ along the upper ~~loading~~ surface.

11. (Currently Amended) A medical implant assembly comprising:

a receiver having an upper portion with an inner surface, a top surface, and ~~a first arm and a second arm spaced apart from each other by~~ a channel, the ~~first arm and the second arm each having a top surface and an inner surface, the first and second arms~~ inner surface having a ~~discontinuously~~ helically wound ~~threads~~ thread extending up to the top surface, the channel ~~being formed by the first arm and the second arm opening onto the top surfaces and~~ configured to receive a rod; and

a ~~closure~~ plug configured for positioning within the upper portion of the receiver ~~to close the channel~~, the ~~closure~~ plug having an axis of rotation, [[and]] a continuously helically wound thread form comprising a first thread and a second thread, a substantially flat bottom surface with an annular outer edge, and an outward facing surface encircling the substantially flat bottom surface, the first thread comprising a first start structure and a first upper ~~loading~~ surface extending between a first root and a first crest of the first thread, the first start structure including a first leading face extending below the first upper ~~loading~~ surface to a first lower surface, the second thread comprising a second start structure and a second upper ~~loading~~ surface extending between a second root and a second crest of the second thread, the second start structure including a second leading face extending below the second upper ~~loading~~ surface to a second lower surface, the first and second leading faces each including a partial concave surface adjacent the first and second root, respectively, and a partial convex surface adjacent the first and second crest, respectively, the partial concave and partial convex surfaces of the first and second leading faces each defined by a radius of curvature, ~~that is substantially equal with respect to each other~~ the first lower surface of the first thread and from the second lower surface of the second thread are spaced above and apart from the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom surface of the plug.

12. (Currently Amended) The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first start structure and the second start structure are disposed at diametrically opposite locations from each other on the ~~closure~~ plug.

13. (Original) The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first leading face includes a first inflection point between the partial concave surface and the partial convex surface of the first leading face, and the second leading face includes a second inflection point between the partial concave surface and the partial convex surface of the second leading face.

14. (Canceled)

15. (Original) The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first and second leading faces each includes at least a partial planar surface.

16. (Currently Amended) The medical implant assembly of claim [[11]] 21, wherein the top surfaces of the first and second arms each include a breakoff extension with an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread form, the first and second arm breakoff extension thread forms being continuous with the respective discontinuous ~~discontinuously~~ helically wound thread form on the inner surface of the first and second arms.

17. (Currently Amended) The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first ~~start structure~~ lower surface includes a first bottom beveled surface and the second lower surface ~~start structure~~ includes a second bottom beveled surface.

18. (New) The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the plug is a breakoff plug.

19. (New) The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the upper portion of the receiver includes a first arm and a second arm spaced apart from each other by the channel, the helically wound thread being discontinuous and formed on the first and second arms, the top surface of the receiver being formed on the first arm and the second arm.

20. (New) The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the plug is a breakoff plug.

21. (New) The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the upper portion of the receiver includes a first arm and a second arm spaced apart from each other by the channel, the helically wound thread being discontinuous and formed on the first and second arms, the top surface of the receiver being formed on the first arm and the second arm.

22. (New) The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the radius of curvature for the partial concave and partial convex surfaces of the first and second leading faces are substantially equal with respect to each other.

REMARKS

This paper is submitted in response to the Office action dated March 9, 2021.

I. Status of the Claims

Claims 1-17 were originally presented in the as-filed application. In the present amendment and response claims 1, 3, 6, 8-12, and 16-17 have been amended and claims 4 and 14 are canceled, without prejudice or disclaimer of the subject matter contained therein. New claims 18-22 have been added herein. Accordingly, claims 1-3, 5-13, and 15-22 are now pending in the application. New claims 18-22 are fully supported in the original application and do not include new matter.

II. Rejections under 35 USC §103

Claims 1, 2, 4, 5, and 8-10 stand rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being anticipated by U.S. Patent Publication No. 2011/0106179 to Prevost (hereinafter "Prevost").

Claim 3 stands rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being obvious by Prevost in view of U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0277928 to Boschert (hereinafter "Boschert").

Claims 6 and 7 stand rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being obvious by Prevost in view of U.S. Patent Publication No. 2004/0162560 to Raynor (hereinafter "Raynor").

Claims 11-15 and 17 stand rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being obvious by Prevost in view of Boschert.

Claim 16 stands rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being obvious by Prevost in view of Boschert and further in view of Raynor.

Applicant respectfully traverses the rejections for at least the following reasons.

a. Independent claim 1 is patentable because Prevost does not disclose a lower surface of the start structure being spaced apart and above an annular outer edge of a substantially flat bottom surface of the plug – instead, Prevost discloses a lower surface of a start structure that is contiguous with the bottom surface of the plug.

Independent claim 1 is amended to recite "the lower surface of the start structure being spaced apart and above the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom surface so as to not be connected with the annular outer edge thereof." Independent claim 1 is rejected in view

of Prevost. Prevost, however, does not describe the limitations of amended claim 1 for at least the following reasons.

To reject a claim as obvious, the Office must articulate "a finding that the prior art included each element claimed, although not necessarily in a single prior art reference, with the only difference between the claimed invention and the prior art being the lack of actual combination of the elements in a single prior art reference[.]" *MPEP 2143(I)(A)*.

Prevost discloses a set screw 1 with external threads 5 on the lower end 42. The Examiner alleges a surface of the external threads 5 discloses the claimed lower surface. *Office action, p. 3; Fig. A, below.*

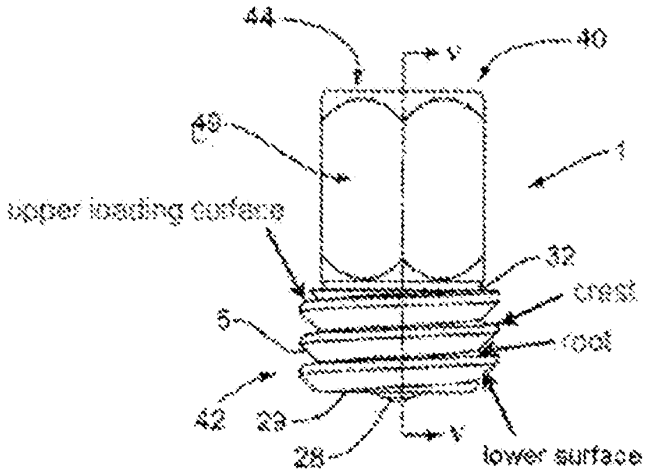


Fig. A

The surface identified by the Examiner is contiguous with the bottom end 29 of the set screw 1. That is, the surface of the external thread 5 and the bottom end 29 adjoin each other. This is seen clearly in Figure 5, below.

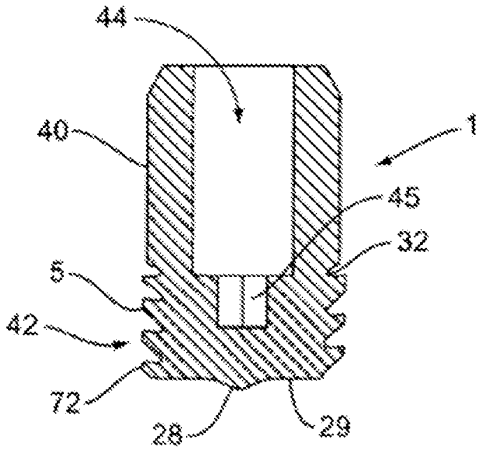


FIG. 5

Claim 1 requires "the lower surface of the start structure being spaced apart and above the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom surface so as to not be connected with the annular outer edge thereof." As seen in Figure 5, the lower surface, as identified by the Examiner, is connected to the outer edge of the bottom end 29. For at least these reasons, Prevost does not disclose all the elements of independent claim 1. And therefore claim 1 is therefore allowable.

Claims 2, 4, 5, and 8-10 are similarly rejected as obvious in view of Prevost. Claim 4 is canceled so the rejection of that claim is moot. Claims 2, 5, and 8-10 depend from independent claim 1, and therefore incorporate the allowable limitations from claim 1. Thus, the dependent claims are allowable for at least this reason. This statement is made without addressing the individual allowable limitations of the dependent claims and such an argument is reserved by Applicant.

Claim 3 stands rejected as obvious by Prevost in view of Boschert. Claims 6 and 7 stand rejected as obvious by Prevost in view Raynor. Claims 3 and 6-7 all depend from claim 1 and therefore incorporate the limitations of claim 1. Neither Boschert nor Raynor remedy the deficiencies of Prevost. As such, claims 3 and 6-7 are allowable for at least the reason of their dependency on claim 1. This statement is made without addressing the individual allowable limitations of the dependent claims and such an argument is reserved by Applicant.

Accordingly, Applicant respectfully requests reconsideration and withdrawal of the rejections of claims 1-3, 5-10.

b. Independent claim 11 is patentable because neither Prevost nor Boschert discloses a substantially flat bottom surface with an annular outer edge and an outward facing surface encircling the substantially flat bottom surface.

Independent claim 11 is amended to recite "a substantially flat bottom surface with an annular outer edge, and an outward facing surface encircling the substantially flat bottom surface, [...]the first lower surface of the first thread and from the second lower surface of the second thread are spaced above and apart from the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom surface of the plug." Independent claim 11 is rejected in view of a combination of Prevost and Boschert. Prevost and Boschert, however, does not describe the limitations of amended claim 11 either individually or in combination.

To reject a claim as obvious, the Office must articulate "a finding that the prior art included each element claimed, although not necessarily in a single prior art reference, with the only difference between the claimed invention and the prior art being the lack of actual combination of the elements in a single prior art reference[.]" *MPEP 2143(I)(A)*.

Prevost discloses a set screw 1 with external threads 5 on the lower end 42. The Examiner alleges a surface of the external threads 5 discloses the claimed lower surface. *Office action, p. 8; Fig. A, below.*

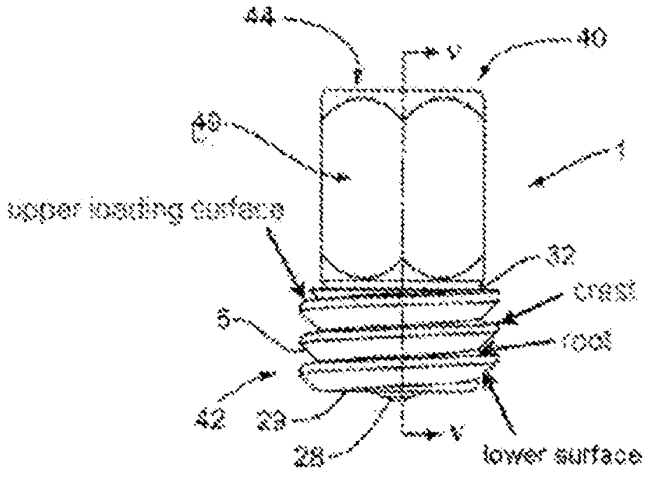


Fig. A

The surface identified by the Examiner is contiguous with the bottom end 29 of the set screw 1. That is, the surface of the external thread 5 and the bottom end 29 adjoin each other. This is seen clearly in Figure 5, below.

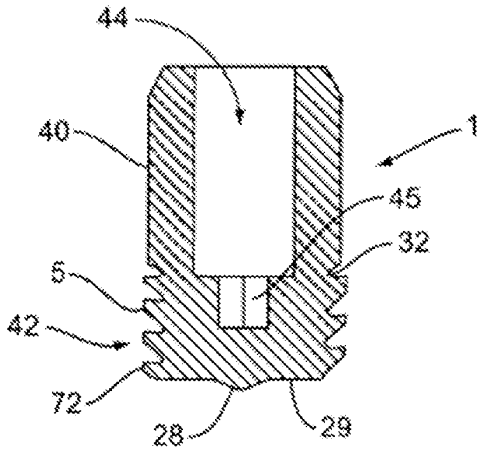


FIG. 5

Claim 11 requires "a substantially flat bottom surface with an annular outer edge, and an outward facing surface encircling the substantially flat bottom surface, [...]the first lower surface of the first thread and from the second lower surface of the second thread are spaced above and apart from the annular outer edge of the substantially flat bottom surface of the plug." As seen in Figure 5, the lower surface, as identified by the Examiner, is connected to the outer edge of the bottom end 29. Stated differently, there is no a substantially flat bottom surface and an outward facing surface encircling the substantially flat bottom surface. For at least these reasons, Prevost does not disclose all the elements of independent claim 11. Boschert does not remedy the deficiencies of Prevost. And therefore claim 11 is therefore allowable.

Claims 12-15 and 17 are similarly rejected as obvious in view of a combination of Prevost and Boschert. Claim 14 is canceled so the rejection of that claim is moot. Claims 12-13, 15, and 17 depend from independent claim 11, and therefore incorporate the allowable limitations from claim 1. Thus, the dependent claims are allowable for at least this reason. This statement is made without addressing the individual allowable limitations of the dependent claims and such an argument is reserved by Applicant.

Claim 16 stands rejected as obvious by Prevost in view of Boschert, and in further view of Raynor. Claims 16 depends from claim 11 and therefore incorporates the limitations of claim

11. Neither Boschert nor Raynor remedy the deficiencies of Prevost. As such, claim 16 is allowable for at least the reason of its dependency on claim 11. This statement is made without addressing the individual allowable limitations of the dependent claims and such an argument is reserved by Applicant.

Accordingly, Applicant respectfully requests reconsideration and withdrawal of the rejections of claims 11-13 and 15-17.

III. Double Patenting Rejection

Applicant acknowledges that claims 1-17 stand provisionally rejected under the judicially created, i.e. nonstatutory obviousness-type double patenting doctrine as being unpatentable over claims 1-26 of U.S. Patent No. 10,548,641. Applicant respectfully submits, however, that the Examiner has not yet indicated that the pending claims 1-17 of the present application would be allowable but for the nonstatutory double patenting rejection, and that no further amendments to the claims are required or permitted. Consequently, it is the understanding of the Applicant that the scope of the pending claims cannot be readily ascertained until after such indication is provided, and that the filing of a terminal disclaimer prior to such indication would be premature. Applicant therefore wishes to defer action on the double-patenting grounds until after the claims have been provided with an indication of allowability with regards to any rejections based upon the prior art or upon grounds other than nonstatutory double patenting. Moreover, if the nonstatutory double patenting rejection is resolved in Applicant's favor, such as through the amendments to the claims entered above, Applicant respectfully requests that the nonstatutory double patenting rejection be withdrawn.

IV. New Claims

New claims 18-22 are added with this paper. No new matter is added with the new claims. Rather, all elements of the new claims are fully supported by the original application. All new claims depend from either independent claim 1 or independent claim 11. Therefore, the claims are allowable for at least the reason of their dependency on an allowable independent claim. This statement is made without addressing the individual allowable limitations of the dependent claims and such arguments are reserved by Applicant. As such, Applicant respectfully requests acceptance and allowance of the new claims.

CONCLUSION

In summary, Applicant submits that the present claims are in condition for allowance. The Examiner is requested contact the undersigned counsel if allowance of the claims can be facilitated by examiner's amendment or telephone interview.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees or credit any overpayment to Deposit Order Account No. 50-1662.

Dated: June 9, 2021

Respectfully submitted,

/Joshua J. Pranckun/
Joshua J. Pranckun, Registration No. 70712
Attorney for Assignee
USPTO Customer No. 24030

Polsinelli PC
1401 Lawrence Street
Suite 2300
Denver, CO 80202
Phone: (303) 583-8269
Fax: (303) 942-3621

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Application No.	: TBD	Confirmation No.	:	
First Applicant	: Roger P. Jackson	Art Unit	:	
Filed	: Herewith	Examiner	:	
Title	MEDICAL IMPLANT RECEIVERS HAVING BREAK-OFF EXTENSIONS WITH DUAL LEAD IN CLOSURE MATING THREAD FORMS			
Docket No.	: JAC023-667905			
Customer No.	: 24030	Entity Status	:	Undiscounted

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
PURSUANT TO 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.56, 1.97, AND 1.98

Commissioner:

The Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the patents, patent applications, publications, or other information cataloged on the enclosed Form PTO/SB/08A during examination of the above-identified patent application. The order of presentation of the references should not be construed as an indication of importance. These references are submitted for the Examiner's consideration and are submitted pursuant to an Applicant's duty of disclosure under 37 C.F.R. § 1.56.

Copies of all of the cited documents

☐ are enclosed unless otherwise indicated on the enclosed Form PTO/SB/08a.

☐ have been previously furnished to the Office in prior application No. _____, filed _____, which the present application relies upon for an earlier effective filing date under 35 U.S.C. § 120. Therefore, no copies of the cited documents are included herewith pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(d); MPEP § 609(III)(A)(2).

☒ are enclosed unless they are U.S. patents or U.S. patent application publications pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a).

I
BASIS

This information disclosure statement is filed pursuant to

☐ 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(b).
This information disclosure statement is filed either (1) within three months of the filing date of a national application other than a continued prosecution application under 37 C.F.R. § 1.53(d); (2) within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in 37 C.F.R. § 1.491 in an international application; (3) before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits; or (4) before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under 37 C.F.R. § 1.114, whichever event occurs last.

Accordingly, this information disclosure statement requires no fee and no certification.

☒ 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c).
This information disclosure statement is filed after the period specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(b), but before the mailing date of any of (1) a final action under 37 C.F.R. § 1.113; (2) a notice of allowance under 37 C.F.R. § 1.311; or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application.

Accordingly, this information disclosure statement requires either the fee specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(p) for submission of an information disclosure statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c), or a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e).

☐ 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(d).
This information disclosure statement is filed after the period specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c) since a

☐ final action under 37 C.F.R. § 1.113

☐ notice of allowance under 37 C.F.R. § 1.311

was mailed to the Applicant(s) on _____. The issue fee has not been paid herein.

Accordingly, this information disclosure statement requires the fee set forth in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(p) to consider an information disclosure statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(d), and a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e).

If this statement crosses in the mail with an Office action, or is otherwise not in the indicated category of 37 C.F.R. § 1.97, it is respectfully requested that this statement be treated in the next appropriate category and made of record. To the extent required, please treat this paper as a conditional petition for acceptance of the information disclosure statement.

II
FEES

Any required fee is being paid as indicated below by an enclosed check or our deposit account.

☐ No fee is due.

☒ The fee specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(p) for submission of an information disclosure statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c) or (d) is due.

☐ A check is enclosed for the required fee.

☐ Payment by credit card is submitted simultaneously herewith for the required fee.

☒ Please charge the required fee to our deposit account no. 50-1662.

☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional required fees or credit any overpayments associated with this information disclosure statement to our deposit account no. 50-1662.

III
CERTIFICATION

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e), I state as follows:

☒ No statement is necessary.

☐ Each item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e)(1).

☐ No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to my knowledge after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e)(2).

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.704(d), I state as follows:

☐ Each item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart application, and this communication was not received by any individual designated in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(c) more than thirty days prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

IV
FOREIGN LANGUAGE REFERENCES

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a)(3)(i), any information disclosure statement filed under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97 shall include a concise explanation of the relevance, as it is presently understood by the individual designated in § 1.56(c) most knowledgeable about the content of the information, of each patent, publication, or other information listed that is not in the English language. The concise explanation may be either separate from the specification or incorporated therein. In compliance with the rules, the Applicant states as follows:

☒ No concise explanation is required since all cited references are in English.

☐ A concise explanation of the relevance of one or more foreign language references is attached.

☐ No English language version was available for one or more foreign language references.

☐ According to the procedural policy adopted by the PTO with regard to disclosure requirements, the Applicant is satisfying the disclosure requirement pursuant to MPEP § 609.04(a)(III) by submitting herewith the following:

- ☐ An English language version of one or more non-English language documents.
- ☐ An English language equivalent application or patent of one or more non-English language applications or patents.
- ☐ An English language version of one or more search reports or other actions by one or more foreign patent offices in one or more counterpart foreign applications, which indicate the degree of relevance found by the foreign office(s).
- ☐ An English language abstract of one or more non-English language references.

The Applicant has not analyzed these documents and, therefore, declines to comment on their relevance at this time.

V
REMARKS

☐ Pursuant to the doctrines established by the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit in *McKesson Information Solutions, Inc. v. Bridge Medical, Inc.*, 487 F.3d 897 (Fed. Cir. 2007) and *Dayco Products, Inc. v. Total Containment, Inc.*, 329 F.3d 1358 (Fed. Cir. 2003), Applicant(s) submit documents herewith reflecting the prosecution history of applications that Applicant(s) believe may be considered related to the present application.

☐ In satisfaction of the duty of disclosure under 37 C.F.R. § 1.56, and as required by M.P.E.P. § 2001.06(b), the Examiner is requested to consider the pending U.S. patent applications listed in "Attachment A," which are owned by the Assignee of the present

application. The pending patent applications may include subject matter similar to that of the present application.

It is respectfully requested that

(1) the Examiner sign the enclosed Form PTO/SB/08a to evidence that the cited information has been fully considered by the Patent and Trademark Office during the examination of this application; and

(2) the citations for the cited information be printed on any patent that issues from this application.

The submission of this information disclosure statement by the Applicant(s) shall not be construed as a representation that a search has been performed or that no other material information under 37 C.F.R. § 1.56 exists. See 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(g).

The submission of this information disclosure statement by the Applicant(s) shall not be construed as an admission that any information cited or referred to herein is, or is considered to be, material to the patentability of one or more of the pending claims in this application pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(b), unless specifically designated by the Applicant(s) as such. See 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(h).

The submission of this information disclosure statement by the Applicant(s) shall not be construed as an admission that any information cited or referred to herein is, or is considered to be, or even qualifies as "prior art" under 35 U.S.C. § 102 with respect to this invention, unless specifically designated by the Applicant(s) as such.

Notwithstanding any statements by the Applicant(s), the Examiner is urged to form his or her own conclusion regarding the relevance of the cited information.

VI
CONCLUSION

The Examiner is encouraged to contact the undersigned attorney to discuss any questions concerning this information disclosure statement or any of the information cited or referred to herein.

Respectfully submitted June 9, 2021

/Joshua J. Pranckun/

Joshua J. Pranckun, Registration No. 70712
Attorney for Assignee
USPTO Customer No.

Polsinelli PC
1401 Lawrence Street
Suite 2300
Denver, CO 80202
Phone: (303) 583-8469
Fax: (303) 942-3621

PTO/SB/06 (09-11)
Approved for use through 1/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875	Application or Docket Number 17/123,499	Filing Date 12/16/2020	☐ To be Mailed

ENTITY: ☑ LARGE ☐ SMALL ☐ MICRO

APPLICATION AS FILED - PART I

FOR	(Column 1) NUMBER FILED	(Column 2) NUMBER EXTRA		RATE ($)	FEE ($)
☐ BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A		N/A	
☐ SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m))	N/A	N/A		N/A	
☐ EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A		N/A	
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	minus 20 =	*		x $100 =	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	minus 3 =	*		x $480 =	
☐ APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $310 ($155 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).				
☐ MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))					
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.				TOTAL	

APPLICATION AS AMENDED - PART II

		(Column 1)		(Column 2)	(Column 3)			
AMENDMENT	06/09/2021	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA		RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	* 20	Minus	** 20	= 0		x $100 =	0
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	* 2	Minus	*** 3	= 0		x $480 =	0
	☐ Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))							
	☐ FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))							
							TOTAL ADD'L FEE	0

		(Column 1)		(Column 2)	(Column 3)			
AMENDMENT		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA		RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=		x $0 =	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=		x $0 =	
	☐ Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))							
	☐ FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))							
							TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.	LIE
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".	/JAMES ELLIOTT/
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".	
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.	

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.16. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
17/123,499	12/16/2020	Roger P. Jackson	JAC023-667905

CONFIRMATION NO. 2823

24030
POLSINELLI PC
900 WEST 48TH PLACE
SUITE 900
KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895

PUBLICATION NOTICE

OC000000125401332

Title:MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

Publication No.US-2021-0128202-A1
Publication Date:05/06/2021

NOTICE OF PUBLICATION OF APPLICATION

The above-identified application will be electronically published as a patent application publication pursuant to 37 CFR 1.211, et seq. The patent application publication number and publication date are set forth above.

The publication may be accessed through the USPTO's publically available Searchable Databases via the Internet at www.uspto.gov. The direct link to access the publication is currently http://www.uspto.gov/patft/.

The publication process established by the Office does not provide for mailing a copy of the publication to applicant. A copy of the publication may be obtained from the Office upon payment of the appropriate fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.19(a)(1). Orders for copies of patent application publications are handled by the USPTO's Public Records Division. The Public Records Division can be reached by telephone at (571) 272-3150 or (800) 972-6382, by facsimile at (571) 273-3250, by mail addressed to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Public Records Division, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 or via the Internet.

In addition, information on the status of the application, including the mailing date of Office actions and the dates of receipt of correspondence filed in the Office, may also be accessed via the Internet through the Patent Electronic Business Center at www.uspto.gov using the public side of the Patent Application Information and Retrieval (PAIR) system. The direct link to access this status information is currently https://portal.uspto.gov/pair/PublicPair. Prior to publication, such status information is confidential and may only be obtained by applicant using the private side of PAIR.

Further assistance in electronically accessing the publication, or about PAIR, is available by calling the Patent Electronic Business Center at 1-866-217-9197.

Office of Data Managment, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/123,499	12/16/2020	Roger P. Jackson	JAC023-667905	2823

24030 7590 03/09/2021

POLSINELLI PC
900 WEST 48TH PLACE
SUITE 900
KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895

EXAMINER	
COMSTOCK, DAVID C	

ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
3773	

NOTIFICATION DATE	DELIVERY MODE
03/09/2021	ELECTRONIC

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

uspt@polsinelli.com

Office Action Summary	**Application No.** 17/123,499	**Applicant(s)** Jackson et al.	
	Examiner DAVID C COMSTOCK	**Art Unit** 3773	**AIA (FITF) Status** No

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --

Period for Reply

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE 3 MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

1)☑ Responsive to communication(s) filed on 16 December 2020.

☐ A declaration(s)/affidavit(s) under **37 CFR 1.130(b)** was/were filed on _____.

2a)☐ This action is **FINAL.** 2b) ☑ This action is non-final.

3)☐ An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on _____; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.

4)☐ Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims*

5) ☑ Claim(s) 1-17 is/are pending in the application.

5a) Of the above claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.

6) ☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.

7) ☑ Claim(s) 1-17 is/are rejected.

8) ☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.

9) ☐ Claim(s) _____ are subject to restriction and/or election requirement

* If any claims have been determined allowable, you may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at a participating intellectual property office for the corresponding application. For more information, please see http://www.uspto.gov/patents/init_events/pph/index.jsp or send an inquiry to **PPHfeedback@uspto.gov.**

Application Papers

10)☐ The specification is objected to by the Examiner.

11)☑ The drawing(s) filed on 16 December 2020 is/are: a)☑ accepted or b)☐ objected to by the Examiner.

Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).

Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

12)☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).

Certified copies:

a)☐ All b)☐ Some** c)☐ None of the:

1.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.

2.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.

3.☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

** See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

Attachment(s)

1) ☑ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)

2) ☑ Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO/SB/08a and/or PTO/SB/08b) Paper No(s)/Mail Date 16 DEC 2020.

3) ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413) Paper No(s)/Mail Date _____.

4) ☐ Other: _____.

DETAILED ACTION

Notice of Pre-AIA or AIA Status

The present application is being examined under the pre-AIA first to invent provisions.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 103

In the event the determination of the status of the application as subject to AIA 35 U.S.C. 102 and 103 (or as subject to pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 102 and 103) is incorrect, any correction of the statutory basis for the rejection will not be considered a new ground of rejection if the prior art relied upon, and the rationale supporting the rejection, would be the same under either status.

The following is a quotation of pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

> (a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

This application currently names joint inventors. In considering patentability of the claims under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(a), the examiner presumes that the subject matter of the various claims was commonly owned at the time any inventions covered therein were made absent any evidence to the contrary. Applicant is advised of the obligation under 37 CFR 1.56 to point out the inventor and invention dates of each claim that was not commonly owned at the time a later invention was made in order for the examiner to consider the applicability of pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(c) and potential pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 102(e), (f) or (g) prior art under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(a).

Claims 1, 2, 4, 5 and 8-10 are rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Prevost, et al. ("Prevost"; 2011/0106179).

Regarding claim 1, Prevost discloses a medical implant assembly 2 (Fig. 1) comprising: a receiver 20 (refer to Fig. 2) having a first arm, e.g., 22, and a second arm, e.g., 23, spaced apart from each other by a channel 21, the first arm and the second arm each having a top surface, e.g., 24, 25, respectively, and an inner surface having discontinuously helically wound threads, e.g., 7, extending up to the top surface, the channel being formed by the first arm and the second arm opening onto the top surfaces and configured to receive a rod 3 (refer to Fig. 1); and a closure 1 being threaded and configured to close the channel (id.), the closure having an axis of rotation X and a continuously helically wound thread form 5, the continuously helically wound thread form having a start structure 72 (Fig. 8; paras. 0006 and 0031; discussing the thread start 72 having a truncation cut 74 "so the threading begins smoothly and consistently at the same location") and an upper loading surface (see Fig. A, below) extending between a root (id.) and a crest (id.) of the continuously helically wound thread form, the start structure 72 (Fig. 8) having a leading face (Fig. B, below; cf. Fig. 8) extending below the upper loading surface, the leading face including a partial concave surface (see Fig. B, below) adjacent the root (Fig. A). Prevost teaches that the thread is formed with a truncation cut 74 (Fig. 8) having a smooth transition at the thread

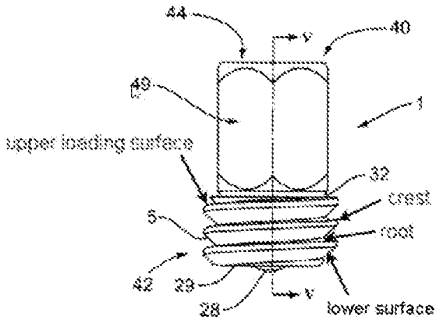


Fig. A

start 72 (Fig. 8 and cf. Fig. B) so the threading begins smoothly and consistently at the same location (para. 0031).

Prevost does not disclose the partially convex surface adjacent the crest (*added by Examiner to Fig. B for illustration and the following discussion; cf. Fig. 8*). However, as previously mentioned, Prevost is interested in providing a thread with a smooth transition "so the threading begins smoothly and consistently at the same location" (supra and para. 0031). In keeping with this guiding principle, it would have been obvious to a person having ordinary skill in the art before the effective filing date of the claimed invention to round off the sharp edge (i.e., include an exterior fillet, in basic engineering terms; similar to the disclosed partially concave surface, which is essentially an interior fillet) in order to provide an even smoother transition so the threading begins smoothly and consistently at the same location without catching any sharp edges. It would have been further obvious to define the radius of curvature of both the partial concave and partial convex surfaces to be substantially equal to each other, e.g., for simplicity of design and manufacturing and to facilitate a smooth transition.

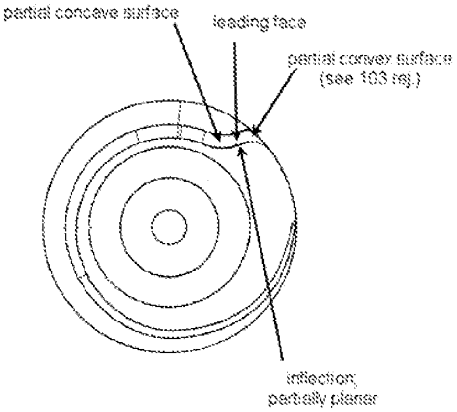


Fig. 8

Regarding claim 2, the partial concave surface would tangentially blend with the partial convex surface where the two have the same radius of curvature (supra and Fig. B illustration).

Regarding claim 4, the continuously helically wound thread form of the closure includes a lower surface (Fig. A) disposed between the root and the crest, and wherein the leading face of the start structure extends between the upper loading surface and the lower surface (Fig. B).

Regarding claim 5, the leading face of the start structure would include an at least partial planar surface at the region of inflection between the concave and convex portions (Fig. B).

Regarding claim 8, the start structure includes a bottom beveled surface (annotated Fig. 3).

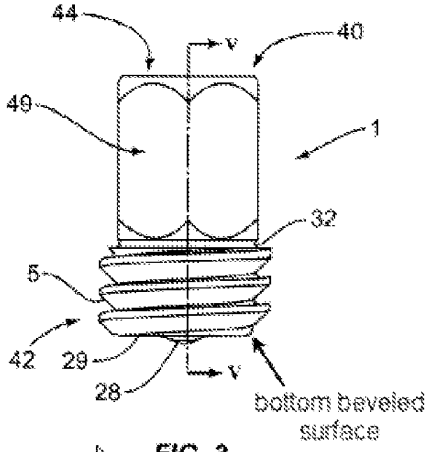


FIG. 3

Regarding claim 9, the upper loading surface of the continuously helically wound thread form of the threaded closure slopes rearward from the root to towards the crest (the upward angle of the thread, i.e., helix angle).

Regarding claim 10, Prevost discloses the claimed invention (supra) except for explicitly reciting that the slope of the upper loading surface is greater than five degrees measured from a horizontal line drawn tangent along the upper loading surface. It would have been obvious before the effective filing date of the claimed invention to a person having ordinary skill in the art to select a slope greater than five degrees, e.g., to provide a desired rate of advancement and an efficient and effective closure mechanism. It is further noted that it has been held that where the general conditions of a claim are disclosed in the prior art, discovering the optimum or workable ranges involves only routine skill in the art. *In re Aller*, 105 USPQ 233.

Claim 3 is rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Prevost, et al. ("Prevost"; 2011/0106179), as applied to claim 1, in view of Boschert (2005/0277928).

Prevost discloses the claimed medical implant assembly (supra) except for a second start structure at a location diametrically opposed to the first start structure (e.g., 72, Fig. 8). Boschert also discloses a medical implant assembly 10 (Fig. 1) and teaches that the threads of a set screw, which would correspond to appropriate receiver threads, can be designed with a double lead (i.e., a second thread and second start) "to allow the set screw to start more easily than with a single lead" (para. 0057). It would have been obvious before the effective filing date of the claimed invention to a person having ordinary skill in the art to configure the set screw and cooperating threads of Prevost with a second thread and second start, in view of Boschert, in order to allow the set screw to start more easily than with a single thread and start. It would have been further obvious to position the thread starts at diametrically opposed locations, e.g., to provide maximum clearance for ease of starting and to correspond to the locations of the threads on the opposing arms of the receiver.

Claim 6 is rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Prevost, et al. ("Prevost"; 2011/0106179), as applied to claim 1, in view of Raynor et al. ("Raynor"; 2004/0162560).

Regarding claim 6, Prevost discloses the claimed implant assembly (supra) except for the arms including threaded breakoff extensions. Raynor also discloses a medical implant assembly 10 (see, e.g., Figs. 1 and 2) and teaches that arms of a receiver 12 can include a first and second breakoff extension 22, 24 (para. 0022) coupled to the top surface of each arm, respectively. The breakoff extensions include an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread

form 28, 30, respectively (Fig. 1 and para. 0022). The discontinuously helically wound thread form of each breakoff extension is configured to cooperate with the discontinuously helically wound thread of each arm to rotatably transfer a closure (set screw) 14 there between prior to the first and second breakoff extensions being separated from the first and second arms, respectively (para. 0022). The breakoff arms facilitate easier access of the closure and easy breaking off and removal of the extensions when the closure is secured in place (id.).

Thus, it would have been obvious before the effective filing date of the claimed invention to a person having ordinary skill in the art to provide the implant assembly of Prevost with arms including a breakoff extension coupled to the top surface of each arm, each breakoff extension including an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread form configured to cooperate with the discontinuously helically wound thread of each arm, in view of Raynor, to rotatably transfer the closure there between prior to the first and second breakoff extensions being separated from the first and second arms, and facilitate easier access of the closure and easy breaking off and removal of the extensions when the closure is secured in place.

Regarding claim 7, Raynor further teaches that a radiused notch 32 (refer to Fig. 1) is located at a convergence of the first breakoff extension 22 and the first arm at the top surface thereof, and a second outer radiused notch 34 is located at a convergence of the second breakoff extension 24 and the second arm at the top surface thereof, each outer radiused notch being located opposite a first and second inner radiused recess (i.e., generally the thread root at that location), respectively. The radiused notch facilitates easy breaking off of the extensions (para. 0022).

Therefore, it would have been further obvious before the effective filing date of the claimed invention to a person having ordinary skill in the art to provide a radiused notch located at a convergence of each breakoff extension and each respective arm at the top surface thereof, each radiused notch being located opposite a respective inner radiused recess (i.e., generally the thread root at that location), in view of Raynor, to facilitate the easy breaking off of the extensions.

Claims 11-15 and 17 are rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Prevost, et al. ("Prevost"; 2011/0106179) in view of Boschert (2005/0277928).

Regarding claim 11, Prevost discloses a medical implant assembly 2 (Fig. 1) comprising: a receiver 20 (refer to Fig. 2) having a first arm, e.g., 22, and a second arm, e.g., 23, spaced apart from each other by a channel 21, the first arm and the second arm each having a top surface, e.g., 24, 25, respectively, and an inner surface, e.g., 7, the first and second arms each having discontinuously helically wound threads, e.g., 7, extending up to the top surface, the channel being formed by the first arm and the second arm opening onto the top surfaces and configured to receive a rod 3 (refer to Fig. 1); and a closure 1 configured to close the channel (id.), the closure having an axis of rotation X and a continuously helically wound thread form 5, the continuously helically wound thread form having a start structure 72 (Fig. 8; paras. 0006 and 0031; discussing the thread start 72 having a truncation cut 74 "so the threading begins smoothly and consistently at the same location") and an upper loading surface (see Fig. A) extending

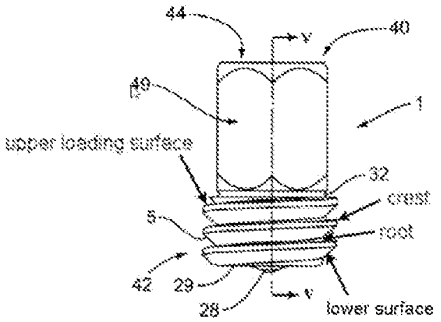


Fig. A

between a root (id.) and a crest (id.) of the continuously helically wound thread form, the start structure 72 (Fig. 8) having a leading face (Fig. B; cf. Fig. 8) extending below the upper loading surface, the leading face including a partial concave surface (see Fig. B) adjacent the root (Fig. A). Prevost teaches that the thread is formed with a truncation cut 74 (Fig. 8) having a smooth transition at the thread start 72 (Fig. 8 and cf. Fig. B) so the threading begins smoothly and consistently at the same location (para. 0031).

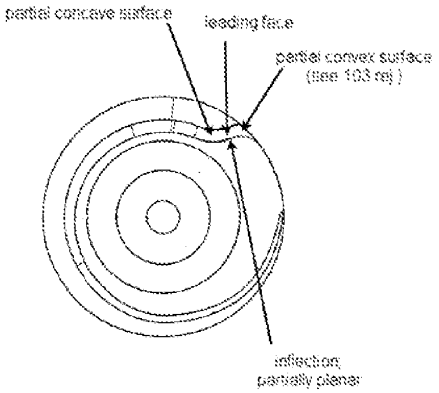


Fig. B

Prevost does not disclose the partially convex surface adjacent the crest (*added by Examiner to Fig. B for illustration and the following discussion; cf. Fig. 8*). However, as previously mentioned, Prevost is interested in providing a thread with a smooth transition "so the threading begins smoothly and consistently at the same location" (supra and para. 0031). In keeping with this guiding principle, it would have been obvious to a person having ordinary skill in the art before the effective filing date of the claimed invention to round off the sharp edge (i.e., include an exterior fillet, in basic engineering terms; similar to the disclosed partially concave surface, which is essentially an interior fillet) in order to provide an even smoother transition so the threading begins smoothly and consistently at the same location without catching any sharp edges. It would have been further obvious to define the radius of curvature of both the partial concave and partial convex surfaces to be substantially equal to each other, e.g., for simplicity of design and manufacturing and to facilitate a smooth transition.

Prevost also does not disclose a second thread and second start structure in addition to the first thread and start structure. Boschert discloses a medical implant assembly 10 (Fig. 1) and teaches that the threads of a set screw, which would correspond to appropriate receiver threads, can be designed with a double lead (i.e., a second thread and second start) "to allow the set screw to start more easily than with a single lead" (para. 0057). It would have been further obvious before the effective filing date of the claimed invention to a person having ordinary skill in the art to configure the set screw and cooperating threads of Prevost, as modified above, with a second thread and second start, in view of Boschert, in order to allow the set screw to start more easily than with a single lead.

Regarding claim 12, it would have been further obvious to position the thread starts at diametrically opposed locations on the closure, e.g., to provide maximum clearance for ease of starting and to correspond to the locations of the threads on the opposing arms of the receiver.

Regarding claim 13, each leading face would include an inflection point where the curvature transitions from concave to convex (see, e.g., Fig. B showing the first such inflection point; the second being comparable and provided by Boschert (supra)).

Regarding claim 14, each of the two threads (the second thread and start being taught by Boschert (supra)) comprises a lower surface (e.g., Fig. A) disposed between the root and the crest, and wherein the leading face of the start structure extends between the upper loading surface and the lower surface (cf. Fig. B).

Regarding claim 15, the leading face of each start structure would include an at least partial planar surface at the region of inflection between the concave and convex portions (cf. Fig. B).

Regarding claim 17, each start structure of the combination would include a bottom beveled surface portion (cf., e.g., annotated Fig. 3).

Claim 16 is rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Prevost, et al. ("Prevost"; 2011/0106179) in view of Boschert (2005/0277928), as applied to claim 11, and further in view of Raynor et al. ("Raynor"; 2004/0162560).

The combination of Prevost and Boschert, as set forth above, discloses the claimed implant assembly except for the top surfaces of the first and second arms including a breakoff extension with an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread form, the first and second arm breakoff extension thread forms being continuous with the respective discontinuously helically wound thread form on the inner surface of the first and second arms.

Raynor also discloses a medical implant assembly 10 (see, e.g., Figs. 1 and 2) and teaches that arms of a receiver 12 can include a first and second breakoff extension 22, 24 (para. 0022) coupled to the top surface of each arm, respectively. The breakoff extensions include an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread form 28, 30, respectively (Fig. 1 and para. 0022). The discontinuously helically wound thread form of each breakoff extension is configured to cooperate with the discontinuously helically wound thread of each arm to rotatably transfer a closure (set screw) 14 there between prior to the first and second breakoff extensions being separated from the first and second arms, respectively (para. 0022). The breakoff arms facilitate easier access of the closure and easy breaking off and removal of the extensions when the closure is secured in place (id.).

Thus, it would have been obvious before the effective filing date of the claimed invention to a person having ordinary skill in the art to provide the implant assembly of the

combination of Prevost and Boschert, as set forth above, with top surfaces of the first and second arms each including a breakoff extension with an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread form, the first and second arm breakoff extension thread forms being continuous with the respective discontinuously helically wound thread form on the inner surface of the first and second arms, in view of Raynor, in order to rotatably transfer the closure there between prior to the first and second breakoff extensions being separated from the first and second arms, and facilitate easier access of the closure and easy breaking off and removal of the extensions when the closure is secured in place.

Double Patenting

The nonstatutory double patenting rejection is based on a judicially created doctrine grounded in public policy (a policy reflected in the statute) so as to prevent the unjustified or improper timewise extension of the "right to exclude" granted by a patent and to prevent possible harassment by multiple assignees. A nonstatutory double patenting rejection is appropriate where the conflicting claims are not identical, but at least one examined application claim is not patentably distinct from the reference claim(s) because the examined application claim is either anticipated by, or would have been obvious over, the reference claim(s). See, e.g., *In re Berg*, 140 F.3d 1428, 46 USPQ2d 1226 (Fed. Cir. 1998); *In re Goodman*, 11 F.3d 1046, 29 USPQ2d 2010 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *In re Longi*, 759 F.2d 887, 225 USPQ 645 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *In re Van Ornum*, 686 F.2d 937, 214 USPQ 761 (CCPA 1982); *In re Vogel*, 422 F.2d 438, 164 USPQ 619 (CCPA 1970); *In re Thorington*, 418 F.2d 528, 163 USPQ 644 (CCPA 1969).

A timely filed terminal disclaimer in compliance with 37 CFR 1.321(c) or 1.321(d) may be used to overcome an actual or provisional rejection based on nonstatutory double patenting provided the reference application or patent either is shown to be commonly owned with the examined application, or claims an invention made as a result of activities undertaken within the scope of a joint research agreement. See MPEP § 717.02 for applications subject to examination under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA as explained in MPEP § 2159. See MPEP § 2146 *et seq.* for applications not subject to examination under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA. A terminal disclaimer must be signed in compliance with 37 CFR 1.321(b).

The USPTO Internet website contains terminal disclaimer forms which may be used. Please visit www.uspto.gov/patent/patents-forms. The filing date of the application in which the form is filed determines what form (e.g., PTO/SB/25, PTO/SB/26, PTO/AIA/25, or PTO/AIA/26) should be used. A web-based eTerminal Disclaimer may be filled out completely online using web-screens. An eTerminal Disclaimer that meets all requirements is auto-processed and approved immediately upon submission. For more information about eTerminal Disclaimers, refer to www.uspto.gov/patents/process/file/efs/guidance/eTD-info-I.jsp.

Claims 1-17 are rejected on the ground of nonstatutory double patenting as being unpatentable over claims 1-26 of U.S. Patent No. 10,548,641. Although the claims at issue are not identical, they are not patentably distinct from each other because the differences amount to minor changes in the arrangement and phraseology of the claim limitations. The claims of the issued patent and the present application are directed to the substantially same invention of an implant assembly characterized by a receiver having threaded arms and a threaded

closure, the closure having a thread start structure with a concave and convex surface and in some claims a dual-start configuration. The claims also are directed to threaded breakoff extensions and other details such as a beveled surface. Where differences exist, the claims of the issued patent recite more elements and are more specific (e.g., further details regarding the receiver and the discontinuously wound threads on the arms). Thus, the invention of the patent claims are in effect a "species" of the "generic" invention of the application claims. It has been held that the generic invention is "anticipated" by the "species". See *In re Goodman*, 29 USPQ2d 2010 (Fed. Cir. 1993). Since the application claims are anticipated by the patent claims, they are not patentably distinct from the patent claims.

The claims of the present application are generally mapped to the claims of the issued patent as follows:

Application 17/123,499	Patent 10,548,641
1	1, 9-12, 21
2	14
3	5
4	1
5	14
6	20
7	20
8	13
9	1
10	1
11	1, 9-12, 21
12	5
13	14
14	1
15	14
16	20
17	13

Conclusion

The prior art made of record and not relied upon is considered pertinent to applicant's disclosure (see attached PTO-892). Included on the PTO-892 or cited by Applicant, the following references are particularly relevant to the thread start structure.

Wilcox (2010/0137918), on attached PTO-892, discloses a bone anchor having a set screw with a truncated thread that facilitates easier threading (end of para. 0050).

Prevost et al. (2011/0270321), cited by Applicant, shows a bone anchor having a set screw with a thread having a truncation cut in Figure 9.

Kirschman (2011/0152947), cited by Applicant, teaches a bone anchor with a cap (set screw) starting thread having a cut-out area to provide tactile feedback to the surgeon as the cap drops into the receiver (para. 0038).

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to David Comstock whose telephone number is (571) 272-4710. The examiner can normally be reached Monday-Friday, 9 a.m. - 6 p.m.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, ***please contact* the examiner's supervisor, SPE, *at* (571) 272-4719**. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300. Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pair-direct.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the

Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a

USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call

800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/
Examiner, Art Unit 3773

/EDUARDO C ROBERT/
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3773

Notice of References Cited	Application/Control No. 17/123,499	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Jackson et al.	
	Examiner DAVID C COMSTOCK	Art Unit 3773	Page 1 of 1

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	CPC Classification	US Classification
*	A	US-5320467-A	06-1994	Erbes; John G.	F16B35/047	411/386
*	B	US-20040162560-A1	08-2004	Raynor, Donald E.	F16B33/02	606/278
*	C	US-20040172032-A1	09-2004	Jackson, Roger P.	A61B17/683	606/278
*	D	US-20050267477-A1	12-2005	Jackson, Roger P.	A61B17/7032	606/278
*	E	US-20050277928-A1	12-2005	Boschert, Paul F.	A61B17/7037	606/328
*	F	US-20100137918-A1	06-2010	WILCOX; Bryan S.	A61B17/7037	606/301
*	G	US-7927360-B2	04-2011	Pond, Jr.; John D.	A61B17/7037	606/265
*	H	US-20110106179-A1	05-2011	Prevost; Julien J.	A61B17/7032	606/308
*	I	US-20150119945-A1	04-2015	Sasing; Jude L.	A61B17/7032	606/308
*	J	US-10548641-B2	02-2020	Jackson; Roger P.	A61B17/8665	1/1
	K					
	L					
	M					

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	CPC Classification
	N					
	O					
	P					
	Q					
	R					
	S					
	T					

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)
	U	
	V	
	W	
	X	

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

Search Notes	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	Art Unit
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

CPC - Searched*		
Symbol	**Date**	**Examiner**
A61B17/7035, 7032, 863, 8665, 8685	02/26/2021	/DC/
A61B2090/037	02/26/2021	/DC/
A61B2017/8655	02/26/2021	/DC/

CPC Combination Sets - Searched*		
Symbol	**Date**	**Examiner**

US Classification - Searched*			
Class	**Subclass**	**Date**	**Examiner**
606	264, 265, 266, 267, 270, 273, 306	02/26/2021	/DC/
403	362	02/26/2021	/DC/
411	386, 393	02/26/2021	/DC/

* See search history printout included with this form or the SEARCH NOTES box below to determine the scope of the search.

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/ Examiner, Art Unit 3773	

Search Notes	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	Art Unit
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

Search Notes		
Search Notes	**Date**	**Examiner**
PLUS search	02/25/2021	/DC/
EAST text search--see EAST search history (CPC and US classification search text limited except where otherwise indicated)	02/26/2021	/DC/
Inventor name search--see EAST search history	02/26/2021	/DC/
Consulted Daniel Wiley in class 403 (joints and connections): recommended speaking with Fleming Saether in class 411	02/25/2021	/DC/
Consulted Fleming Saether in class 411 (threaded fasteners): search 411/386 and F16B25/0052, 0042	02/25/2021	/DC/
References cited in parent applications 16779304, 15964502, 15469076, 14566356 and 13694849 have been reviewed	02/26/2021	/DC/

Interference Search			
US Class/CPC Symbol	**US Subclass/CPC Group**	**Date**	**Examiner**

/DAVID C COMSTOCK/ Examiner, Art Unit 3773	

Index of Claims	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	17/123,499	Jackson et al.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	DAVID C COMSTOCK	3773

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

CLAIMS

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	02/26/2021								
	1	✓								
	2	✓								
	3	✓								
	4	✓								
	5	✓								
	6	✓								
	7	✓								
	8	✓								
	9	✓								
	10	✓								
	11	✓								
	12	✓								
	13	✓								
	14	✓								
	15	✓								
	16	✓								
	17	✓								

PTO/SB/08A (08-03) U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE Substitute for Form 1449A/PTO **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)*	**APPLICATION NO.:** TBD	**FILING DATE:** Herewith
	INVENTOR(S): Roger P. Jackson	**ART UNIT:**
	EXAMINER NAME:	**ATTY. DOCKET NO.:** JAC023-667905

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A1.	2,005,348	06-1935	Michell	
	A2.	2,833,325	05-1958	Laisy	
	A3.	3,963,322	06-1976	Gryctko	
	A4.	4,600,225	07-1986	Blose	
	A5.	5,067,955	11-1991	Cotrel	
	A6.	5,092,635	03-1992	DeLange et al.	
	A7.	5,234,430	08-1993	Huebner	
	A8.	5,334,203	08-1994	Wagner	
	A9.	5,605,458	02-1997	Bailey et al.	
	A10.	5,607,304	03-1997	Bailey et al.	
	A11.	5,672,176	09-1997	Biedermann et al.	
	A12.	5,797,911	08-1998	Sherman et al.	
	A13.	6,006,930	12-1999	Dreyer et al.	
	A14.	6,010,502	01-2000	Bagby	
	A15.	6,063,090	05-2000	Schlapfer	
	A16.	6,077,262	06-2000	Schlapfer et al.	
	A17.	6,077,267	06-2000	Huene	
	A18.	6,254,146	07-2001	Church	
	A19.	6,296,642	10-2001	Morrison et al.	
	A20.	6,412,831	07-2002	Noel et al.	
	A21.	6,520,962	02-2003	Taylor et al.	
	A22.	6,554,834	04-2003	Crozet et al.	
	A23.	6,730,089	05-2004	Jackson	
	A24.	6,835,196	12-2004	Biedermann et al.	
	A25.	6,997,927	02-2006	Jackson	
	A26.	7,204,838	04-2007	Jackson	
	A27.	7,717,942	05-2010	Schumacher	
	A28.	7,591,839	09-2009	Biedermann et al.	
	A29.	7,794,477	09-2010	Melkent et al.	
	A30.	7,972,364	07-2011	Biedermann et al.	
	A31.	8,382,809	02-2013	Kaufman et al.	
	A32.	8,814,913	08-2014	Jackson	
	A33.	8,911,479	12-2014	Jackson et al.	
	A34.	9,068,587	06-2015	Sage et al.	

75819001.1

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A35.	9,445,847	09-2016	Biedermann et al.	
	A36.	7,250,052	07-2007	Landry et al.	
	A37.	7,766,945	08-2010	Nilsson et al.	
	A38.	8,162,989	04-2012	Khalili	
	A39.	8,828,060	09-2014	Biedermann et al.	
	A40.	8,998,956	04-2015	George	
	A41.	4,528,874	07-1985	Dunn	
	A42.	5,171,279	12-1992	Mathews	
	A43.	2,244,046	06-1941	Bradshaw	
	A44.	6,443,953	09-2002	Perra et al.	
	A45.	5,961,517	10-1999	Biedermann et al.	
	A46.	6,485,491	11-2002	Farris et al.	
	A47.	5,217,497	06-1993	Mehdian	
	A48.	7,857,834	12-2010	Boschert	
	A49.	8,092,494	01-2012	Butler et al.	
	A50.	8,801,761	08-2014	Kirschman	
	A51.	447,775	03-1891	Higbee	
	A52.	5,474,555	12-1995	Puno et al.	
	A53.	6,837,889	01-2005	Shluzas	
	A54.	6,899,714	05-2005	Vaughan	
	A55.	7,604,655	10-2009	Warnick	
	A56.	7,662,172	02-2010	Warnick	
	A57.	7,686,835	03-2010	Warnick	
	A58.	7,717,943	05-2010	Kirschman	
	A59.	6,783,527	08-2004	Drewry et al.	
	A60.	4,720,082	01-1988	Yang	
	A61.	4,627,759	12-1986	Kato	
	A62.	4,492,500	01-1985	Ewing	
	A63.	4,472,005	09-1984	Norton	
	A64.	4,210,374	07-1980	Churla	
	A65.	4,199,216	04-1980	Gryctko	
	A66.	4,141,752	02-1979	Shipko	
	A67.	3,990,671	09-1976	Seyler	
	A68.	3,977,221	08-1976	Foote	
	A69.	3,963,304	06-1976	Suzuki	
	A70.	3,664,440	05-1972	Elenburg	
	A71.	2,631,635	03-1953	Klooz	
	A72.	D346150	04-1994	Triantopoulos	
	A73.	D309664	07-1990	McGrane	
	A74.	2,927,332	03-1960	Moore	
	A75.	3,419,058	12-1968	Walker	
	A76.	4,304,424	12-1981	Hansen	

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A77.	4,538,947	09/195	Burkholder	
	A78.	4,764,068	08-1988	Crispell	
	A79.	5,005,562	04-1991	Cotrel	
	A80.	5,073,074	12-1991	Corrigan et al.	
	A81.	5,667,508	09-1997	Errico et al.	
	A82.	5,697,929	12-1997	Mellinger	
	A83.	5,885,286	03-1999	Sherman et al.	
	A84.	6,004,349	12-1999	Jackson	
	A85.	6,056,753	05-2000	Jackson	
	A86.	6,224,596	05-2001	Jackson	
	A87.	6,261,288	07-2001	Jackson	
	A88.	6,565,565	05-2003	Yuan et al.	
	A89.	6,786,903	09-2004	Lin	
	A90.	6,843,791	01-2005	Serhan	
	A91.	7,141,051	11-2006	Janowski	
	A92.	7,641,674	01-2010	Young	
	A93.	7,566,163	07-2009	Inoue	
	A94.	7,490,394	02-2009	Zakrzewski	
	A95.	7,334,307	02-2008	Helenowski	
	A96.	7,320,570	01-2008	Czarnek	
	A97.	7,311,563	12-2007	Siebens	
	A98.	7,247,020	07-2007	Takahashi	
	A99.	7,232,104	06-2007	Krapels	
	A100.	7,515,220	12-2006	Rubin de la Borbolla	
	A101.	7,096,071	08-2006	Ollivier	
	A102.	6,851,337	02-2005	Stokes	
	A103.	6,817,910	11-2004	Borgstrom	
	A104.	6,788,756	09-2004	Erbes	
	A105.	6,764,354	07-2004	Kaine	
	A106.	6,699,248	03-2004	Jackson	
	A107.	6,688,921	02-2004	Borgstrom	
	A108.	6,634,842	10-2003	Ueno	
	A109.	6,634,246	10-2003	Ohya	
	A110.	6,550,959	04-2003	Huber	
	A111.	6,478,795	11-2002	Gournay	
	A112.	6,454,772	09-2002	Jackson	
	A113.	6,454,768	09-2002	Jackson	
	A114.	6,361,535	03-2002	Jackson	
	A115.	6,302,888	10-2001	Mellinger	
	A116.	6,224,598	05-2001	Jackson	
	A117.	6,209,575	04-2001	Graziano	
	A118.	6,193,719	02-2001	Gournay	

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A119.	6,179,841	01-2001	Jackson	
	A120.	6,158,996	12-2000	Becher	
	A121.	6,135,321	10-2000	Hippensteel	
	A122.	6,110,172	08-2000	Jackson	
	A123.	6,102,913	08-2000	Jackson	
	A124.	6,076,437	06-2000	Saint Martin	
	A125.	6,074,147	06-2000	Shu	
	A126.	6,059,786	05-2000	Jackson	
	A127.	6,004,349	12-1999	Jackson	
	A128.	5,941,885	08-1999	Jackson	
	A129.	5,870,934	02-1999	Cullinan	
	A130.	5,848,913	12-1998	Ashcraft	
	A131.	5,727,314	03-1998	Ashcraft	
	A132.	5,533,912	09-1996	Fillinger	
	A133.	5,520,454	05-1996	Laing	
	A134.	5,431,651	07-1995	Goble	
	A135.	5,244,323	09-1993	Tucchio	
	A136.	5,201,678	04-1993	Venezia	
	A137.	5,048,155	09-1991	Hwang	
	A138.	5,025,676	06-1991	Perretta	
	A139.	5,009,539	04-1991	Muellenberg	
	A140.	5,024,213	06-1991	Asher et al.	
	A141.	5,129,388	07-1992	Vignaud et al.	
	A142.	5,129,900	07-1992	Asher et al.	
	A143.	5,257,993	11-1993	Asher et al.	
	A144.	5,443,467	08-1995	Biedermann et al.	
	A145.	5,476,464	12-1995	Metz-Stavenhagen et al.	
	A146.	5,487,744	01-1996	Howland	
	A147.	5,628,740	05-1997	Mullane	
	A148.	5,662,650	09-1997	Bailey et al.	
	A149.	5,669,911	09-1997	Errico et al.	
	A150.	5,733,286	03-1998	Errico et al.	
	A151.	5,782,833	07-1998	Haider	
	A152.	5,879,350	03-1999	Sherman et al.	
	A153.	5,882,350	03-1999	Ralph et al.	
	A154.	5,954,725	09-1999	Sherman et al.	
	A155.	5,964,760	10-1999	Richelsoph	
	A156.	6,010,503	01-2000	Richelsoph et al.	
	A157.	6,053,917	04-2000	Sherman et al.	
	A158.	6,074,391	06-2000	Metz-Stavenhagen et al.	
	A159.	6,113,601	09-2000	Tatar	
	A160.	6,146,383	11-2000	Studer et al.	

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A161.	6,248,105	06-2001	Schlapfer et al.	
	A162.	6,280,442	08-2001	Barker et al.	
	A163.	6,355,040	03-2002	Richelsoph et al.	
	A164.	6,371,957	04-2002	Amrein et al.	
	A165.	6,440,137	08-2002	Horvath et al.	
	A166.	6,471,705	10-2002	Biedermann et al.	
	A167.	6,488,681	12-2002	Martin et al.	
	A168.	7,087,057	08-2006	Konieczynski	
	A169.	5,496,321	03-1996	Puno et al.	
	A170.	5,752,957	05-1998	Ralph et al.	
	A171.	6,280,442	08-2001	Barker et al.	
	A172.	7,223,268	05-2007	Biedermann	
	A173.	1,300,275	04-1919	Johnson	
	A174.	5,366,330	11-1994	Cosenza	
	A175.	8,439,922	05-2013	Arnold et al.	
	A176.	5,776,134	07-1998	Howland	

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PUBLICATION NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	B1.	2002/0143341	10-2002	Biedermann et al.	
	B2.	2003/0023243	01-2003	Biedermann et al.	
	B3.	2003/0100904	05-2003	Biedermann	
	B4.	2003/0149431	08-2003	Varieur et al.	
	B5.	2004/0049196	03-2004	Jackson	
	B6.	2004/0039383	02-2004	Jackson	
	B7.	2004/0138662	07-2004	Landry et al.	
	B8.	2004/0143265	07-2004	Landry	
	B9.	2004/0147929	07-2004	Biedermann et al.	
	B10.	2004/0167524	08-2004	Jackson	
	B11.	2004/0167525	08-2004	Jackson	
	B12.	2004/0172032	09-2004	Jackson	
	B13.	2004/0186474	09-2004	Matthis et al.	
	B14.	2005/0216003	09-2005	Biedermann et al.	
	B15.	2005/0277928	12-2005	Boschert	
	B16.	2005/0182410	08-2005	Jackson	
	B17.	2006/0009773	01-2006	Jackson	
	B18.	2006/0083603	04-2006	Jackson	
	B19.	2007/0208344	09-2007	Young	

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PUBLICATION NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	B20.	2008/0215100	09-2008	Matthis et al.	
	B21.	2008/0269809	10-2008	Garamszegi	
	B22.	2008/0292429	11-2008	Hasenbohler et al.	
	B23.	2013/0013003	01-2013	Carbone et al.	
	B24.	2014/0081334	03-2014	Jackson	
	B25.	2014/0142633	05-2014	Jackson et al.	
	B26.	2005/0131421	06-2005	Anderson et al.	
	B27.	2003/0199873	10-2003	Richelsoph	
	B28.	2002/0120272	08-2002	Yuan	
	B29.	2011/0152947	06-2011	Kirschman	
	B30.	2011/0270321	11-2011	Prevost et al.	
	B31.	2003/0153913	08-2003	Altarac et al.	
	B32.	2004/0138660	07-2004	Serhan	
	B33.	2004/0260283	12-2004	Wu et al.	
	B34.	2005/0283157	12-2005	Coates et al.	
	B35.	2006/0036244	02-2006	Spitler et al.	
	B36.	2006/0155278	07-2006	Warnick	
	B37.	2007/0043357	02-2007	Kirschman	
	B38.	2007/0093827	04-2007	Warnick	
	B39.	2007/0123862	05-2007	Warnick	
	B40.	2007/0123867	05-2007	Kirschman	
	B41.	2008/0071277	03-2008	Warnick	
	B42.	2008/0086131	04-2008	Daly et al.	
	B43.	2008/0097457	04-2008	Warnick	
	B44.	2008/0167689	07-2008	Matthis et al.	
	B45.	2008/0249576	10-2008	Hawkes et al.	
	B46.	2010/0057126	03-2010	Hestad	
	B47.	2010/0174319	07-2010	Jackson	
	B48.	2009/0093844	04-2009	Jackson	
	B49.	2008/0039848	02-2008	Jackson	
	B50.	2009/0138052	05-2009	Biedermann et al.	
	B51.	2006/0079893	04-2006	Jackson	
	B52.	2007/0270832	11-2007	Moore	
	B53.	2003/0014054	01-2003	Huebner	
	B54.	2001/0047208	11-2001	Michelson	
	B55.	2004/0153068	08-2004	Janowski et al.	
	B56.	2007/0208344	09-2007	Young	
	B57.	2002/0133154	09-2002	Saint Martin	
	B58.	2002/0173791	11-2002	Howland	
	B59.	2003/0100896	05-2003	Biedermann et al.	
	B60.	2003/0114852	06-2003	Biedermann et al.	
	B61.	2003/0125741	07-2003	Biedermann et al.	

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PUBLICATION NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	B62.	2003/0158552	08-2003	Jeon et al.	
	B63.	2003/0187433	10-2003	Lin	
	B64.	2003/0199873	10-2003	Richelsoph	
	B65.	2004/0176766	09-2004	Shluzas	
	B66.	2006/0089643	04-2006	Mujwid	
	B67.	2002/0035366	03-2002	Walder et al.	
	B68.	2007/0260246	11-2007	Biedermann	
	B69.	2014/0052187	02-2014	McBride et al.	
	B70.	2007/0219554	09-2007	Landry et al.	
	B71.	2003/0088248	05-2003	Reed	
	B72.	2008/0015596	01-2008	Whipple	
	B73.	2008/0045953	02-2008	Garamszegi	
	B74.	2009/0221879	09-2009	Gorek	
	B75.	2010/0004692	01-2010	Biedermann et al.	
	B76.	2010/0036417	02-2010	James et al.	
	B77.	2010/0125302	05-2010	Hammill, SR. et al.	
	B78.	2011/0208248	08-2011	Barrus et al.	
	B79.	2012/0029578	02-2012	Suh	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	DOCUMENT NUMBER Country Code[3] – Number[4] – Kind Code[5] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T[6]
	C1.	WO 95/13755	5/26/1995	Cross Medical Products, Inc.		
	C2.	WO 02/076314	10/3/2002	Biedermann Motech GMBH		
	C3.	DE 20207850 U1	10/10/2002	Metz-Stavenhagen		
	C4.	EP 1316294 A2	6/4/2003	Biedermann Motech GMBH		
	C5.	EP 1570796 A1	9/7/2005	Biedermann Motech GMBH		
	C6.	GB 2140523 A	11/28/1984	Hepworth Electrical Developments Limited (United Kingdom)		

* EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

[1] Applicant's unique citation number (optional). [2] See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. [3] Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). [4] For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. [5] Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. [6] Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

OTHER PRIOR ART – NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS			
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of Author, title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), volume-issue number(s), publisher, page(s) and date.	T[6]
	D1.		

EXAMINER	/DAVID C COMSTOCK/	DATE CONSIDERED	02/24/2021

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

75819001.1

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

Bibliographic Data

Application No: 17/123,499

Foreign Priority claimed: ○ Yes ◉ No

35 USC 119 (a-d) conditions met: ☐ Yes ☑ No ☐ Met After Allowance

Verified and Acknowledged: /DAVID C COMSTOCK/ (Examiner's Signature) | (Initials)

Title: MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

FILING or 371(c) DATE	CLASS	GROUP ART UNIT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.
12/16/2020	606	3773	JAC023-667905
RULE			

APPLICANTS

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS,

INVENTORS

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS, UNITED STATES

James L. Surber, Kansas City, KS, UNITED STATES

CONTINUING DATA

This application is a CON of 16779304 01/31/2020 PAT 10898233

16779304 is a CON of 15964502 04/27/2018 PAT 10548641

15964502 is a CON of 15469076 03/24/2017 PAT 9956004

15469076 is a CON of 14566356 12/10/2014 PAT 9636146

14566356 is a CON of 13694849 01/10/2013 PAT 8911479

13694849 has PRO of 61634361 02/28/2012

13694849 has PRO of 61631746 01/10/2012

FOREIGN APPLICATIONS

IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN LICENSE GRANTED**

01/26/2021

STATE OR COUNTRY

UNITED STATES

ADDRESS

POLSINELLI PC

900 WEST 48TH PLACE

SUITE 900

KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895

UNITED STATES

FILING FEE RECEIVED

$1,820

EAST Search History

EAST Search History (Prior Art)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L1	666	(setscrew or "set screw" or closure) same thread same (higby or higbee or truncated)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/27 01:10
L2	27	1 and (vertebr$2 or (fixation with rod) or surgery or surgical or medical)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/27 01:11
S1	1,038	((("JACKSON") near3 ("Roger")) OR (("SURBER") near3 ("James"))).INV.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2021/02/24 19:03
S2	249	("0000002" | "0447775" | "1300275" | "20010047208" | "20020035366" | "20020120272" | "20020133154" | "20020143341" | "20020173791" | "20030014054" | "20030023243" | "20030088248" | "20030100896" | "20030100904" | "20030114852" | "20030125741" | "20030149431" | "20030153913" | "20030158552" | "20030187433" | "20030199873" | "20040039383" | "20040049196" | "20040138660" | "20040138662" | "20040143265" | "20040147929" | "20040153068" | "20040167524" | "20040167525" | "20040172032" | "20040176766" | "20040186474" | "20040260283" | "20050000348" | "20050131421" | "20050182410" | "20050216003" | "20050277928" | "20050283157" | "20060009773" | "20060036244" | "20060079893" | "20060083603" | "20060089643" | "20060155278" | "20070043357" | "20070093827" | "20070123862" | "20070123867" | "20070208344" | "20070219554" | "20070260246" |	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2021/02/24 19:05

"20070270832" | "20080015596" |
"20080039848" | "20080045953" |
"20080071277" | "20080086131" |
"20080097457" | "20080167689" |
"20080215100" | "20080249576" |
"20080269809" | "20080292429" |
"20090093844" | "20090138052" |
"20090221879" | "20100004692" |
"20100036417" | "20100057126" |
"20100125302" | "20100174319" |
"20110152947" | "20110208248" |
"20110270321" | "20120029578" |
"20130013003" | "20140052187" |
"20140081334" | "20140142633" |
"2244046" | "2631635" | "2833325" |
"2927332" | "3419058" | "3664440" |
"3963304" | "3963322" | "3977221" |
"3990671" | "4141752" | "4199216" |
"4210374" | "4304424" | "4472005" |
"4492500" | "4528874" | "4538947" |
"4600225" | "4627759" | "4720082" |
"4764068" | "5005562" | "5009539" |
"5024213" | "5025676" | "5048155" |
"5067955" | "5073074" | "5092635" |
"5129388" | "5129900" | "5171279" |
"5201678" | "5217497" | "5234430" |
"5244323" | "5257993" | "5334203" |
"5366330" | "5431651" | "5443467" |
"5474555" | "5476464" | "5487744" |
"5496321" | "5520454" | "5533912" |
"5605458" | "5607304" | "5628740" |
"5662650" | "5667508" | "5669911" |
"5672176" | "5697929" | "5727314" |
"5733286" | "5752957" | "5776134" |
"5782833" | "5797911" | "5848913" |
"5870934" | "5879350" | "5882350" |
"5885286" | "5941885" | "5954725" |
"5961517" | "5964760" | "6004349" |
"6006930" | "6010502" | "6010503" |
"6053917" | "6056753" | "6059786" |
"6063090" | "6074147" | "6074391" |
"6076437" | "6077262" | "6077267" |
"6102913" | "6110172" | "6113601" |
"6135321" | "6146383" | "6158996" |
"6179841" | "6193719" | "6209575" |
"6224596" | "6224598" | "6248105" |
"6254146" | "6261288" | "6280442" |
"6296642" | "6302888" | "6355040" |
"6361535" | "6371957" | "6412831" |
"6440137" | "6443953" | "6454768" |
"6454772" | "6471705" | "6478795" |
"6485491" | "6488681" | "6520962" |
"6550959" | "6554834" | "6565565" |

		"6634246" | "6634842" | "6688921" | "6699248" | "6730089" | "6764354" | "6783527" | "6786903" | "6788756" | "6817910" | "6835196" | "6837889" | "6843791" | "6851337" | "6899714" | "6997927" | "7087057" | "7096071" | "7141051" | "7204838" | "7223268" | "7232104" | "7247020" | "7250052" | "7311563" | "7320570" | "7334307" | "7490394" | "7515220" | "7566163" | "7591839" | "7604655" | "7641674" | "7662172" | "7686835" | "7717942" | "7717943" | "7766945" | "7794477" | "7857834" | "7972364" | "8092494" | "8162989" | "8382809" | "8439922" | "8801761" | "8814913" | "8828060" | "8911479" | "8998956" | "9068587").PN.				
S4	3	(("20080045953") or ("20050277928") or ("20100125302")).PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2021/02/24 20:09
S5	797	(411/386).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 19:11
S6	1,871	F16B25/0052,0042.cpc.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:12
S7	341	S5 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:15
S8	211	S5 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:15
S9	552	S7 S8	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:16
S10	133	S9 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR;	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:18

		rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick))	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S11	515	(411/393).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 19:36
S12	119	S11 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:36
S13	56	S11 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:36
S14	175	S12 S13	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:36
S15	10	S14 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:37
S16	165	S14 not S15	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:38
S17	298	(vertebr$2 or surgical or surgery or medical) and ((setscrew or "set screw") same ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick)))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:43
S18	75	S17 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:43

	S19	2	S17 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:43
	S20	77	S18 S19	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:44
	S21	158	S6 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:47
	S22	1,080	S6 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:47
	S23	1,238	S21 S22	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:48
	S24	1,568	(403/362).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 19:59
	S25	386	S24 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:59
	S26	161	S24 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:59
	S27	547	S25 S26	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 19:59
	S28	11	S27 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR;	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:00

		rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick))	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S29	240	("2004/0162560").URPN.	USPAT	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:05
S30	3	("9445847" | "D309664" | "D346150").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:06
S31	15	(vertebr$2 or surgical or surgery or medical) and ((setscrew or "set screw") same (thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) same truncat$3)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:25
S32	36,811	A61B17/7035,7032,863,8665,8685.cpc. A61B2090/037.cpc. A61B2017/8655.cpc.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:32
S33	6,096	A61B17/863.cpc.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:35
S34	747	S33 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:36
S35	2,967	S33 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:36
S36	3,714	S34 S35	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:37
S37	250	S36 and ((thread or (advancement with structure) or (helical$2 with wound)) with (start or bevel or chamfer or fillet or rounded or rounding or concave or convex or easy or quick or truncat$3))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO;	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:38

			DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S38	5,647	S32 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:42
S39	18,696	S32 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:42
S40	24,343	S38 S39	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:43
S41	151	S40 and ((arm or extension) with (break$4 or frangibl$1)) and (setscrew or "set screw" or (closure with thread$3))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:46
S42	22	S40 and (setscrew or "set screw" or (closure with thread$3)) same ((thread$3 or (helically with wound) or (guide with advancement)) with (truncat$3 or start))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:50
S43	3,549	(606/264,265,266,267,270,273,306).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 20:55
S44	1,836	S43 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:55
S45	1,165	S43 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:56
S46	3,001	S44 S45	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO;	OR	ON	2021/02/26 20:56

			DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S47	98	S46 and (setscrew or "set screw" or (closure with thread$3)) and (((extension or arm) with (break$4 or frangible)) or ((higby or truncated) with thread$3))	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 21:01
S48	14	(US-20090092463-$ or US-20050267477-$ or US-20050187549-$ or US-20040162560-$ or US-20140081334-$ or US-20110270321-$ or US-20110152947-$ or US-20090138052-$ or US-20040172032-$ or US-20100137918-$ or US-20110106179-$).did. or (US-5320467-$ or US-7927360-$).did. or (US-20110106179-$).did.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; DERWENT	OR	ON	2021/02/26 21:03
S49	199	("0447775" | "2152681" | "2564029" | "3183531" | "4755092" | "4840526" | "4952110" | "4981406" | "5073073").PN. OR ("2005/0187549" | "2009/0138052" | "2010/0137918" | "2011/0152947" | "2011/0270321" | "2014/0081334" | "5320467").URPN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 21:06
S50	72	S49 and @ad<"20120110"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 21:07
S51	0	S49 and @prad<"20120110"	FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2021/02/26 21:08
S52	50	(US-17123499-$ | US-20010001919-$ | US-20040186486-$ | US-20140336701-$ | US-20190161996-$ | US-4050402-$ | US-4273123-$ | US-4332560-$ | US-4391188-$ | US-4399679-$ | US-4485647-$ | US-4553359-$ | US-4574608-$ | US-4576299-$ | US-4595228-$ | US-4615441-$ | US-4631644-$ | US-4775064-$ | US-4776589-$ | US-4826026-$ | US-4846375-$ | US-4882012-$ | US-4911563-$ | US-4938520-$ | US-4938818-$ | US-4941623-$ | US-4948001-$ | US-4961601-$ | US-4966277-$ | US-4987768-$ | US-5002594-$ | US-5027834-$ | US-5277372-$ | US-5322349-$ | US-5368469-$ | US-5497883-$ | US-5528831-$ | US-5531341-$ | US-5620243-$ | US-5647188-$ | US-5749765-$ | US-5758368-$ | US-5802809-$ | US-6076259-$ | US-6088999-$ | US-6112694-$ | US-	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2021/02/26 21:12

		6142299-$ | US-6195962-$ | US-6200664-$ | US-6382443-$ | US-RE33265-$).DID.				
S53	8	(US-20140081334-$ or US-20110270321-$ or US-20110152947-$ or US-20100137918-$ or US-20090138052-$ or US-20050187549-$).did. or (US-5320467-$).did. or (US-20110106179-$).did.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; DERWENT	OR	ON	2021/02/26 21:14
S54	1	("10898233").PN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 21:25
S55	1	("10548641").PN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 21:26
S56	1	("9956004").PN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 21:28
S57	1	("9636146").PN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 21:29
S58	1	("8911479").PN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 21:30
S59	469	(606/270).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	OFF	2021/02/26 21:38
S60	14	S48 S53	US-PGPUB; USPAT; DERWENT	OR	ON	2021/02/26 21:55
S61	249	("0000002" | "0447775" | "1300275" | "20010047208" | "20020035366" | "20020120272" | "20020133154" | "20020143341" | "20020173791" | "20030014054" | "20030023243" | "20030088248" | "20030100896" | "20030100904" | "20030114852" | "20030125741" | "20030149431" | "20030153913" | "20030158552" | "20030187433" | "20030199873" | "20040039383" | "20040049196" | "20040138660" | "20040138662" | "20040143265" | "20040147929" | "20040153068" | "20040167524" | "20040167525" | "20040172032" | "20040176766" | "20040186474" | "20040260283" | "20050000348" | "20050131421" | "20050182410" | "20050216003" | "20050277928" | "20050283157" | "20060009773" | "20060036244" | "20060079893" | "20060083603" | "20060089643" |	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2021/02/26 22:00

		"20060155278" | "20070043357" | "20070093827" | "20070123862" | "20070123867" | "20070208344" | "20070219554" | "20070260246" | "20070270832" | "20080015596" | "20080039848" | "20080045953" | "20080071277" | "20080086131" | "20080097457" | "20080167689" | "20080215100" | "20080249576" | "20080269809" | "20080292429" | "20090093844" | "20090138052" | "20090221879" | "20100004692" | "20100036417" | "20100057126" | "20100125302" | "20100174319" | "20110152947" | "20110208248" | "20110270321" | "20120029578" | "20130013003" | "20140052187" | "20140081334" | "20140142633" | "2244046" | "2631635" | "2833325" | "2927332" | "3419058" | "3664440" | "3963304" | "3963322" | "3977221" | "3990671" | "4141752" | "4199216" | "4210374" | "4304424" | "4472005" | "4492500" | "4528874" | "4538947" | "4600225" | "4627759" | "4720082" | "4764068" | "5005562" | "5009539" | "5024213" | "5025676" | "5048155" | "5067955" | "5073074" | "5092635" | "5129388" | "5129900" | "5171279" | "5201678" | "5217497" | "5234430" | "5244323" | "5257993" | "5334203" | "5366330" | "5431651" | "5443467" | "5474555" | "5476464" | "5487744" | "5496321" | "5520454" | "5533912" | "5605458" | "5607304" | "5628740" | "5662650" | "5667508" | "5669911" | "5672176" | "5697929" | "5727314" | "5733286" | "5752957" | "5776134" | "5782833" | "5797911" | "5848913" | "5870934" | "5879350" | "5882350" | "5885286" | "5941885" | "5954725" | "5961517" | "5964760" | "6004349" | "6006930" | "6010502" | "6010503" | "6053917" | "6056753" | "6059786" | "6063090" | "6074147" | "6074391" | "6076437" | "6077262" | "6077267" | "6102913" | "6110172" | "6113601" | "6135321" | "6146383" | "6158996" | "6179841" | "6193719" | "6209575" | "6224596" | "6224598" | "6248105" | "6254146" | "6261288" | "6280442" | "6296642" | "6302888" | "6355040" | "6361535" | "6371957" | "6412831" |			

		"6440137" | "6443953" | "6454768" | "6454772" | "6471705" | "6478795" | "6485491" | "6488681" | "6520962" | "6550959" | "6554834" | "6565565" | "6634246" | "6634842" | "6688921" | "6699248" | "6730089" | "6764354" | "6783527" | "6786903" | "6788756" | "6817910" | "6835196" | "6837889" | "6843791" | "6851337" | "6899714" | "6997927" | "7087057" | "7096071" | "7141051" | "7204838" | "7223268" | "7232104" | "7247020" | "7250052" | "7311563" | "7320570" | "7334307" | "7490394" | "7515220" | "7566163" | "7591839" | "7604655" | "7641674" | "7662172" | "7686835" | "7717942" | "7717943" | "7766945" | "7794477" | "7857834" | "7972364" | "8092494" | "8162989" | "8382809" | "8439922" | "8801761" | "8814913" | "8828060" | "8911479" | "8998956" | "9068587").PN.				

2/27/2021 1:18:17 AM
C:\Users\dcomstock\Documents\EAST\Workspaces\17123499.wsp

ATTACHMENT A
APPLN. NO. TBD
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
FOR
STATEMENT UNDER MPEP § 2001.06(b)

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials	**Patent No.**	**Issue Date**	**Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document**
	8,377,100	02/19/2013	Jackson
	9,636,146	5/02/2017	Jackson et al.
	9,717,533	8/01/2017	Jackson et al.
	9,743,957	8/29/2014	Jackson
	9,861,394	1/09/2018	Jackson
	10,004,541	6/26/2018	Jackson
	10,206,716	02/19/2019	Jackson et al.

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials	**Publication No.**	**Publication Date**	**Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document**
	2014/0214097	7/31/2014	Jackson et al.
	2015/0119942	4/30/2015	Jackson et al.
	2015/0148846	5/28/2015	Jackson
	2015/0164558	6/18/2015	Jackson et al.
	2016/0038188	2/11/2016	Jackson et al.
	2016/0242818	8/25/2016	Jackson
	2017/0189073	7/06/2017	Jackson et al.
	2017/0333083	11/23/2017	Jackson et al.
	2017/0354443	12/14/2017	Jackson
	2017/0354441	12/14/2017	Jackson et al.
	2018/0243013	08/30/2018	Jackson et al.
	2018/0296249	10/18/2018	Jackson
	2019/0231400	08/01/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0175225	06/13/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0274734	09/12/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0298415	10/03/2019	Jackson et al.
	2020/0163702	05/28/2020	Jackson et al.
	2020/0179014	06/11/2020	Jackson

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

U.S. APPLICATION DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials	**Application No.**	**Filing Date**	**Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document**
EXAMINER /DAVID C COMSTOCK/		**DATE CONSIDERED** 02/24/2021	
EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.			

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /DC/

PLUS Search Results for S/N 17123499, Searched Thu Feb 25 08:28:45 EST 2021

The Patent Linguistics Utility System (PLUS) is a USPTO automated search system for U.S. Patents from 1971 to the present PLUS is a query-by-example search system which produces a list of patents that are most closely related linguistically to the application searched. This search was prepared by the staff of the Scientific and Technical Information Center, SIRA.

4595228 99
4776589 66
4938818 84
5002594 84
6200664 84
5528831 83
4553359 68
4050402 68
4332560 68
4391188 68
4399679 68
4485647 68
4574608 68
4826026 68
4846375 68
4882012 68
4911563 68
4938520 68
4941623 68
RE33265 68
4948001 68
4961601 68
4966277 68
4987768 68
5027834 68
5277372 68
5322349 68
5368469 68
5497883 68
5531341 68
5620243 68
5647188 68
5749765 68
5758368 68
5802809 68
6076259 68
6088999 68
6112694 68
6142299 68
6195962 68
6382443 68
20010001919 68
20040186486 68
20140336701 68
20190161996 68
4273123 66
4576299 66
4615441 66
4631644 66
4775064 66

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTY.DOCKET.NO	TOT CLAIMS	IND CLAIMS
17/123,499	12/16/2020	3773	1820	JAC023-667905	17	2

CONFIRMATION NO. 2823

FILING RECEIPT

24030
POLSINELLI PC
900 WEST 48TH PLACE
SUITE 900
KANSAS CITY, MO 64112-1895

OC000000122975161

Date Mailed: 01/27/2021

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional utility patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF FIRST INVENTOR, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection.

Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a corrected Filing Receipt, including a properly marked-up ADS showing the changes with strike-through for deletions and underlining for additions. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" or other Notice requiring a response for this application, please submit any request for correction to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections provided that the request is grantable.

Inventor(s)

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS;
James L. Surber, Kansas City, KS;

Applicant(s)

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS;

Assignment For Published Patent Application

Roger P. Jackson, Prairie Village, KS

Power of Attorney: The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 24030

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 16/779,304 01/31/2020 PAT 10898233
which is a CON of 15/964,502 04/27/2018 PAT 10548641
which is a CON of 15/469,076 03/24/2017 PAT 9956004
which is a CON of 14/566,356 12/10/2014 PAT 9636146
which is a CON of 13/694,849 01/10/2013 PAT 8911479
which claims benefit of 61/634,361 02/28/2012
and claims benefit of 61/631,746 01/10/2012

Foreign Applications for which priority is claimed (You may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at the USPTO. Please see http://www.uspto.gov for more information.) - None.
Foreign application information must be provided in an Application Data Sheet in order to constitute a claim to foreign priority. See 37 CFR 1.55 and 1.76.

Permission to Access Application via Priority Document Exchange: Yes

Permission to Access Search Results: Yes

Applicant may provide or rescind an authorization for access using Form PTO/SB/39 or Form PTO/SB/69 as appropriate.

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 01/26/2021

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 17/123,499**

Projected Publication Date: 05/06/2021

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

Title

MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

Preliminary Class

606

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications: No

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, http://www.stopfakes.gov. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4258).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign AssetsControl, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

SelectUSA

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The U.S. offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to promote and facilitate business investment. SelectUSA provides information assistance to the international investor

community; serves as an ombudsman for existing and potential investors; advocates on behalf of U.S. cities, states, and regions competing for global investment; and counsels U.S. economic development organizations on investment attraction best practices. To learn more about why the United States is the best country in the world to develop technology, manufacture products, deliver services, and grow your business, visit http://www.SelectUSA.gov or call +1-202-482-6800.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD

Substitute for Form PTO-875

Application or Docket Number: 17/123,499

APPLICATION AS FILED - PART I

FOR	(Column 1) NUMBER FILED	(Column 2) NUMBER EXTRA	SMALL ENTITY RATE($)	SMALL ENTITY FEE($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY FEE($)
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	320
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	700
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	800
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	17 minus 20 =	*			OR	x 100 =	0.00
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	2 minus 3 =	*				x 480 =	0.00
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $310 ($155 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).						0.00
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))							0.00
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.			TOTAL			TOTAL	1820

APPLICATION AS AMENDED - PART II

		(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA	SMALL ENTITY RATE($)	SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE($)
AMENDMENT A	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	x =		OR	x =	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	x =		OR	x =	
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
	FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))							OR		
						TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

		(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA	RATE($)	ADDITIONAL FEE($)	OR	RATE($)	ADDITIONAL FEE($)
AMENDMENT B	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	x =		OR	x =	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	x =		OR	x =	
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
	FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))							OR		
						TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest found in the appropriate box in column 1.

Doc code : PET.OP.AGE
Description : Petition to make special based on Age/Health

PTO/SB/130 (07-09)

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number

PETITION TO MAKE SPECIAL BASED ON AGE FOR ADVANCEMENT OF EXAMINATION UNDER 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1)

Application Information

Application Number	17123499	Confirmation Number		Filing Date	01-Jan-0001
Attorney Docket Number (optional)	JAC023-667905	Art Unit		Examiner	
First Named Inventor	Roger P. Jackson				
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES				

Attention: Office of Petitions

An application may be made special for advancement of examination upon filing of a petition showing that the applicant is 65 years of age, or more. No fee is required with such a petition. See 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1) and MPEP 708.02 (II).

APPLICANT HEREBY PETITIONS TO MAKE SPECIAL FOR ADVANCEMENT OF EXAMINATION IN THIS APPLICATION UNDER 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1) and MPEP 708.02 (II) ON THE BASIS OF THE APPLICANT'S AGE.

A grantable petition requires one of the following items:
(1) Statement by one named inventor in the application that he/she is 65 years of age, or more; or
(2) Certification by a registered attorney/agent having evidence such as a birth certificate, passport, driver's license, etc. showing one named inventor in the application is 65 years of age, or more.

Name of Inventor who is 65 years of age, or older

Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
Roger	P.	Jackson	

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33 and 10.18. Please see 37 CFR 1.4(d) for the format of the signature.

Select (1) or (2) :

○ (1) I am an inventor in this application and I am 65 years of age, or more.

◉ (2) I am an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, and I certify that I am in possession of evidence, and will retain such in the application file record, showing that the inventor listed above is 65 years of age, or more.

Signature	/Joshua J. Pranckun/		
Name	Joshua J. Pranckun	Registration Number	70712

EFSWeb 1.0.18

PTO/SB/130 (07-09)
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Fr eedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.

2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.

3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.

4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).

5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).

7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about indivi duals.

8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.

9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Commissioner for Patents
United States Patent and Trademark Office
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

In re Application of
Roger P. Jackson

Application No. 17123499
Filed:

Attorney Docket No. JAC023-667905

:DECISION ON PETITION TO MAKE SPECIAL
:UNDER 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1)

This is a decision on the electronic petition under 37 CFR 1.102 (c)(1), filed 16-DEC-2020 to make the above-identified application special based on applicant's age as set forth in MPEP § 708.02, Section II.

The petition is **GRANTED**.

A grantable petition to make an application special under 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1), MPEP § 708.02, Section II : Applicant's Age must include a statement by applicant or a registered practitioner having evidence that applicant is at least 65 years of age. No fee is required.

Accordingly, the above-identified application has been accorded "special" status and will be taken up for action by the examiner upon the completion of all pre-examination processing.

Telephone inquiries concerning this electronic decision should be directed to the Electronic Business Center at 866-217-9197.

All other inquiries concerning either the examination or status of the application should be directed to the Technology Center.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	41403136
Application Number:	17123499
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	2823
Title of Invention:	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Roger P. Jackson
Correspondence Address:	- - - - - - - - - - -
Filer:	Joshua Pranckun/Helen Miswell
Filer Authorized By:	Joshua Pranckun
Attorney Docket Number:	JAC023-667905
Receipt Date:	16-DEC-2020
Filing Date:	
Time Stamp:	13:39:30
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Petition automatically granted by EFS	petition-request.pdf	38058 2ba78a2d13ce7eed507c74b2585af5fcfcea5f09	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
		Total Files Size (in bytes):	38058		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

ATTACHMENT A
APPLN. NO. TBD
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
FOR
STATEMENT UNDER MPEP § 2001.06(b)

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials	**Patent No.**	**Issue Date**	**Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document**
	8,377,100	02/19/2013	Jackson
	9,636,146	5/02/2017	Jackson et al.
	9,717,533	8/01/2017	Jackson et al.
	9,743,957	8/29/2014	Jackson
	9,861,394	1/09/2018	Jackson
	10,004,541	6/26/2018	Jackson
	10,206,716	02/19/2019	Jackson et al.

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials	**Publication No.**	**Publication Date**	**Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document**
	2014/0214097	7/31/2014	Jackson et al.
	2015/0119942	4/30/2015	Jackson et al.
	2015/0148846	5/28/2015	Jackson
	2015/0164558	6/18/2015	Jackson et al.
	2016/0038188	2/11/2016	Jackson et al.
	2016/0242818	8/25/2016	Jackson
	2017/0189073	7/06/2017	Jackson et al.
	2017/0333083	11/23/2017	Jackson et al.
	2017/0354443	12/14/2017	Jackson
	2017/0354441	12/14/2017	Jackson et al.
	2018/0243013	08/30/2018	Jackson et al.
	2018/0296249	10/18/2018	Jackson
	2019/0231400	08/01/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0175225	06/13/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0274734	09/12/2019	Jackson et al.
	2019/0298415	10/03/2019	Jackson et al.
	2020/0163702	05/28/2020	Jackson et al.
	2020/0179014	06/11/2020	Jackson

U.S. APPLICATION DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials	**Application No.**	**Filing Date**	**Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document**

EXAMINER	**DATE CONSIDERED**

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

PTO/SB/08A (08-03) U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE Substitute for Form 1449A/PTO **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)*	**APPLICATION NO.:** TBD	**FILING DATE:** Herewith
	INVENTOR(S): Roger P. Jackson	**ART UNIT:**
	EXAMINER NAME:	**ATTY. DOCKET NO.:** JAC023-667905

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A1.	2,005,348	06-1935	Michell	
	A2.	2,833,325	05-1958	Laisy	
	A3.	3,963,322	06-1976	Gryctko	
	A4.	4,600,225	07-1986	Blose	
	A5.	5,067,955	11-1991	Cotrel	
	A6.	5,092,635	03-1992	DeLange et al.	
	A7.	5,234,430	08-1993	Huebner	
	A8.	5,334,203	08-1994	Wagner	
	A9.	5,605,458	02-1997	Bailey et al.	
	A10.	5,607,304	03-1997	Bailey et al.	
	A11.	5,672,176	09-1997	Biedermann et al.	
	A12.	5,797,911	08-1998	Sherman et al.	
	A13.	6,006,930	12-1999	Dreyer et al.	
	A14.	6,010,502	01-2000	Bagby	
	A15.	6,063,090	05-2000	Schlapfer	
	A16.	6,077,262	06-2000	Schlapfer et al.	
	A17.	6,077,267	06-2000	Huene	
	A18.	6,254,146	07-2001	Church	
	A19.	6,296,642	10-2001	Morrison et al.	
	A20.	6,412,831	07-2002	Noel et al.	
	A21.	6,520,962	02-2003	Taylor et al.	
	A22.	6,554,834	04-2003	Crozet et al.	
	A23.	6,730,089	05-2004	Jackson	
	A24.	6,835,196	12-2004	Biedermann et al.	
	A25.	6,997,927	02-2006	Jackson	
	A26.	7,204,838	04-2007	Jackson	
	A27.	7,717,942	05-2010	Schumacher	
	A28.	7,591,839	09-2009	Biedermann et al.	
	A29.	7,794,477	09-2010	Melkent et al.	
	A30.	7,972,364	07-2011	Biedermann et al.	
	A31.	8,382,809	02-2013	Kaufman et al.	
	A32.	8,814,913	08-2014	Jackson	
	A33.	8,911,479	12-2014	Jackson et al.	
	A34.	9,068,587	06-2015	Sage et al.	

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A35.	9,445,847	09-2016	Biedermann et al.	
	A36.	7,250,052	07-2007	Landry et al.	
	A37.	7,766,945	08-2010	Nilsson et al.	
	A38.	8,162,989	04-2012	Khalili	
	A39.	8,828,060	09-2014	Biedermann et al.	
	A40.	8,998,956	04-2015	George	
	A41.	4,528,874	07-1985	Dunn	
	A42.	5,171,279	12-1992	Mathews	
	A43.	2,244,046	06-1941	Bradshaw	
	A44.	6,443,953	09-2002	Perra et al.	
	A45.	5,961,517	10-1999	Biedermann et al.	
	A46.	6,485,491	11-2002	Farris et al.	
	A47.	5,217,497	06-1993	Mehdian	
	A48.	7,857,834	12-2010	Boschert	
	A49.	8,092,494	01-2012	Butler et al.	
	A50.	8,801,761	08-2014	Kirschman	
	A51.	447,775	03-1891	Higbee	
	A52.	5,474,555	12-1995	Puno et al.	
	A53.	6,837,889	01-2005	Shluzas	
	A54.	6,899,714	05-2005	Vaughan	
	A55.	7,604,655	10-2009	Warnick	
	A56.	7,662,172	02-2010	Warnick	
	A57.	7,686,835	03-2010	Warnick	
	A58.	7,717,943	05-2010	Kirschman	
	A59.	6,783,527	08-2004	Drewry et al.	
	A60.	4,720,082	01-1988	Yang	
	A61.	4,627,759	12-1986	Kato	
	A62.	4,492,500	01-1985	Ewing	
	A63.	4,472,005	09-1984	Norton	
	A64.	4,210,374	07-1980	Churla	
	A65.	4,199,216	04-1980	Gryctko	
	A66.	4,141,752	02-1979	Shipko	
	A67.	3,990,671	09-1976	Seyler	
	A68.	3,977,221	08-1976	Foote	
	A69.	3,963,304	06-1976	Suzuki	
	A70.	3,664,440	05-1972	Elenburg	
	A71.	2,631,635	03-1953	Klooz	
	A72.	D346150	04-1994	Triantopoulos	
	A73.	D309664	07-1990	McGrane	
	A74.	2,927,332	03-1960	Moore	
	A75.	3,419,058	12-1968	Walker	
	A76.	4,304,424	12-1981	Hansen	

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A77.	4,538,947	09/195	Burkholder	
	A78.	4,764,068	08-1988	Crispell	
	A79.	5,005,562	04-1991	Cotrel	
	A80.	5,073,074	12-1991	Corrigan et al.	
	A81.	5,667,508	09-1997	Errico et al.	
	A82.	5,697,929	12-1997	Mellinger	
	A83.	5,885,286	03-1999	Sherman et al.	
	A84.	6,004,349	12-1999	Jackson	
	A85.	6,056,753	05-2000	Jackson	
	A86.	6,224,596	05-2001	Jackson	
	A87.	6,261,288	07-2001	Jackson	
	A88.	6,565,565	05-2003	Yuan et al.	
	A89.	6,786,903	09-2004	Lin	
	A90.	6,843,791	01-2005	Serhan	
	A91.	7,141,051	11-2006	Janowski	
	A92.	7,641,674	01-2010	Young	
	A93.	7,566,163	07-2009	Inoue	
	A94.	7,490,394	02-2009	Zakrzewski	
	A95.	7,334,307	02-2008	Helenowski	
	A96.	7,320,570	01-2008	Czarnek	
	A97.	7,311,563	12-2007	Siebens	
	A98.	7,247,020	07-2007	Takahashi	
	A99.	7,232,104	06-2007	Krapels	
	A100.	7,515,220	12-2006	Rubin de la Borbolla	
	A101.	7,096,071	08-2006	Ollivier	
	A102.	6,851,337	02-2005	Stokes	
	A103.	6,817,910	11-2004	Borgstrom	
	A104.	6,788,756	09-2004	Erbes	
	A105.	6,764,354	07-2004	Kaine	
	A106.	6,699,248	03-2004	Jackson	
	A107.	6,688,921	02-2004	Borgstrom	
	A108.	6,634,842	10-2003	Ueno	
	A109.	6,634,246	10-2003	Ohya	
	A110.	6,550,959	04-2003	Huber	
	A111.	6,478,795	11-2002	Gournay	
	A112.	6,454,772	09-2002	Jackson	
	A113.	6,454,768	09-2002	Jackson	
	A114.	6,361,535	03-2002	Jackson	
	A115.	6,302,888	10-2001	Mellinger	
	A116.	6,224,598	05-2001	Jackson	
	A117.	6,209,575	04-2001	Graziano	
	A118.	6,193,719	02-2001	Gournay	

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A119.	6,179,841	01-2001	Jackson	
	A120.	6,158,996	12-2000	Becher	
	A121.	6,135,321	10-2000	Hippensteel	
	A122.	6,110,172	08-2000	Jackson	
	A123.	6,102,913	08-2000	Jackson	
	A124.	6,076,437	06-2000	Saint Martin	
	A125.	6,074,147	06-2000	Shu	
	A126.	6,059,786	05-2000	Jackson	
	A127.	6,004,349	12-1999	Jackson	
	A128.	5,941,885	08-1999	Jackson	
	A129.	5,870,934	02-1999	Cullinan	
	A130.	5,848,913	12-1998	Ashcraft	
	A131.	5,727,314	03-1998	Ashcraft	
	A132.	5,533,912	09-1996	Fillinger	
	A133.	5,520,454	05-1996	Laing	
	A134.	5,431,651	07-1995	Goble	
	A135.	5,244,323	09-1993	Tucchio	
	A136.	5,201,678	04-1993	Venezia	
	A137.	5,048,155	09-1991	Hwang	
	A138.	5,025,676	06-1991	Perretta	
	A139.	5,009,539	04-1991	Muellenberg	
	A140.	5,024,213	06-1991	Asher et al.	
	A141.	5,129,388	07-1992	Vignaud et al.	
	A142.	5,129,900	07-1992	Asher et al.	
	A143.	5,257,993	11-1993	Asher et al.	
	A144.	5,443,467	08-1995	Biedermann et al.	
	A145.	5,476,464	12-1995	Metz-Stavenhagen et al.	
	A146.	5,487,744	01-1996	Howland	
	A147.	5,628,740	05-1997	Mullane	
	A148.	5,662,650	09-1997	Bailey et al.	
	A149.	5,669,911	09-1997	Errico et al.	
	A150.	5,733,286	03-1998	Errico et al.	
	A151.	5,782,833	07-1998	Haider	
	A152.	5,879,350	03-1999	Sherman et al.	
	A153.	5,882,350	03-1999	Ralph et al.	
	A154.	5,954,725	09-1999	Sherman et al.	
	A155.	5,964,760	10-1999	Richelsoph	
	A156.	6,010,503	01-2000	Richelsoph et al.	
	A157.	6,053,917	04-2000	Sherman et al.	
	A158.	6,074,391	06-2000	Metz-Stavenhagen et al.	
	A159.	6,113,601	09-2000	Tatar	
	A160.	6,146,383	11-2000	Studer et al.	

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PATENT NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	ISSUE DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	A161.	6,248,105	06-2001	Schlapfer et al.	
	A162.	6,280,442	08-2001	Barker et al.	
	A163.	6,355,040	03-2002	Richelsoph et al.	
	A164.	6,371,957	04-2002	Amrein et al.	
	A165.	6,440,137	08-2002	Horvath et al.	
	A166.	6,471,705	10-2002	Biedermann et al.	
	A167.	6,488,681	12-2002	Martin et al.	
	A168.	7,087,057	08-2006	Konieczynski	
	A169.	5,496,321	03-1996	Puno et al.	
	A170.	5,752,957	05-1998	Ralph et al.	
	A171.	6,280,442	08-2001	Barker et al.	
	A172.	7,223,268	05-2007	Biedermann	
	A173.	1,300,275	04-1919	Johnson	
	A174.	5,366,330	11-1994	Cosenza	
	A175.	8,439,922	05-2013	Arnold et al.	
	A176.	5,776,134	07-1998	Howland	

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PUBLICATION NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	B1.	2002/0143341	10-2002	Biedermann et al.	
	B2.	2003/0023243	01-2003	Biedermann et al.	
	B3.	2003/0100904	05-2003	Biedermann	
	B4.	2003/0149431	08-2003	Varieur et al.	
	B5.	2004/0049196	03-2004	Jackson	
	B6.	2004/0039383	02-2004	Jackson	
	B7.	2004/0138662	07-2004	Landry et al.	
	B8.	2004/0143265	07-2004	Landry	
	B9.	2004/0147929	07-2004	Biedermann et al.	
	B10.	2004/0167524	08-2004	Jackson	
	B11.	2004/0167525	08-2004	Jackson	
	B12.	2004/0172032	09-2004	Jackson	
	B13.	2004/0186474	09-2004	Matthis et al.	
	B14.	2005/0216003	09-2005	Biedermann et al.	
	B15.	2005/0277928	12-2005	Boschert	
	B16.	2005/0182410	08-2005	Jackson	
	B17.	2006/0009773	01-2006	Jackson	
	B18.	2006/0083603	04-2006	Jackson	
	B19.	2007/0208344	09-2007	Young	

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PUBLICATION NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	B20.	2008/0215100	09-2008	Matthis et al.	
	B21.	2008/0269809	10-2008	Garamszegi	
	B22.	2008/0292429	11-2008	Hasenbohler et al.	
	B23.	2013/0013003	01-2013	Carbone et al.	
	B24.	2014/0081334	03-2014	Jackson	
	B25.	2014/0142633	05-2014	Jackson et al.	
	B26.	2005/0131421	06-2005	Anderson et al.	
	B27.	2003/0199873	10-2003	Richelsoph	
	B28.	2002/0120272	08-2002	Yuan	
	B29.	2011/0152947	06-2011	Kirschman	
	B30.	2011/0270321	11-2011	Prevost et al.	
	B31.	2003/0153913	08-2003	Altarac et al.	
	B32.	2004/0138660	07-2004	Serhan	
	B33.	2004/0260283	12-2004	Wu et al.	
	B34.	2005/0283157	12-2005	Coates et al.	
	B35.	2006/0036244	02-2006	Spitler et al.	
	B36.	2006/0155278	07-2006	Warnick	
	B37.	2007/0043357	02-2007	Kirschman	
	B38.	2007/0093827	04-2007	Warnick	
	B39.	2007/0123862	05-2007	Warnick	
	B40.	2007/0123867	05-2007	Kirschman	
	B41.	2008/0071277	03-2008	Warnick	
	B42.	2008/0086131	04-2008	Daly et al.	
	B43.	2008/0097457	04-2008	Warnick	
	B44.	2008/0167689	07-2008	Matthis et al.	
	B45.	2008/0249576	10-2008	Hawkes et al.	
	B46.	2010/0057126	03-2010	Hestad	
	B47.	2010/0174319	07-2010	Jackson	
	B48.	2009/0093844	04-2009	Jackson	
	B49.	2008/0039848	02-2008	Jackson	
	B50.	2009/0138052	05-2009	Biedermann et al.	
	B51.	2006/0079893	04-2006	Jackson	
	B52.	2007/0270832	11-2007	Moore	
	B53.	2003/0014054	01-2003	Huebner	
	B54.	2001/0047208	11-2001	Michelson	
	B55.	2004/0153068	08-2004	Janowski et al.	
	B56.	2007/0208344	09-2007	Young	
	B57.	2002/0133154	09-2002	Saint Martin	
	B58.	2002/0173791	11-2002	Howland	
	B59.	2003/0100896	05-2003	Biedermann et al.	
	B60.	2003/0114852	06-2003	Biedermann et al.	
	B61.	2003/0125741	07-2003	Biedermann et al.	

U.S. PUBLICATION DOCUMENTS					
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	PUBLICATION NUMBER Number – Kind Code[2] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	B62.	2003/0158552	08-2003	Jeon et al.	
	B63.	2003/0187433	10-2003	Lin	
	B64.	2003/0199873	10-2003	Richelsoph	
	B65.	2004/0176766	09-2004	Shluzas	
	B66.	2006/0089643	04-2006	Mujwid	
	B67.	2002/0035366	03-2002	Walder et al.	
	B68.	2007/0260246	11-2007	Biedermann	
	B69.	2014/0052187	02-2014	McBride et al.	
	B70.	2007/0219554	09-2007	Landry et al.	
	B71.	2003/0088248	05-2003	Reed	
	B72.	2008/0015596	01-2008	Whipple	
	B73.	2008/0045953	02-2008	Garamszegi	
	B74.	2009/0221879	09-2009	Gorek	
	B75.	2010/0004692	01-2010	Biedermann et al.	
	B76.	2010/0036417	02-2010	James et al.	
	B77.	2010/0125302	05-2010	Hammill, SR. et al.	
	B78.	2011/0208248	08-2011	Barrus et al.	
	B79.	2012/0029578	02-2012	Suh	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	DOCUMENT NUMBER Country Code[3] – Number[4] – Kind Code[5] (if known)	PUBLICATION DATE MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T[6]
	C1.	WO 95/13755	5/26/1995	Cross Medical Products, Inc.		
	C2.	WO 02/076314	10/3/2002	Biedermann Motech GMBH		
	C3.	DE 20207850 U1	10/10/2002	Metz-Stavenhagen		
	C4.	EP 1316294 A2	6/4/2003	Biedermann Motech GMBH		
	C5.	EP 1570796 A1	9/7/2005	Biedermann Motech GMBH		
	C6.	GB 2140523 A	11/28/1984	Hepworth Electrical Developments Limited (United Kingdom)		

* EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

[1] Applicant's unique citation number (optional). [2] See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. [3] Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). [4] For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. [5] Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. [6] Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

OTHER PRIOR ART – NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS			
EXAMINER INITIALS*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of Author, title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), volume-issue number(s), publisher, page(s) and date.	T[6]
	D1.		
EXAMINER		DATE CONSIDERED	
EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.			

PCT WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : **A61B 17/70, 17/88**	**A1**	**(11) International Publication Number:** **WO 95/13755** **(43) International Publication Date:** 26 May 1995 (26.05.95)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US94/13317

(22) International Filing Date: 17 November 1994 (17.11.94)

(30) Priority Data:
08/155,430 19 November 1993 (19.11.93) US

(71) Applicant: CROSS MEDICAL PRODUCTS, INC. [US/US]; 4168 Fisher Road, Columbus, OH 43228-1024 (US).

(72) Inventors: PUNO, Rolando, M.; 11819 Lake Stone Way, Prospect, KY 40059 (US). MELLINGER, Philip, A.; 1094 Kirk Avenue, Worthington, OH 43085 (US). BYRD, J., Abbott, III; 3767 Oyster Point Qway, Virginia Beach, VI 23452 (US).

(74) Agents: SHUNK, Laura, F. et al.; Hudak & Shunk Co., L.P.A., Suite 808, 156 South Main Street, Akron, OH 44308-1304 (US).

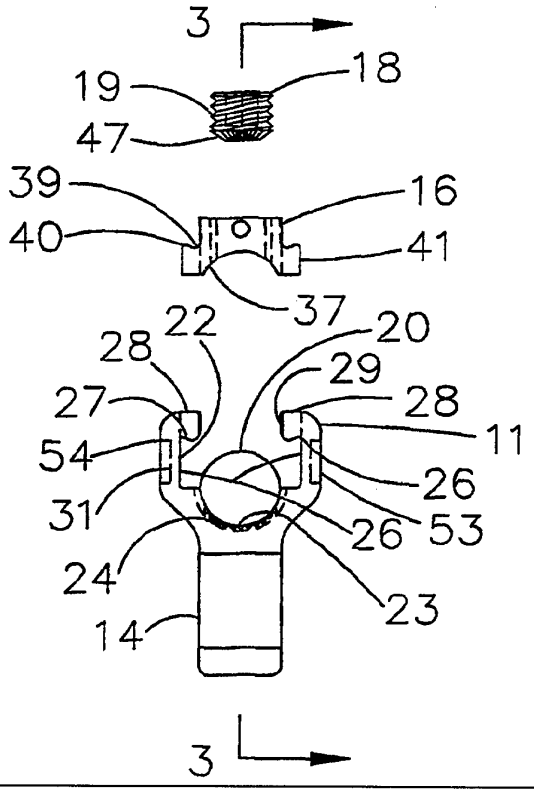
(81) Designated States: AU, BR, CA, JP, KR, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).

Published
With international search report.

(54) Title: ROD ANCHOR SEAT HAVING SLIDING CLOSURE MEMBER

(57) Abstract

A spinal implant assembly is provided having a top loading anchor (11) which is fixed to a spinal member by a hook (14). The anchor (11) includes a seat member (12) having a channel (22) to receive a stabilizer rod (20) and a sliding interconnecting closure member (16) which slides in a longitudinal direction relative to the seat member (12) to form an integral closed implant assembly. The closure member (16) includes retaining flanges (41) which dovetail relative to undercut retaining flanges (28) of the seat member (12) so as to prohibit the sliding closure member (16) from being dislodged from the seat channel (22), as well as inhibit the splaying of the seat member (12) in response to forces which may be imposed upon the seat member (12) during de-rotation of the spine. In addition, the seat member (12) includes a set screw (18) for locking the rod (20) in position relative to the anchor (11). An instrument (78) is provided which has a spring loaded ball plunger (89) for holding the closure member (16) during assembly to the seat member (12).



FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	**GB**	United Kingdom	**MR**	Mauritania
AU	Australia	**GE**	Georgia	**MW**	Malawi
BB	Barbados	**GN**	Guinea	**NE**	Niger
BE	Belgium	**GR**	Greece	**NL**	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	**HU**	Hungary	**NO**	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	**IE**	Ireland	**NZ**	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	**IT**	Italy	**PL**	Poland
BR	Brazil	**JP**	Japan	**PT**	Portugal
BY	Belarus	**KE**	Kenya	**RO**	Romania
CA	Canada	**KG**	Kyrgystan	**RU**	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	**KP**	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	**SD**	Sudan
CG	Congo			**SE**	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	**KR**	Republic of Korea	**SI**	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	**KZ**	Kazakhstan	**SK**	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	**LI**	Liechtenstein	**SN**	Senegal
CN	China	**LK**	Sri Lanka	**TD**	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	**LU**	Luxembourg	**TG**	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	**LV**	Latvia	**TJ**	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	**MC**	Monaco	**TT**	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	**MD**	Republic of Moldova	**UA**	Ukraine
ES	Spain	**MG**	Madagascar	**US**	United States of America
FI	Finland	**ML**	Mali	**UZ**	Uzbekistan
FR	France	**MN**	Mongolia	**VN**	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				

ROD ANCHOR SEAT HAVING SLIDING CLOSURE MEMBER

FIELD OF INVENTION

This invention relates to orthopedic implants, and more particularly to a bone interface anchor for holding a stabilization rod. The anchor can be adjusted after implantation to receive a stabilizer, and is locked into position after assembly.

BACKGROUND

As surgical techniques have advanced, it has become increasingly common for surgeons to use specially designed hardware for the internal fixation of bones. A particular area of concentration for the recent development of this technology has been the spine. Internal fixation is used most frequently in the spine in conjunction with vertebral fusion, and also for the manipulation of the spine to correct spinal deformities such as scoliosis.

There are several important criteria for a hardware system which is used for internal fixation:

1. The implant should provide rigidity as is indicated, generally along the long axis of the patient's spine.

2. The system should be able to accommodate a broad variation in the size and shape of the spinal member with which it is used. For example, the surgeon may wish to use the implant on a variety of individuals. In addition, the difference in the area and size of the point of fixation is compounded by the change in the shape of the vertebrae over the length of the full spinal column. Since it is an advantage to allow the surgeon to master implanting a particular type of assembly, it is preferable if the same or similar anchoring means can be used for a variety of locations. This advantage results in cost efficiency of inventory as well as efficiencies with respect to minimizing the operating time.

3. The hardware must be able to apply and

oppose considerable stresses and strains. Thus, the anchor means must be securely fixed to the bone, and the stabilizer must be securely fixed with regard to the anchor means. Moreover, it is desirable to have the integrity to resist breaking.

4. The system should be designed for ease of implantation and removal. Implant hardware is relatively small and therefore somewhat difficult to manipulate. Any difficulty with assembly is compounded by the fact that the assembly occurs during surgery and in a living being. Therefore, it is critical that the hardware is designed with the surgeon's convenience in mind, i.e., to limit the time required and the stress required to implant an assembly. Consequently, a fixation system should be designed to the extent possible for easy assembly while maintaining the option of removal where necessary.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a top- loading rod anchor which has an interlocking sliding member to close the anchor about the rod. The anchor assembly in the present invention includes an anchor having a center slot to allow insertion of the sliding member from the center. The slot includes a lateral undercut which mates with the flanges on the sliding member.

Accordingly, it is an object of the present invention to provide a vertebral anchor means which is top-loading, but which converts to a two-piece closed anchor for derotation of the spine. Closed anchor refers to an anchor which at least substantially partially includes the rod so that the anchor means will withstand hoop stresses introduced by manipulating the rod within the anchor. It is a further object of the invention to provide a sliding interconnecting member which cooperates an said anchor seat means by an axially sliding and which has a positive stop which removably locks said sliding member into cooperation with said anchor means.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF DRAWINGS

Figure 1 is an exploded side view of the implant assembly in accordance with the present invention;

Figure 2 is an exploded front view of the implant assembly in accordance with the present invention;

Figure 3 is a cross-section of the assembled components of Figure 1 taken along line 3-3 of Figure 2;

Figure 4 is a cross-section of the assembled components taken along line 4-4 of Figure 1;

Figure 5 is a top view of the sliding interlocking seat closure member as shown in Figure 1;

Figure 6 is a cross-section of the closure member taken along line 6-6 of Figure 5;

Figure 7 is a cross-section of the sliding member taken along line 7-7 of Figure 5; and

Figure 8 is a top plan view of the anchor used with the implant assembly of Figure 1;

Figure 9 is a side cross-sectional view taken along line 9-9 of the anchor of Figure 8;

Figure 10 is a front cross-sectional view taken along line 10-10 of the anchor of Figure 8; and

Figure 11 is an instrument for the alignment and implantation of the sliding interconnecting rod closure member as shown in Figures 1-4.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Figure 1 illustrates an exploded side view of the spinal implant assembly of the present invention. The implant assembly 10 comprises a stabilization means, i.e., rod 20, and an implant anchor 11. The anchor includes a seat 12 which is fixed to the spine by fixation means, in this case, a hook 14. However, the invention could also be practiced with other fixation means such as a bone screw. The seat 12 includes a recess 23 which receives the rod about its longitudinal axis and which is loaded from the top of the seat. The seat is closed by a sliding

interconnecting closure member 16 which has a sliding interlocking engagement with seat member 12. More specifically, the closure member 16 is dropped into an engagement on the rod 20 and slid in a direction along the rods' longitudinal axis so as to form an interlocking engagement with the seat 12. A set screw 18 cooperates with the closure member to apply a compressive force on the rod and secure the rod relative to the seat member.

The seat 12 includes a channel 22 which has in its bottom a rod recess 23 which is contoured to accept the rod 20. Optionally, the rod recess 23 may include a surface interface so as to increase the compressive interface between the rod 20 and the seat, such as interrupted serrations.

The channel 22 includes in its upper portion a recess 26 which is formed on the inside of a seat shoulder 27. In addition, the flange members 28 which form the seat shoulder 27 include a slight protuberance 29 which mates with grooves 30 on the closure member 16 to bias the closure member 16 into position with regard to the seat member 12. The seat member includes a cutouts 43 in the flange members 28 which enables the sliding closure member 16 to be loaded into the seat 12 from a central position with a small sliding movement, in contrast to sliding the closure member along the entire length of the channel 22 from either direction.

The anchor 11 also includes a closure member 16 which acts with the seat 12 to present a closed anchor 11 which facilitates the manipulation and specifically, the derotation of the spine. Since the closure member has a dove-tailed relationship with the seat member 12 to allow a sliding interlocking engagement. The seat member 12 may be loaded from the top with the rod 20 and subsequently closed with the closure member 16 so as to fix the rod relative to the fixation means, but to allow rotation of the rod about its longitudinal axis. The closure member 16 includes projecting flanges 41 which have include a

recess 39 on their upper surface, and a sliding shoulder 40 outward from the recess 39. The shoulders 40 of the closure member 16 form a dove-tailed cooperation with the shoulders 27 of the seat member, which cooperation inhibits the sliding closure member from being pulled out of the channel 22 of the seat member 12, and further which inhibits the sides 53, 54 of the seat member which form the channel 22 from splaying in response to a rotational force applied to the rod and cap member, respectively.

The closure member further includes a curved or arched rod interface surface 37 which mates with the top surface of the rod 20. The closure member 16 includes a hole 33 which is threaded with internal threads 34 to receive a set screw 18 having external threads 19. Thus, the set screw 18 can be screwed down relative to the closure member 16 to form a compressive interface with the rod 20. It is a further advantage that the set screw 18 includes a bevel 47 having serrations 48 and a countersink 49 to inhibit the stripping of the set screw and seat threads, as well as improve the compressive grip of the set screw on the rod 20.

In addition, the sliding member has opposing cutout sections 42 corresponding to the cutout section 43 of the seat member to facilitate an intermediate loading of the sliding closure member 16 relative to the seat 12. The seat member 12 has multiple grooves 30 which receive the protuberance 29 of the seat to cause a friction lock between the closure member and the seat member, which lock can be overcome by sliding the closure member along the longitudinal axis of the rod. The closure member has opposing retaining dimples on its front and rear surface which facilitate the assembly of the closure member relative to the seat using an instrument 78 shown in Figure 8 of the present application. In addition, the set screw has a hex opening 46 to allow the set screw to be driven into engagement with the rod 20 using a hex driver.

An instrument 78 is shown for assembly of the

closure member relative to the seat member and includes a handle 80 an 82 shaft of a length appropriate to allow the surgeon access to the implant, and a pronged instrument head 84. The head 84 includes an opening 86 of a size appropriate to receive the closure member 16, which opening 86 is defined first and second arms 85. The first and second arms respectively include a boss 88 and a spring loaded plunger ball 89. The ball is held in engagement relative to the closure member 16 by biasing means 90.

While in accordance with the Patent Statutes, the best mode and preferred embodiment has been set forth, the scope of the invention is not limited thereto, but rather by the scope of the attached claims.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A retaining member for use with an elongated stabilizer for a spine, said holding means comprising:

a seat having a channel, said channel having an axis in a first direction, said channel receiving said elongated stabilizer so that the longitudinal axis of said stabilizer is aligned in said first direction, and a sliding closure member, said closure member having a sliding cooperation with said seat whereby said closure member may be slid in the first direction to engage said seat, and said seat including means to retain said closure member from disengagement from said channel.

2. A retaining member as set forth in claim 1, wherein said anchor closure member includes a rod interface surface which cooperates with less than all of the circumference of said rod.

3. An member as set forth in claim 2, wherein said closure member has a rod interface surface which extends through a range of less than about 270 degrees.

4. A member as set forth in claim 1, wherein said closure member has a dove-tailed cooperation with said seat.

5. A member as set forth in claim 4, wherein said seat includes first and second seat mating shoulders and said dove tail includes first and second mating shoulder members which mate with the seat mating shoulders inhibit the splaying of said seat means.

6. A member as set forth in claim 1, wherein said seat means includes a central opening to allow said sliding closure means to be engaged with said seat by loading said closure member through said opening and

sliding it into a locked engagement.

7. An anchor member as set forth in claim 1, wherein said retaining means includes an interlocking biasing friction fit.

8. An anchor means for use with a stabilizer rod comprising a seat having a channel, said channel having a rod receiving recess and being open outwardly of said recess, said channel including a first sidewall and a second sidewall, said first and said second sidewalls terminating in opposing flanges; and

a sliding slide closure member having a rod receiving arch and including flanges which mate with said seat flanges to form a closed rod receiving channel.

9. An anchor means as set forth in claim 8, wherein said closure member includes a threaded bore substantially perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of said channel and said anchor means further includes at least one set screw received in said bore.

10. An anchor as set forth in claim 9, wherein said set screw includes a rod contacting terminus having a high friction surface.

11. An anchor as set forth in claim 8, wherein said mating flanges include means to inhibit splaying of said first and said second sidewalls.

12. An instrument for use with an anchor member, said anchor member securing an elongated stabilizer relative to a spine, and said anchor member having a channel to receive said stabilizer and a sliding closure means having a sliding cooperation with said seat means whereby said sliding closure means may be slid in the direction of the longitudinal axis of said stabilizer

to engage said seat means, said instrument comprising a handle portion, a shaft portion, and a head portion, said head portion receiving said closure means and having a biased releasable engagement with said closure means.

13. An instrument as set forth in claim 9, wherein said biased releasable engagement is provided by a spring loaded ball plunger.

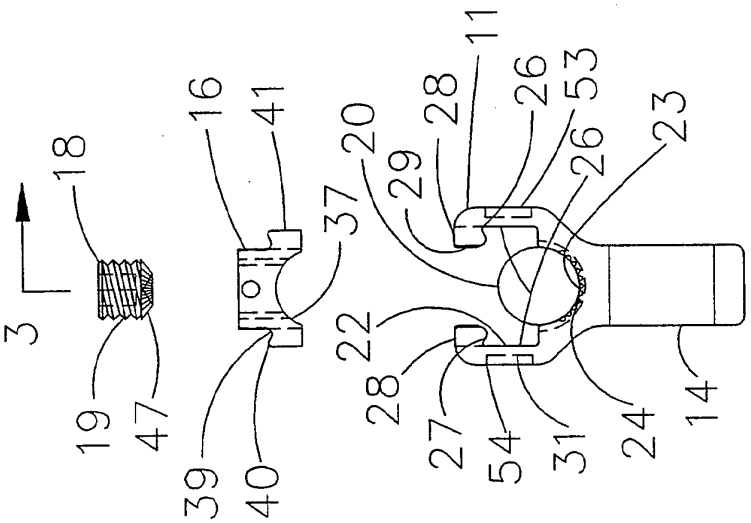

3
18
19
47
16
41
39
40
37
20
22
28
27
54
29
28
11
26
53
26
31
23
24
14
3

FIG. 2

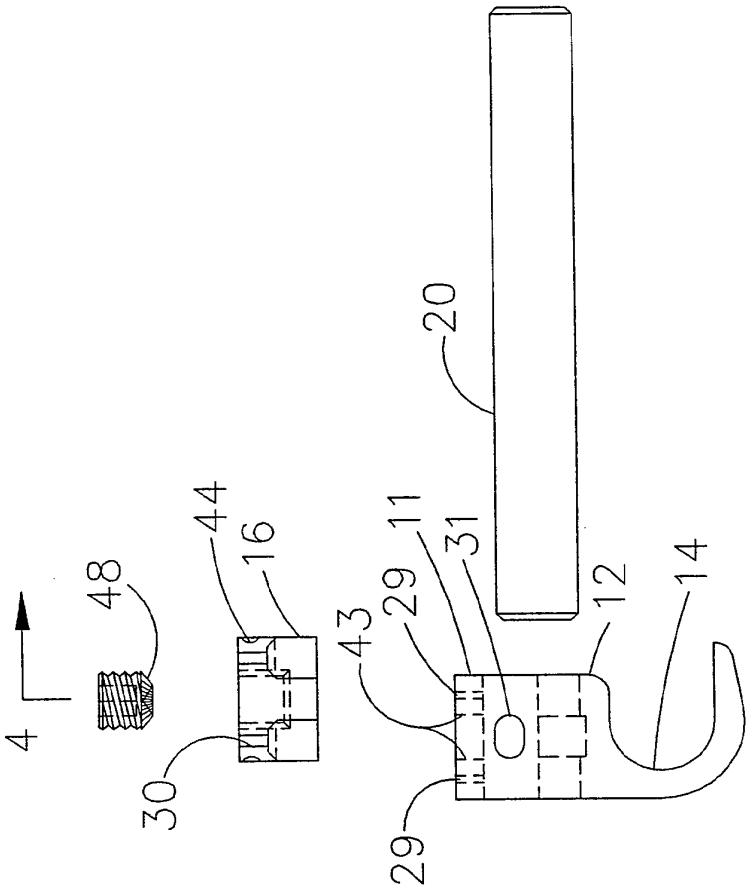

4
48
30
44
16
43
29
11
31
20
29
12
14
4

FIG. 1

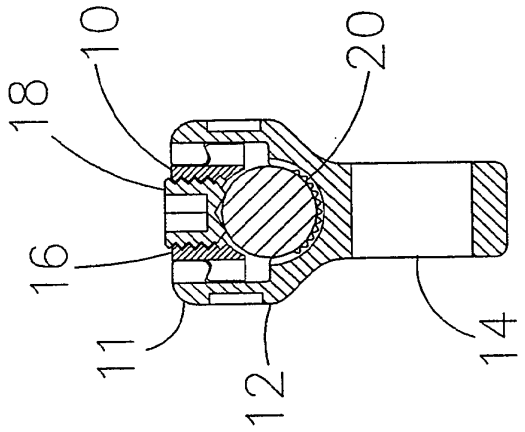


FIG. 4

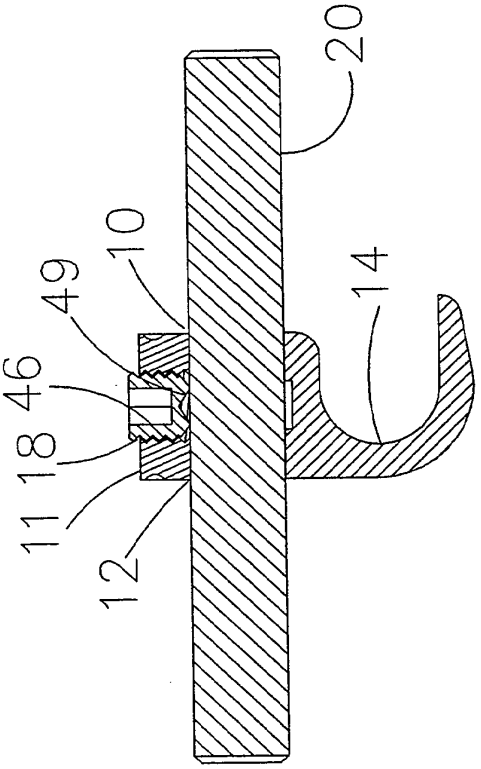


FIG. 3

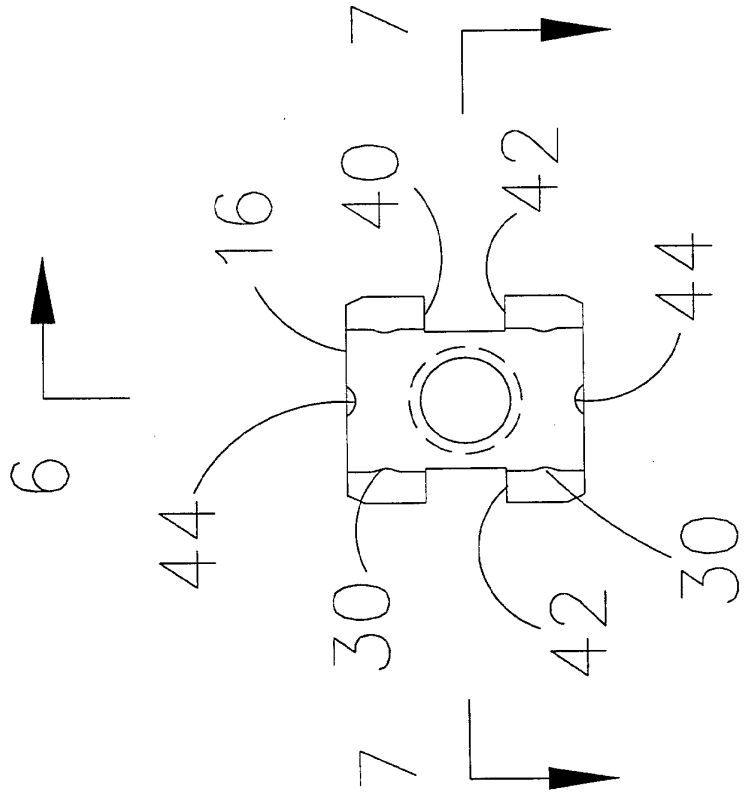


FIG. 5

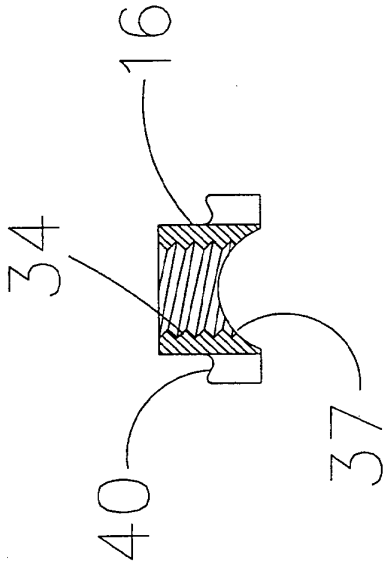


FIG. 7

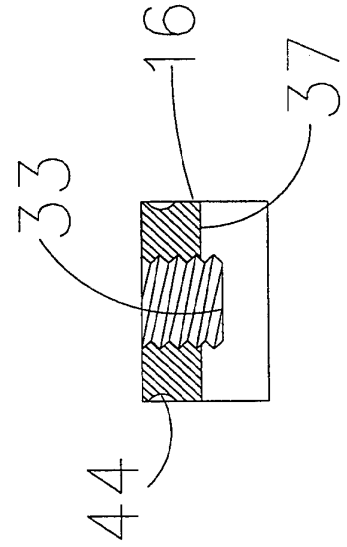


FIG. 6

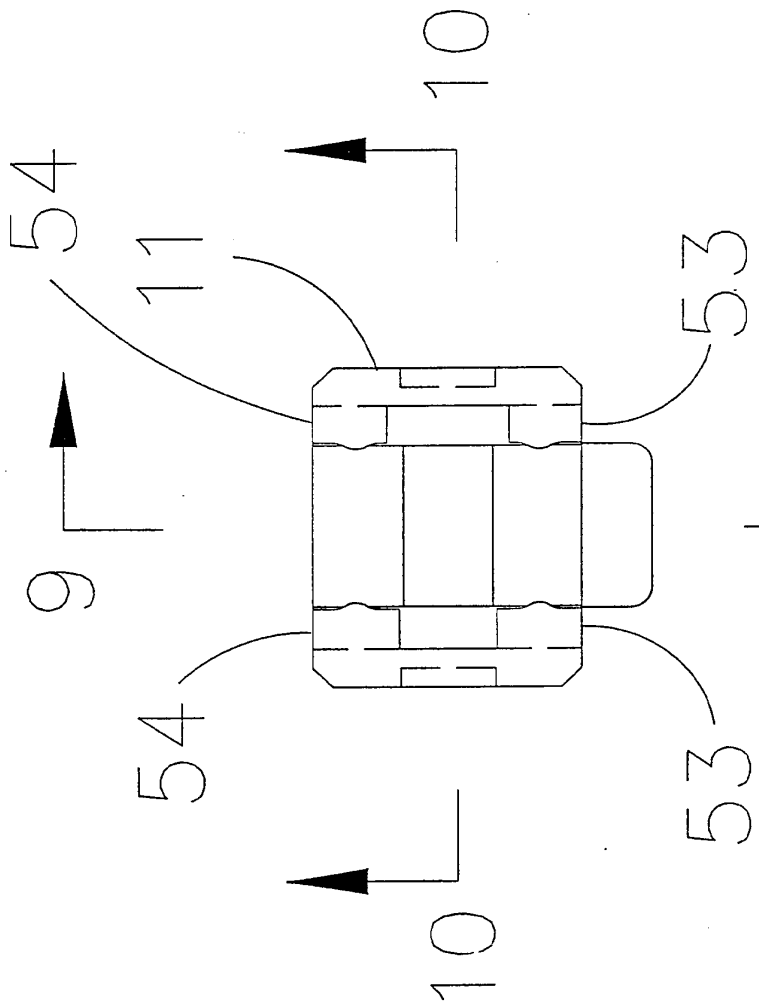


FIG. 8

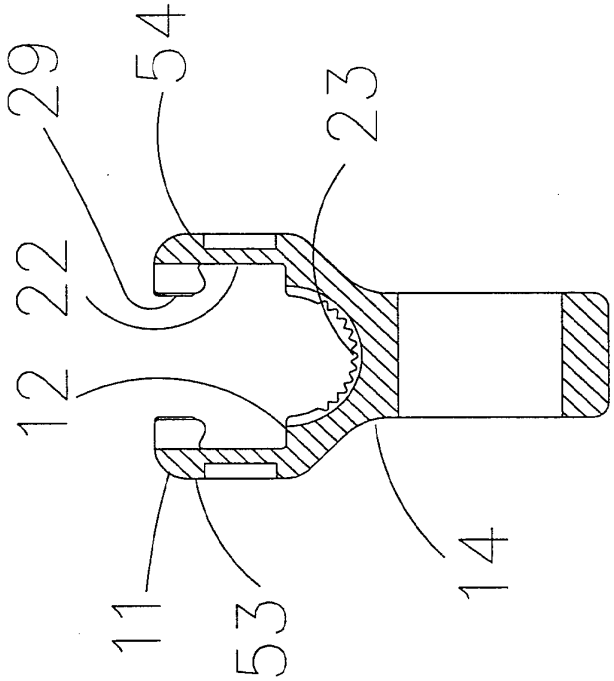


FIG. 10

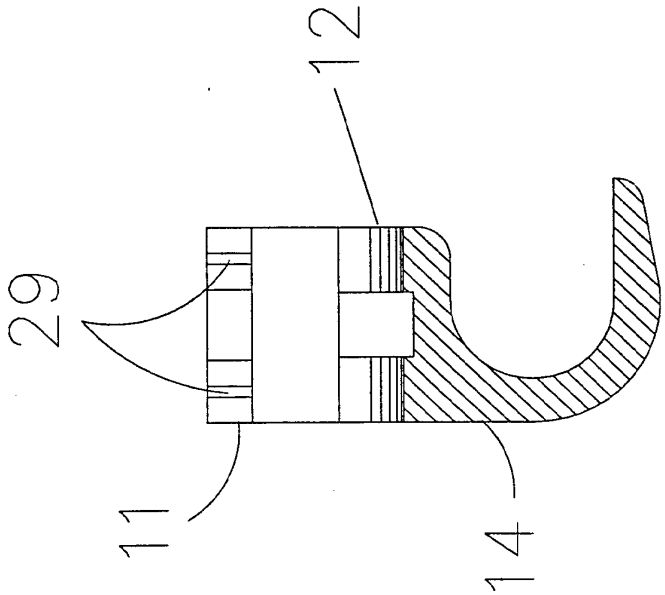


FIG. 9

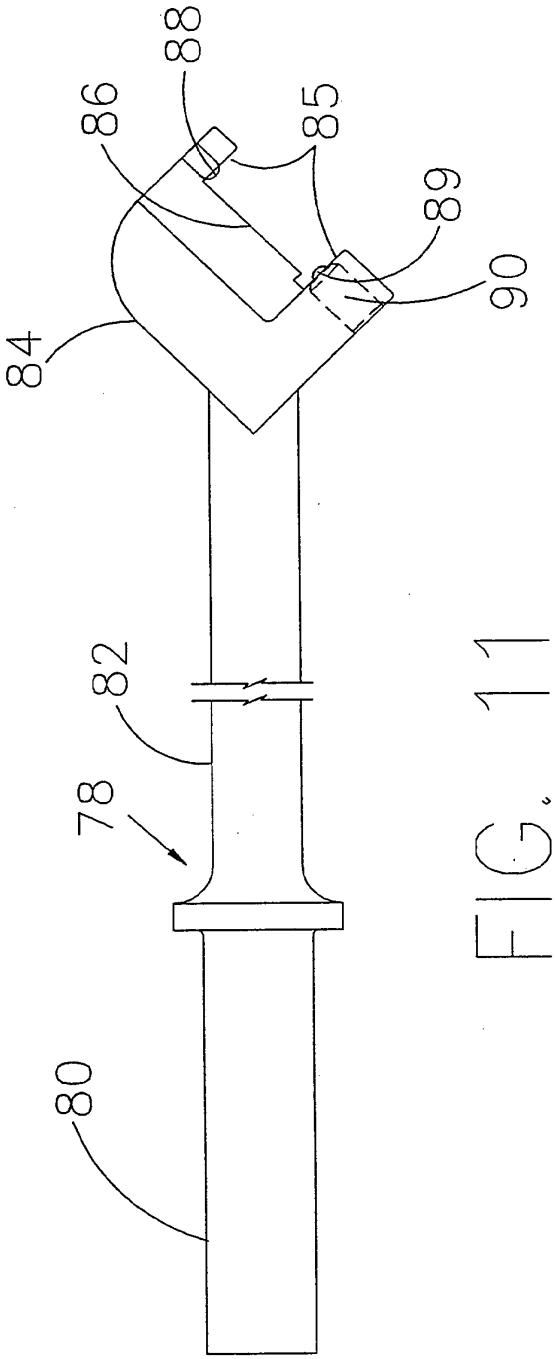


FIG. 11

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US94/13317

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) :A61B 17/70, 17/88
US CL :606/61, 99
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 403/235, 331, 333, 381; 606/59-61, 72, 73, 99

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

NONE

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

NONE

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US, A, 5,257,993, (ASHER ET AL.), 02 November 1993. See Figs. 20-22.	1-11
X	US, A, 4,347,845, (MAYFIELD), 07 September 1982. See element (24), and Figs. 1-3.	12, 13
X	US, A, 4,887,596, (SHERMAN), 19 December 1989. See whole document	1-11
X	DE, A, 4107480, (ULRICH H), 10 September 1992. See whole document	1-11

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

*	Special categories of cited documents:	"T"	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"A"	document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be part of particular relevance	"X"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"E"	earlier document published on or after the international filing date	"Y"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
"L"	document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"&"	document member of the same patent family
"O"	document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
"P"	document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search 06 FEBRUARY 1995	Date of mailing of the international search report 10 MAR 1995
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Box PCT Washington, D.C. 20231 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230	Authorized officer TAMARA L. GRAYSAY Telephone No. (703) 308-0858

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet)(July 1992)*

(12) NACH DEM VERTRAG ÜBER DIE INTERNATIONALE ZUSAMMENARBEIT AUF DEM GEBIET DES PATENTWESENS (PCT) VERÖFFENTLICHTE INTERNATIONALE ANMELDUNG

(19) Weltorganisation für geistiges Eigentum
Internationales Büro

(43) Internationales Veröffentlichungsdatum
3. Oktober 2002 (03.10.2002)

PCT

(10) Internationale Veröffentlichungsnummer
WO 02/076314 A1

(51) Internationale Patentklassifikation[7]: A61B 17/70, 17/86

(21) Internationales Aktenzeichen: PCT/EP02/01284

(22) Internationales Anmeldedatum:
7. Februar 2002 (07.02.2002)

(25) Einreichungssprache: Deutsch

(26) Veröffentlichungssprache: Deutsch

(30) Angaben zur Priorität:
101 15 014.8 27. März 2001 (27.03.2001) DE

(71) Anmelder *(für alle Bestimmungsstaaten mit Ausnahme von US)*: **BIEDERMANN MOTECH GMBH** [DE/DE]; Bertha-von-Suttner-Strasse 23, 78054 VS-Schwenningen (DE).

(72) Erfinder: **BIEDERMANN, Lutz**; Am Schäfersteig 8, 78048 VS-Villingen (DE). **HARMS, Jürgen**; Im Zeitvogel 14, 76227 Karlsruhe (DE).

(74) Anwälte: **PRÜFER, Lutz, H.** usw.; Prüfer & Partner GbR, Patentanwälte, Harthauser Strasse 25d, 81545 München (DE).

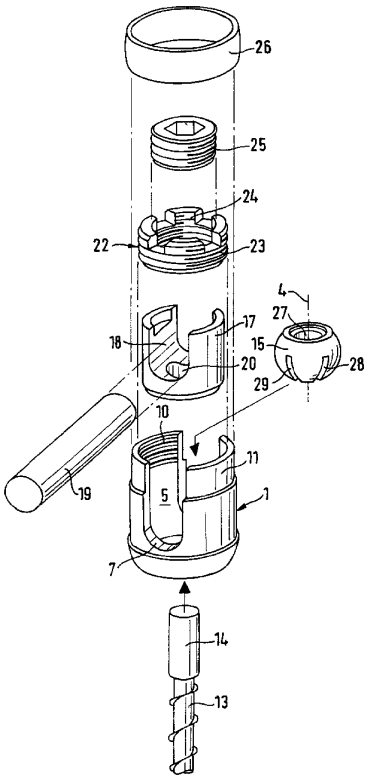
(81) Bestimmungsstaaten *(national)*: JP, KR.

(84) Bestimmungsstaaten *(regional)*: europäisches Patent (AT, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR).

[Fortsetzung auf der nächsten Seite]

(54) Title: ANCHOR ELEMENT

(54) Bezeichnung: VERANKERUNGSELEMENT



(57) Abstract: An anchor element with a screw (12), comprising a threaded section (13) and a head (15), in the form of a segment of a sphere and a housing piece (1), for connecting the screw (12) to a bar (19) is disclosed. The housing piece (1) comprises a first end (2) and an opposing second end (3), with a longitudinal axis (4) running through both ends (2, 3). The housing piece further comprises a drilling (5) coaxial to the longitudinal axis (4), a first region adjacent to the first end (2), having an essentially U-shaped cross-section (18), with two free sides (8, 9), comprising a thread for housing the bar (19) to be fitted, a region adjacent to the other end (3) for housing the head (15) and an element for exerting pressure on the bar (19) and the head (15). The threaded section (13) and the head (15) are embodied as separate pieces, such that the screw may be used in situations with varying lengths.

(57) Zusammenfassung: Es wird ein Verankerungselement mit einer einen Gewindeabschnitt (13) und einen als kugelsegmentförmigen Abschnitt ausgebildeten Kopf (15) aufweisenden Schraube (12) und einem Aufnahmeteil (1) zum Verbinden der Schraube (12) mit einem Stab (19) geschaffen. Das Aufnahmeteil (1) weist ein erstes Ende (2) und ein diesem gegenüberliegendes zweites Ende (3) und eine durch die beiden Enden (2, 3) gehende Längsachse (4) koaxiale Bohrung (5), einen in einem an das erste Ende (2) angrenzenden ersten Bereich mit einem im wesentlichen U-förmigen Querschnitt (18) mit zwei freien, ein Gewinde aufweisenden Schenkeln (8, 9) zur Aufnahme des einzusetzenden Stabes (19), einen an das andere Ende (3) angrenzenden Bereich zur Aufnahme des Kopfes (15) und ein auf den Stab (19) bzw. den Kopf (15) Druck ausübendes Element auf. Damit die Schrauben vor Ort für verschiedenste Längen verwendbar sind, sind der Gewindeabschnitt (13) und der Kopf (15) als separate Teile ausgebildet.

WO 02/076314 A1

Erklärungen gemäß Regel 4.17:

— *hinsichtlich der Berechtigung des Anmelders, ein Patent zu beantragen und zu erhalten (Regel 4.17 Ziffer ii) für die folgenden Bestimmungsstaaten JP, KR, europäisches Patent (AT, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR)*

— *Erfindererklärung (Regel 4.17 Ziffer iv) nur für US*

Veröffentlicht:

— *mit internationalem Recherchenbericht*

— *vor Ablauf der für Änderungen der Ansprüche geltenden Frist; Veröffentlichung wird wiederholt, falls Änderungen eintreffen*

Zur Erklärung der Zweibuchstaben-Codes und der anderen Abkürzungen wird auf die Erklärungen ("Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations") am Anfang jeder regulären Ausgabe der PCT-Gazette verwiesen.

Verankerungselement

Die Erfindung betrifft ein Verankerungselement mit einer einen Gewindeabschnitt und einen als kugelsegmentförmigen Abschnitt ausgebildeten Kopf aufweisenden Schraube und einem Aufnahmeteil zum Verbinden der Schraube mit einem Stab nach dem Oberbegriff des Patentanspruches 1. Ein derartiges Verankerungselement wird insbesondere in der Wirbelsäulenchirurgie, aber auch in der Unfallchirurgie bei anderen Knochen eingesetzt.

Ein solches Verankerungselement ist beispielsweise aus der DE 43 07 576 C1 bekannt. Bei derartigen bekannten Verankerungselementen und Schrauben sind der Gewindeabschnitt der Schraube und ihr Kopf einstückig ausgebildet. Da der Chirurg verschiedenste Längen der Schrauben benötigt, muß er immer verschiedene Sätze solcher Schrauben vorrätig haben. Das macht ein erhebliches Vorratslager notwendig mit der Folge erheblicher Kosten.

Aufgabe der Erfindung ist es, diesen Nachteil zu beseitigen.

Diese Aufgabe wird durch das in Patentanspruch 1 gekennzeichnete Verankerungselement gelöst. Dadurch wird es möglich, daß der Chirurg bei der Anwendung den Gewindeabschnitt vor oder nach dem Implantieren auf eine gewünschte Länge kürzt und dann diesen mit dem Kopf und dem Aufnahmeteil verbindet. Auf diese Weise wird die Vorratshaltung wesentlich verkleinert, und gleichzeitig erhöhen sich die Möglichkeiten für den Chirurgen, feinere Justierungen vorzunehmen, da die Schrauben auf jedes Längenmaß kürzbar sind.

Weiterbildungen der Erfindung sind in den Unteransprüchen gekennzeichnet.

Weitere Merkmale und Zweckmäßigkeiten der Erfindung ergeben sich aus der Beschreibung von Ausführungsbeispielen anhand der Figuren.

Von den Figuren zeigen:

Fig. 1 eine Seitenansicht einer ersten Ausführungsform in geschnittener Darstellung;

Fig. 2 die in Fig. 1 gezeigte Ausführungsform in Explosionsdarstellung;

Fig. 3 eine entsprechende Explosionsdarstellung einer zweiten Ausführungsform;

Fig. 4 eine Seitenansicht der ersten in den beiden Ausführungsformen verwendeten Knochenschraube;

Fig. 5 eine Draufsicht auf die Knochenschraube in Fig. 4;

Fig. 6 eine Seitenansicht einer zweiten Ausführungsform der in den ersten beiden Ausführungsbeispielen verwendeten Knochenschraube;

Fig. 7 eine Draufsicht auf die in Fig. 6 gezeigte Knochenschraube;

Fig. 8 eine Seitenansicht einer dritten Ausführungsform einer in den ersten beiden Ausführungsbeispielen gezeigten Knochenschraube;

Fig. 9 eine Seitenansicht einer weiteren Ausführungsform in Schnittdarstellung;

Fig. 10 eine Seitenansicht einer weiteren Ausführungsform in Schnittdarstellung; und

Fig. 11 eine vergrößerte Darstellung des Details X von Fig. 10.

Bei der in den Fig. 1 und 2 gezeigten ersten Ausführungsform weist das Verankerungselement ein zylindrisch ausgebildetes Aufnahmeteil 1 mit einem ersten Ende 2 und einem gegenüberliegenden zweiten Ende 3 auf. Die beiden Enden erstrecken sich senkrecht zu einer Symmetrie- bzw. Längsachse 4. Koaxial zu der Längsachse 4 ist eine von dem ersten Ende 2 aus sich erstreckende erste koaxiale Bohrung 5 vorgesehen, die sich bis zu einem vorbestimmten Abstand von dem zweiten Ende 3 hin erstreckt. An dem zweiten Ende 3 ist eine zweite Bohrung vorgesehen, deren Durchmesser kleiner als der Durchmesser der ersten Bohrung ist. In dem gezeigten Ausführungsbeispiel ist die zweite Bohrung als eine Öffnung ausgebildet, deren Rand

als hohlkugelsegementförmiger Abschnitt geformt ist, dessen Mittelpunkt zum ersten Ende 2 hin gerichtet ist.

Das Aufnahmeteil 1 weist ausgehend von dem ersten Ende 2 eine sich senkrecht zur Längsachse 3 erstreckende U-förmige Ausnehmung 7 auf mit zwei zum ersten Ende 2 hin endenden freien Schenkeln 8, 9. Angrenzend an das erste Ende 2 weisen die Schenkel ein Innengewinde 10 auf. Der Grund der U-förmigen Ausnehmung erstreckt sich bis zu einem vorgegebenen Abstand von dem zweiten Ende 3 hin. Angrenzend an das erste Ende 2 weisen die Schenkel 8, 9 außen einen Abschnitt 11 auf, dessen Außendurchmesser kleiner ist als der Außendurchmesser des angrenzenden Abschnittes des Aufnahmeteiles.

Die mit dem Aufnahmeteil 1 zusammenwirkende Schraube 12 weist einen als Knochenschraube ausgebildeten Gewindeabschnitt 13 und einen in der in Fig. 1 gezeigten montierten Darstellung damit verbundenen kugelsegmentförmigen Kopf 15 auf. Der Kopf weist einen Radius auf, der so bemessen ist, daß der Kopf bei der in Fig. 1 gezeigten Aufnahme des Kopfes 15 in der zweiten Bohrung 6 zu einem dort gebildeten hohlkugelsegementförmigen Wandabschnitt paßt, wobei der hohlkugelsegmentförmige Abschnitt so ausgebildet ist, daß der Mittelpunkt 16 der Kugel so weit zum ersten Ende 2 hin versetzt ist, daß der Abschnitt ein Widerlager bildet und die Kugel bzw. der Kopf 15 in dem hohlkugelsegmentförmigen Abschnitt der zweiten Bohrung 6 gehalten wird.

Es ist ferner ein Druckelement 17 vorgesehen, welches zylindrisch ausgebildet ist und einen Außendurchmesser aufweist, der gerade so groß ist, daß das Druckelement in die erste Bohrung 5 einführbar und in dieser in Axialrichtung hin- und herbewegbar ist. Auf seiner, dem zweiten Ende 3 zugewandten

Unterseite weist das Druckelement 17 einen zur Längsachse 4 symmetrisch ausgebildeten hohlkugelsegmentförmigen Abschnitt auf, dessen Radius dem Radius des Kopfes 5 entspricht. Das Druckelement weist eine sich quer zur Längsachse 4 erstreckende U-förmige Ausnehmung 18 auf, deren freie Schenkel sich zum ersten Ende 2 hin erstrecken. Der seitliche Durchmesser dieser U-förmigen Ausnehmung ist so gewählt, daß ein aufzunehmender Stab 19 in die Ausnehmung einsetzbar ist und in dieser seitlich geführt ist. Die Tiefe der hohlkugelsegmentförmigen Ausnehmung ist so gewählt, daß sie in einem Abstand von dem zweiten Ende 3 endet, der größer ist als der dem Radius des Kopfes 15 entsprechenden Abstandes von dem Mittelpunkt 16 zum ersten Ende 2 hin gesehen. Am Grund der U-förmigen Ausnehmung 18 schließt sich eine koaxiale Bohrung 20 an, deren Durchmesser kleiner als der Durchmesser des aufzunehmenden Stabes 19 ist.

Wie aus Fig. 1 ersichtlich ist, weist die U-förmige Ausnehmung 18 an ihrem zum ersten Ende 2 hin gerichteten Ende einen Abschnitt 21 auf, dessen innere Weite größer als der Durchmesser der U-förmigen Ausnehmung 18 ist.

Auf der dem ersten Ende 2 zugewandten Seite schließt sich an das Druckelement 17 eine Mutter 22 an, die ein zu dem Innengewinde 10 passendes Außengewinde 23 und zusätzlich ein Innengewinde 24 aufweist. Die Innenabmessung der Mutter 22 ist so gewählt, daß die innere Weite kleiner als der Durchmesser des Abschnittes 21 ist und größer als der Durchmesser des Stabes 19 und damit der U-förmigen Ausnehmung 18 ist. Ferner ist eine Innenmutter 25 mit einem zum Innengewinde 24 passenden Außengewinde vorgesehen. Schließlich ist eine das freie Ende angrenzend an das erste Ende 2 umfassende Hülse 26 vor-

gesehen, die im zusammengesetzten Zustand auf dem ringförmigen Abschnitt 11 aufsitzt, wie dieser in Fig. 1 gezeigt ist.

Wie am besten aus Fig. 2 zu ersehen ist, weist die Mutter 22 einen Schlitz und die Innenmutter 25 eine Sechskantöffnung zum jeweiligen getrennten Angreifen von Schraubendrehern auf.

Wie am besten aus Fig. 2 zu ersehen ist, ist der Kopf 15 als eine an ihrem dem ersten Ende 2 zuzuwendenden Ende abgeflachte Kugel ausgebildet und weist eine zu der Längsachse 4 koaxiale Bohrung 27 auf. Der Durchmesser der Bohrung 27 ist gleich dem Außendurchmesser des Schaftes 14 und so ausgebildet, daß der Schaft in die Bohrung reibschlüssig einschiebbar ist. Wie aus Fig. 2 ersichtlich ist, ist das so geformte hohlkugelsegmentförmige Element auf seiner dem abgeflachten Ende gegenüberliegenden Seite mit in Umfangsrichtung einen Abstand zueinander aufweisenden und sich parallel zur Längsachse 4 erstreckenden und bis zu dem der abgeflachten Seite gegenüberliegenden Ende reichenden Ausschnitten 28, 29 versehen. Dadurch wird erreicht, daß der dem ersten Ende 2 abgewandte Rand 30 zum Einführen des Schaftes 14 federnd nach außen nachgebbar ausgebildet ist.

Im Betrieb wird zunächst die Schraube 12 in den Knochen bzw. den Wirbel eingeschraubt. Zu diesem Zweck weist der Schaft 14 bekannte Eingriffsmöglichkeiten wie etwa einen Innensechskant auf. Dann kürzt der Operateur den Schaft 14 auf die gewünschte Länge und setzt zunächst das Aufnahmeteil mit der zweiten Bohrung auf den Schaft 14 und führt dann den Kopf von dem ersten Ende 2 her auf den Schaft 14, so daß der Schaft 14 vom federnd nachgebenden Rand 30 her in die Bohrung 27 eingeführt wird und der Kopf den Schaft in der in Fig. 1 gezeigten Weise einschließt. Der Kopf 15 und der Schaft 14 sind reib-

schlüssig miteinander verbunden. Anschließend wird das Druckelement 17 eingesetzt und durch Einschrauben der Mutter 22 so auf den Kopf 15 gedrückt, daß dieser eine gewünschte Drehstabilisierung erfährt. Die Hülse 26 wird aufgebracht und dann wird mit Hilfe der Innenmutter 25 der Stab 19 fixiert. Der Stab 19 übt über das Druckelement 17 einen zusätzlichen Druck auf den Kopf 15 aus.

Durch den vom ersten Ende 2 her gesehen ausgeübten Druck auf den Kopf 15 wird der geschlitzte Kopf 15 einerseits mit dem Schaft 14 bewegungsfest verbunden bzw. verklemmt, gleichzeitig wird der Kopf in seiner Drehstellung arretiert.

Die in Fig. 3 gezeigte zweite Ausführungsform unterscheidet sich von der zuvor beschriebenen Ausführungsform durch einen abgewandelten Kopf 31. Dieser weist wie bei der ersten Ausführungsform in Umfangsrichtung zueinander versetzte Ausschnitte 28 auf, die an dem dem ersten Ende abgewandten Rand 34 frei enden und einen Abstand von dem dem ersten Ende 2 zugewandten Rand 32 aufweisen. Es ist jedoch ein Ausschnitt 33 vorgesehen, der sich vollständig von dem Rand 32 bis zum gegenüberliegenden Rand 34 erstreckt, mit der Folge, daß das so gebildete Kugelsegment um ein durch die Breite des Ausschnittes 33 bestimmtes Ausmaß zusammendrückbar ist. Die Breite des so gebildeten Schlitzes 33 ist so gewählt, daß der Kopf 31 zunächst so weit zusammendrückbar ist, daß er in der in Fig. 3 gezeigten Richtung vom zweiten Ende 2 her in die erste Bohrung 5 hineindrückbar ist und daß dann der Schaft 14 in den Kopf in der gleichen Weise wie oben beschrieben einschiebbar ist und auf die gleiche Weise in verklemmter Position gehalten wird.

Der Schaft 14 der Schraube hat vorzugsweise die in den Fig. 4 und 5 gezeigte zylindrische Form oder auch eine in den Fig. 6 und 7 gezeigte mehreckige Form. In letzterer ist der Querschnitt achteckig ausgebildet. Eine weitere bevorzugte Ausführungsform ist in Fig. 8 gezeigt. Der Schaft ist hier zylindrisch ausgebildet und weist eine rauhe Oberfläche auf, die das Ineingriffbringen zwischen Kugel 15 und Schaft erleichtert.

Die in Fig. 9 gezeigte weitere Ausführungsform stimmt in allen Merkmalen, die das Aufnahmeteil 1, das Druckelement 17, den Stab 19 und die Schrauben 22 und 25 betreffen, mit den vorhergehenden Ausführungsbeispielen überein. Der einzige Unterschied besteht darin, daß der Kopf 15 als ein Kugelsegment ausgebildet ist, welches in seinen äußeren Abmessungen den beiden vorhergehenden Kugelsegmenten entspricht, jedoch keine Ausschnitte 28 oder 33 aufweist. Statt dessen weist das Kugelsegment auf der Innenseite seiner Bohrung 27 ein Innengewinde auf. Anstelle des Schaftes 14 ist ein Schaft 35 mit einem Gewinde vorgesehen, welches zu dem Innengewinde des Kopfes passend ausgebildet ist. Die Bohrung ist als eine Sackbohrung ausgebildet, die an dem dem freien Ende 2 zugewandten Ende endet oder dort einen Anschlag aufweist, so daß die Schraube nur so weit in die gezeigte Stellung einschraubbar ist, in der sie nicht aus dem Kugelsegment an dessen abgeflachter Seite heraussteht. Wie in Fig. 9 gezeigt ist, sind das Innengewinde des Kopfes 15 und das entsprechende Außengewinde des Schaftes 35 in der Richtung vorzugsweise entgegengesetzt zur Richtung des Gewindes des Gewindeabschnittes 13 der Knochenschraube ausgebildet.

Der Betrieb erfolgt in gleicher Weise wie bei dem zuerst beschriebenen Ausführungsbeispiel, wobei nach dem Kürzen des

Schaftes 35 der Kopf 15 vom ersten Ende 2 des Aufnahmeteils 1 her in die Bohrung 5 eingeführt und auf den vom zweiten Ende 3 her eingeführten Schaft 35 aufgeschraubt wird.

Die in den Figuren 10 und 11 gezeigte weitere Auführungsform stimmt in allen Merkmalen, die das Aufnahmeteil 1, das Druckelement 17, den Stab 19 und die Schrauben 22 und 25 betreffen, mit den vorhergehenden Ausführungsbeispielen überein. Anstelle des Schafts 35 und des Kopfes 15 der Ausführungsform nach Fig. 9, welche die zusammenwirkenden Gewinde aufweist, ist bei dieser Ausführungsform der Schaft 37 in einem Abschnitt angrenzend an das dem Knochengewindeabschnitt gegenüberliegenden Ende als Wellenstab ausgebildet. Die Außenfläche des Schaftes weist in Umfangsrichtung verlaufende Wellentäler 38 und dazwischenliegende Wellenkämme 39 auf. Die Wellentäler 38 haben in Umfangsrichtung gesehen einen kreisabschnittförmigen Querschnitt und ihr Durchmesser auf halber Höhe bzw. Tiefe ist deutlich größer als der entsprechende Durchmesser des Wellenbergs 39, so dass die Wellenberge 39 spitz sind im Verhältnis zu dem Grund der Wellentäler 38. Der Kopf 15 ist als ein Kugelsegment ausgebildet, welches in seinen äußeren Abmessungen den zuvor genannten Kugelsegmenten entspricht, das jedoch keine Ausschnitte 28 oder 33 aufweist. Auf der Innenseite seiner Bohrung 27 weist das Kugelsegment des Kopfes 15 in Umfangsrichtung verlaufende Wellen mit Wellentälern 40 und Wellenkämmen 41 auf, die jeweils den Wellenkämmen 39 bzw. den Wellentälern 38 des Schaftes 37 entsprechen. Zwischen den Wellentälern 38 und den Wellenkämmen 39 des Schaftes einerseits und den entsprechenden Wellenkämmen 40 und Wellentälern 41 andererseits ist ein kleiner Zwischenraum, so daß der Schaft in das Kugelsegment einführbar ist.

Der Betrieb erfolgt in ähnlicher Weise wie bei dem Ausführungsbeispiel gemäß Fig. 9. Das Kürzen des gewellten Schaftes 37 ist jedoch bei dieser Ausführungsform einfacher als das Kürzen des Schaftes 35 mit dem Gewinde gemäß Fig. 9, da die Wellentäler 38 ein leichtes Abschneiden ermöglichen, während bei dem Schaft 35 mit dem Gewinde gemäß Fig. 9 darauf geachtet werden muß, daß das Gewinde nicht zerstört wird. Nach dem Kürzen des Schaftes 37 wird der Kopf 15 von dem ersten Ende 2 des Aufnahmeteils 1 in die Bohrung 5 eingeführt und auf den Schaft 37 aufgedrückt. Dabei wirken die Wellen des Schaftes 37 und die entsprechenden der Bohrung 27 des Kopfes 15 zusammen, so daß der Schaft gehalten wird.

In den oben beschriebenen Ausführungsbeispielen wird der Kopf 15 jeweils durch einen mit dem Aufnahmeteil 1 einstückig ausgebildeten Rand gehalten. Ein solches Widerlager kann auch auf andere Weise gebildet werden, beispielsweise ist es möglich, die erste Bohrung 5 vollständig durch das Aufnahmeteil 1 hindurch zu bohren und dann angrenzend an das zweite Ende ein den Kopf 15 aufnehmendes Halteelement einzuspannen.

In den oben beschriebenen Ausführungsbeispielen weist das Aufnahmeteil stets die Mutter 22 und eine Innenmutter 25 sowie eine Hülse 26 auf. Diese Fixierung kann in bekannter Weise auch anders ausgebildet sein. Insbesondere kann gegebenenfalls auch lediglich eine Innenmutter vorgesehen sein.

Bei dem oben unter Bezugnahme auf Fig. 9 beschriebenen Ausführungsbeispiel weist der Kopf 15 keine Ausschnitte 28, 33 auf. In einer weiteren Ausführungsform weisen Kopf 15 und Schaft 35 wie bei der in Fig. 9 gezeigten Darstellung zueinander passende Gewinde auf. Der Kopf 15 weist jedoch zusätz-

lich den sich über die gesamte Länge erstreckenden Ausschnitt 33, so daß wie bei der in Fig. 3 gezeigten Ausführungsform der Kopf ohne eingeschraubten Schaft von dem Rand 3 aus durch Zusammendrücken in das Aufnahmeteil einschiebbar ist und dann auf den ebenfalls vom Ende 3 her einführbaren Schaft 35 durch Einschrauben aufnimmt und mit diesem verbunden wird. Der Schlitz führt beim Aufsetzen der Druckelemente bzw. beim Ausüben des Druckes auf den Kopf 15 dazu, daß gleichzeitig der Kopf und der Schaft 35 fester zusammengedrückt werden als ohne einen solchen Schlitz.

In einer weiteren Ausführungsform können zusätzlich noch Ausschnitte 28 in der in Fig. 3 gezeigten Weise vorgesehen sein, um so ein noch stärkeres Anpressen an den Gewindeschaft 35 zu bewirken.

Patentansprüche

1. Verankerungselement mit einer einen Gewindeabschnitt (13) und einen als kugelsegmentförmiger Abschnitt ausgebildeten Kopf (15) aufweisenden Schraube (12) und einem Aufnahmeteil (1) zum Verbinden der Schraube (12) mit einem Stab (19), wobei das Aufnahmeteil (1)
ein erstes Ende (2) und ein diesem gegenüberliegendes zweites Ende (3), eine durch die beiden Enden (2, 3) gehende Längsachse (4),
eine zur Längsachse (4) koaxiale Bohrung (5), einen in einem an das erste Ende (2) angrenzenden ersten Bereich mit einem im wesentlichen U-förmigen Querschnitt (7) mit zwei freien ein Gewinde aufweisenden Schenkeln (8, 9) zur Aufnahme des einzusetzenden Stabes (19), einen an das andere Ende (3) angrenzenden Bereich zur Aufnahme des Kopfes (15) und
ein auf den Stab (19) bzw. auf den Kopf (15) Druck ausübendes Element (22, 17) aufweist,
dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß
der Gewindeabschnitt (13) und der Kopf (15) als separate Teile ausgebildet sind.

2. Verankerungselement nach Anspruch 1, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß der Gewindeabschnitt (13) an dem kopfseitigen Ende einen Schaft (14) aufweist.

3. Verankerungselement nach Anspruch 1 oder 2, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß der Kopf (15) auf seiner dem Gewindeabschnitt (13) zugewandten Seite einen federnd nachgebenden Rand aufweist.

4. Verankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß der dem Gewindeabschnitt zugewandte Rand (34) eine oder mehrere zur Symmetrieachse (4) parallel gerichtete und umfangsmäßig verteilte Durchbrechungen bzw. Ausnehmungen (28, 29, 33) aufweist.

5. Verankerungselement nach Anspruch 4, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß eine Durchbrechung (33) sich in Richtung parallel zur Symmetrieachse (4) gesehen über die gesamte Wandlänge erstreckt.

6. Verankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 5, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß der Kopf (15) eine zur Symmetrieachse koaxiale Bohrung (27) aufweist.

7. Verankerungselement nach Anspruch 6, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß die Bohrung (27) zylindrisch ausgebildet ist.

8. Verankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 2 bis 7, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß der Schaft (14) eine rauhe Oberfläche aufweist.

9. Verankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 2 bis 8, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß der Schaft (14) mehreckig ausgebildet ist.

10. Verankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 6, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß der Kopf (15) in der Bohrung ein Innengewinde und der Schaft (35) ein dazu passendes Außengewinde aufweist.

11. Verankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 6, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß der Kopf (15) in der Bohrung in Umfangsrichtung gewellt ausgebildet ist und der Schaft (37) an seiner Außenseite eine entsprechende Wellung aufweist.

FIG.2

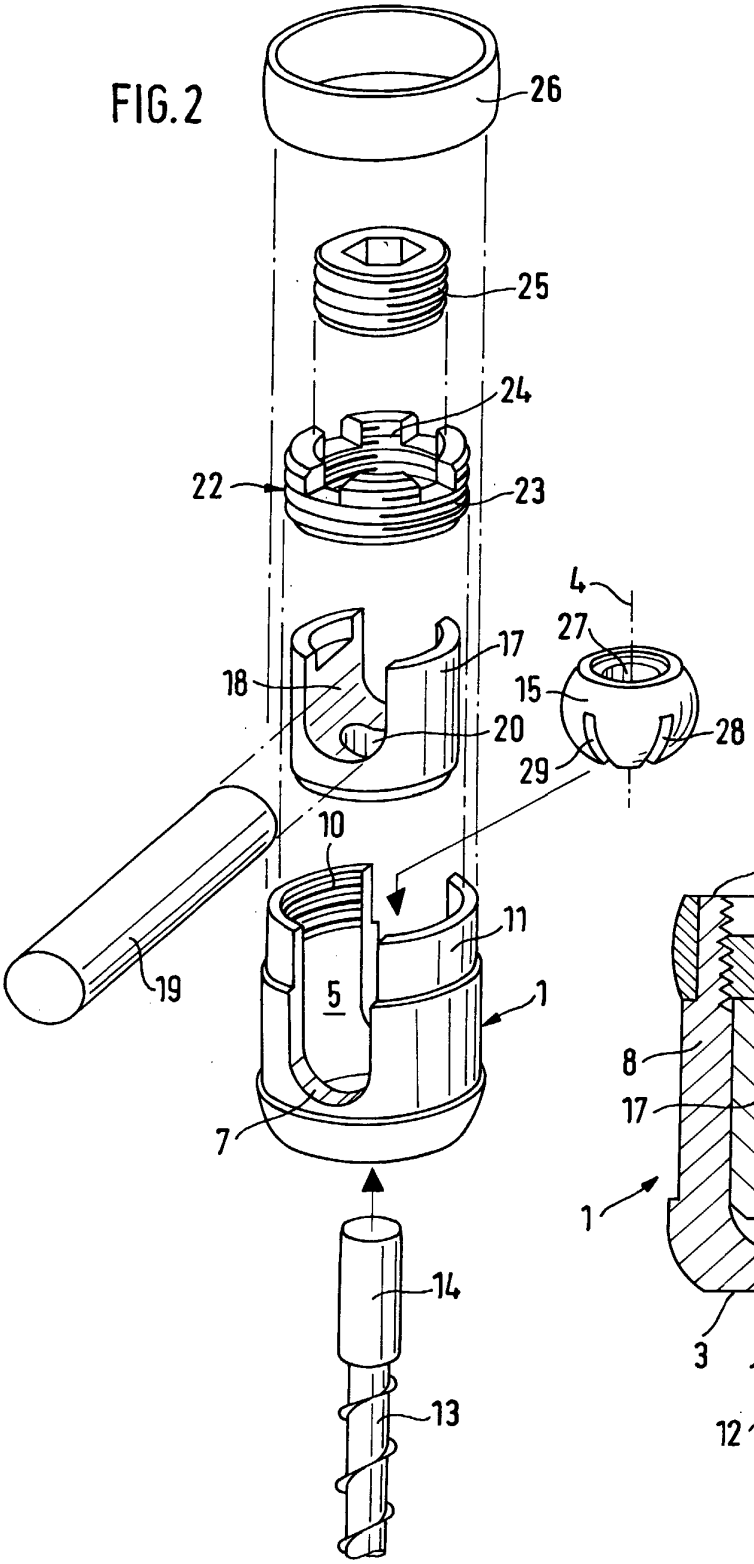

26
25
24
22
23
4
27
17
18
15
20
28
29
10
11
19
5
1
7
14
13

FIG.1

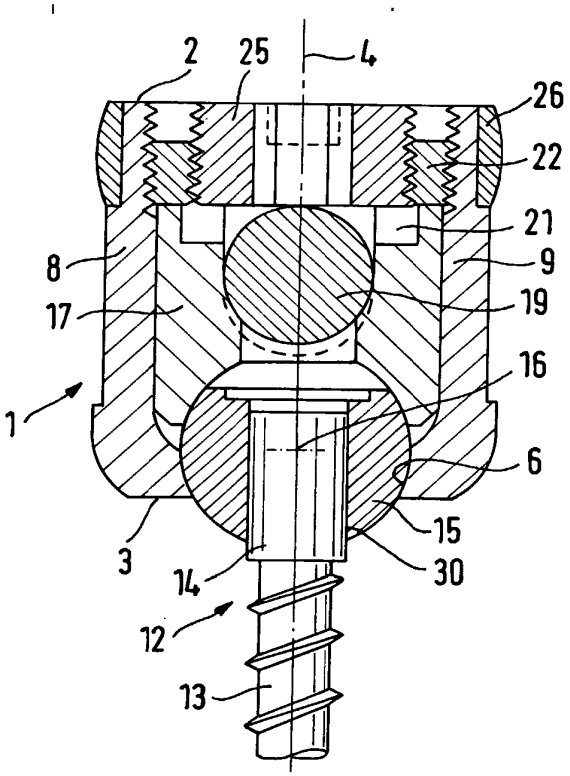

2
25
4
26
22
21
8
9
17
19
16
1
6
15
3
30
14
12
13

FIG.3

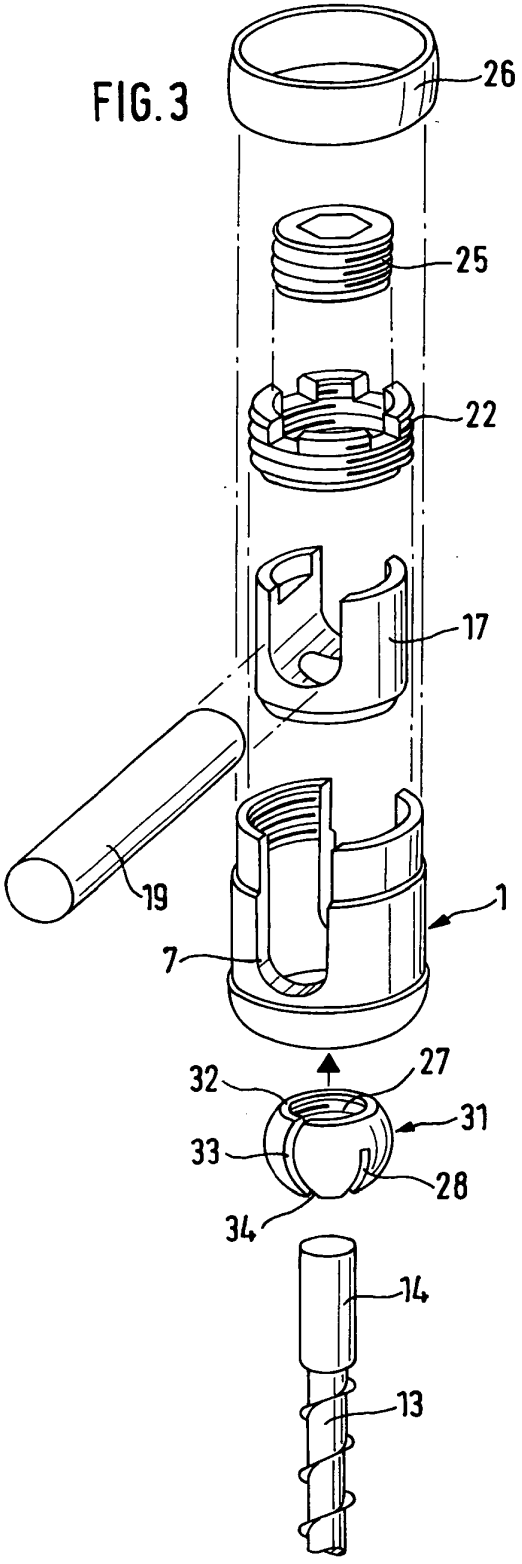


FIG.9

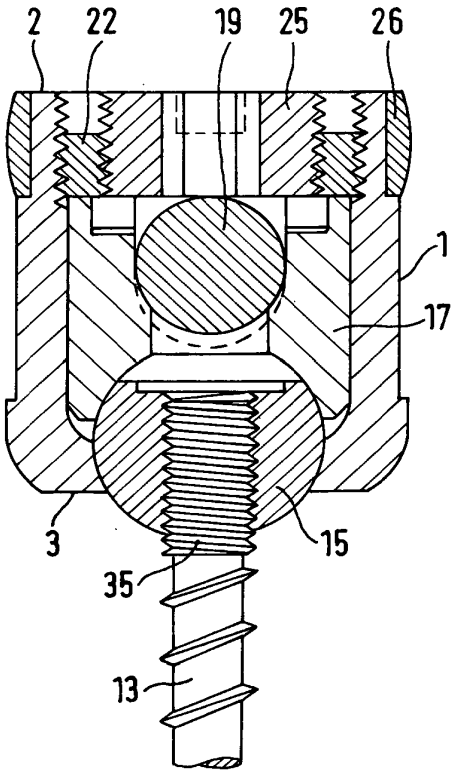


FIG.4

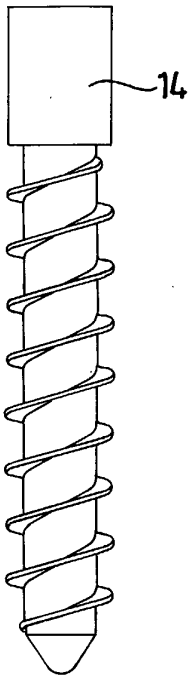


FIG.5

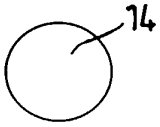


FIG.6

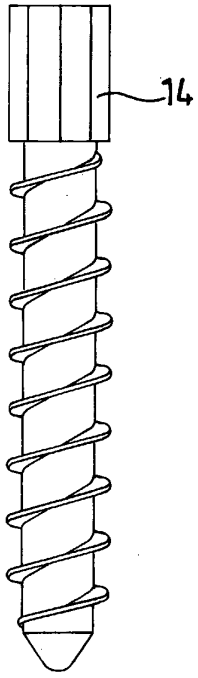


FIG.7

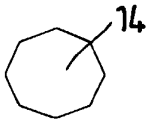
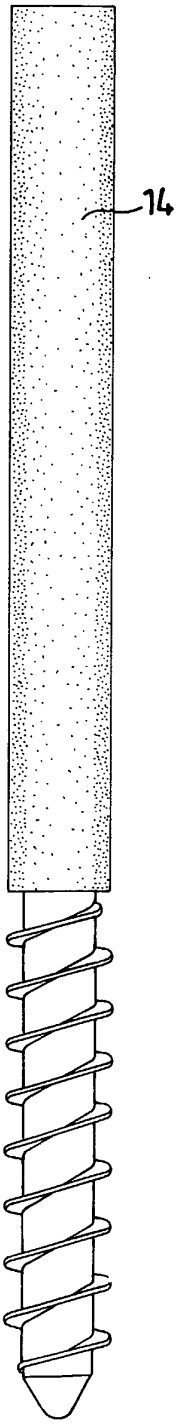


FIG.8



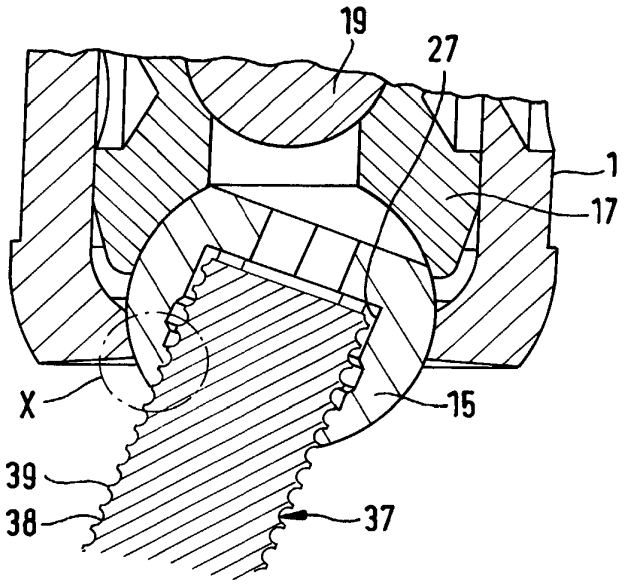


FIG.10

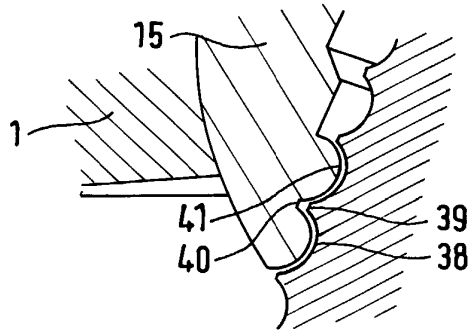


FIG.11

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/EP 02/01284

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 7 A61B17/70 A61B17/86

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 7 A61B

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 01 03593 A (FERUS ROBERT ;FRIGG ROBERT (CH); SYNTHES AG (CH); SYNTHES USA (US)) 18 January 2001 (2001-01-18) abstract; claim 1; figure 6 ---	1,10,11
X	EP 0 933 065 A (SULZER ORTHOPAEDIE AG) 4 August 1999 (1999-08-04)	1
A	the whole document ---	2-11
A	WO 94 00066 A (HESS MARTIN ;SYNTHES AG (CH); SCHLAEPFER JOHANNES FRIDOLIN (CH)) 6 January 1994 (1994-01-06) abstract; figures 1,2 ---	1-11
A	FR 2 786 088 A (DIMSO SA) 26 May 2000 (2000-05-26) abstract; figure 3 ---	1,3-7
	-/--	

[X] Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

[X] Patent family members are listed in annex.

° Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
19 July 2002	29/07/2002

Name and mailing address of the ISA	Authorized officer
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL – 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Hansen, S

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1992)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/EP 02/01284

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication,where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	FR 2 720 923 A (MIRONNEAU ANTOINE;REMOND JOEL; GALLAND OLIVIER; HUPPERT JEAN; SRA SARL) 15 December 1995 (1995-12-15) page 7, paragraph 1; figure 1 -----	1,2,8

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (July 1992)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

formation on patent family members

International Application No
PCT/EP 02/01284

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 0103593 A	18-01-2001	WO 0103593 A1	18-01-2001
		AU 4357399 A	30-01-2001
		EP 1191891 A1	03-04-2002
EP 0933065 A	04-08-1999	EP 0933065 A1	04-08-1999
		EP 0938872 A1	01-09-1999
		JP 11253454 A	21-09-1999
		US 6146383 A	14-11-2000
WO 9400066 A	06-01-1994	WO 9400066 A1	06-01-1994
		DE 59208301 D1	07-05-1997
		EP 0599847 A1	08-06-1994
		JP 6509950 T	10-11-1994
		US 5501684 A	26-03-1996
FR 2786088 A	26-05-2000	FR 2786088 A1	26-05-2000
FR 2720923 A	15-12-1995	FR 2720923 A1	15-12-1995

Form PCT/ISA/210 (patent family annex) (July 1992)

INTERNATIONALER RECHERCHENBERICHT

Internationales Aktenzeichen
PCT/EP 02/01284

A. KLASSIFIZIERUNG DES ANMELDUNGSGEGENSTANDES
IPK 7 A61B17/70 A61B17/86

Nach der Internationalen Patentklassifikation (IPK) oder nach der nationalen Klassifikation und der IPK

B. RECHERCHIERTE GEBIETE

Recherchierter Mindestprüfstoff (Klassifikationssystem und Klassifikationssymbole)
IPK 7 A61B

Recherchierte aber nicht zum Mindestprüfstoff gehörende Veröffentlichungen, soweit diese unter die recherchierten Gebiete fallen

Während der internationalen Recherche konsultierte elektronische Datenbank (Name der Datenbank und evtl. verwendete Suchbegriffe)

C. ALS WESENTLICH ANGESEHENE UNTERLAGEN

Kategorie°	Bezeichnung der Veröffentlichung, soweit erforderlich unter Angabe der in Betracht kommenden Teile	Betr. Anspruch Nr.
X	WO 01 03593 A (FERUS ROBERT ;FRIGG ROBERT (CH); SYNTHES AG (CH); SYNTHES USA (US)) 18. Januar 2001 (2001-01-18) Zusammenfassung; Anspruch 1; Abbildung 6 ---	1,10,11
X	EP 0 933 065 A (SULZER ORTHOPAEDIE AG) 4. August 1999 (1999-08-04)	1
A	das ganze Dokument ---	2-11
A	WO 94 00066 A (HESS MARTIN ;SYNTHES AG (CH); SCHLAEPFER JOHANNES FRIDOLIN (CH)) 6. Januar 1994 (1994-01-06) Zusammenfassung; Abbildungen 1,2 ---	1-11
A	FR 2 786 088 A (DIMSO SA) 26. Mai 2000 (2000-05-26) Zusammenfassung; Abbildung 3 ---	1,3-7
	-/--	

[X] Weitere Veröffentlichungen sind der Fortsetzung von Feld C zu entnehmen

[X] Siehe Anhang Patentfamilie

° Besondere Kategorien von angegebenen Veröffentlichungen :
"A" Veröffentlichung, die den allgemeinen Stand der Technik definiert, aber nicht als besonders bedeutsam anzusehen ist
"E" älteres Dokument, das jedoch erst am oder nach dem internationalen Anmeldedatum veröffentlicht worden ist
"L" Veröffentlichung, die geeignet ist, einen Prioritätsanspruch zweifelhaft erscheinen zu lassen, oder durch die das Veröffentlichungsdatum einer anderen im Recherchenbericht genannten Veröffentlichung belegt werden soll oder die aus einem anderen besonderen Grund angegeben ist (wie ausgeführt)
"O" Veröffentlichung, die sich auf eine mündliche Offenbarung, eine Benutzung, eine Ausstellung oder andere Maßnahmen bezieht
"P" Veröffentlichung, die vor dem internationalen Anmeldedatum, aber nach dem beanspruchten Prioritätsdatum veröffentlicht worden ist
"T" Spätere Veröffentlichung, die nach dem internationalen Anmeldedatum oder dem Prioritätsdatum veröffentlicht worden ist und mit der Anmeldung nicht kollidiert, sondern nur zum Verständnis des der Erfindung zugrundeliegenden Prinzips oder der ihr zugrundeliegenden Theorie angegeben ist
"X" Veröffentlichung von besonderer Bedeutung; die beanspruchte Erfindung kann allein aufgrund dieser Veröffentlichung nicht als neu oder auf erfinderischer Tätigkeit beruhend betrachtet werden
"Y" Veröffentlichung von besonderer Bedeutung; die beanspruchte Erfindung kann nicht als auf erfinderischer Tätigkeit beruhend betrachtet werden, wenn die Veröffentlichung mit einer oder mehreren anderen Veröffentlichungen dieser Kategorie in Verbindung gebracht wird und diese Verbindung für einen Fachmann naheliegend ist
"&" Veröffentlichung, die Mitglied derselben Patentfamilie ist

Datum des Abschlusses der internationalen Recherche	Absendedatum des internationalen Recherchenberichts
19. Juli 2002	29/07/2002

Name und Postanschrift der Internationalen Recherchenbehörde	Bevollmächtigter Bediensteter
Europäisches Patentamt, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL – 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31–70) 340–2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31–70) 340–3016	Hansen, S

Formblatt PCT/ISA/210 (Blatt 2) (Juli 1992)

INTERNATIONALER RECHERCHENBERICHT

Internationales Aktenzeichen
PCT/EP 02/01284

C.(Fortsetzung) ALS WESENTLICH ANGESEHENE UNTERLAGEN

Kategorie°	Bezeichnung der Veröffentlichung, soweit erforderlich unter Angabe der in Betracht kommenden Teile	Betr. Anspruch Nr.
A	FR 2 720 923 A (MIRONNEAU ANTOINE;REMOND JOEL; GALLAND OLIVIER; HUPPERT JEAN; SRA SARL) 15. Dezember 1995 (1995-12-15) Seite 7, Absatz 1; Abbildung 1	1,2,8

Formblatt PCT/ISA/210 (Fortsetzung von Blatt 2) (Juli 1992)

INTERNATIONALER RECHERCHENBERICHT

Angaben zu Veröffentli[illegible]n, die zur selben Patentfamilie gehören

Internationales Aktenzeichen
PCT/EP 02/01284

Im Recherchenbericht angeführtes Patentdokument		Datum der Veröffentlichung	Mitglied(er) der Patentfamilie		Datum der Veröffentlichung
WO 0103593	A	18-01-2001	WO	0103593 A1	18-01-2001
			AU	4357399 A	30-01-2001
			EP	1191891 A1	03-04-2002
EP 0933065	A	04-08-1999	EP	0933065 A1	04-08-1999
			EP	0938872 A1	01-09-1999
			JP	11253454 A	21-09-1999
			US	6146383 A	14-11-2000
WO 9400066	A	06-01-1994	WO	9400066 A1	06-01-1994
			DE	59208301 D1	07-05-1997
			EP	0599847 A1	08-06-1994
			JP	6509950 T	10-11-1994
			US	5501684 A	26-03-1996
FR 2786088	A	26-05-2000	FR	2786088 A1	26-05-2000
FR 2720923	A	15-12-1995	FR	2720923 A1	15-12-1995

Formblatt PCT/ISA/210 (Anhang Patentfamilie)(Juli 1992)

Patent Translate
Powered by EPO and Google

Notice

This translation is machine-generated. It cannot be guaranteed that it is intelligible, accurate, complete, reliable or fit for specific purposes. Critical decisions, such as commercially relevant or financial decisions, should not be based on machine-translation output.

DESCRIPTION DE20207850

[0001]
Kassel, the 16th May 2002 hz / st lawyer's file 19405

[0002]
Applicant: File N. N.

[0003]

Dr. med.

Peter METZ-STAVENHAGEN Schloßstraße 24

[0004]
34537 Bad Wildungen, DE

[0005]
Representative: Patent Attorneys

[0006]

Walther ■ Walther & Hinz Heimradstr.

2 34130 Kassel, DE

Anchoring element for fastening a rod of a

[0007]
Device for setting up a human or animal spine on a vertebral bone

[0008]
The present invention relates to an anchoring element for fixing a rod of a device for establishing a human or animal spine on a vertebral bone, comprising a substantially U-shaped and two substantially parallel holding webs comprehensive holder, in which a receiving slot for receiving the rod is, and with a counter to the received in the receiving slot rod securing element.

[0009]

f?

X K i "

[0010]

From DE 94 02 839 a pedicle screw is known, which is anchored with its threaded shaft in a vertebral body and having at its protruding from the vertebral bone end of a U-shaped holder with two parallel aligned holding webs.

In this case, a receiving slot for receiving a distraction or compression rod is formed between the

retaining webs, which can be secured and fixed by means of a fastened to the free ends of the retaining webs securing element.

This securing element is composed in a first embodiment of a hexagonal, annular element with a locking screw inserted therein, wherein the entire securing element can be inserted into a corresponding groove in the retaining webs. The securing element spans the receiving slot, so that the locking screw acts directly on the rod to fix it.

[0011]
In another embodiment, the securing element consists of a sleeve enclosing the retaining element with internal thread, wherein the shell can be screwed onto a corresponding, provided on the outer sides of the retaining webs thread, so that provided on the end face of the shell locking screw can engage in the receiving slot to fix the rod.

[0012]

In such a device, therefore, the pedicle screw must first be anchored in the vertebral body, in order to then insert the rod in the receiving slot.

Thereafter, the securing element is either inserted into the grooves or screwed onto the holder before the vortex or the rod is brought by tightening the locking screw in the desired position. This has proven to be very difficult in practice, since either the insertion of the fuse element into the grooves or the screwing of the fuse element on the holder requires a lot of tact, while at the same time must be taken to ensure that

[0013]
Vertebral body and / or the rod meanwhile does not slip.

[0014]

From DE 297 10 484 an anchoring element is known in which a sawtooth thread for receiving the locking screw is provided on the inner sides of the holding webs.

This ensures that the forces acting radially on the retaining webs in a normal thread accounts and attack only axially acting forces on the retaining web. As a result, a bending apart of the holding webs is prevented, so that even the holding webs comprehensive ring element can be omitted. Again, it has proven in practice to be very tedious to screw the respective locking screw in the corresponding sawtooth while keeping the spine and / or the rod as long in the desired position until the locking screw holds the rod independently.

[0015]
Based on this, the present invention seeks to provide an anchoring element, wherein the securing element reliably absorbs the forces occurring and in which the securing element is easy and quick to install.

[0016]
As a technical solution to this problem is proposed according to the invention, the above-mentioned anchoring element in that the securing element comprises a locking element and a ring member, wherein the ring member is attachable by means of a Renkverbindung at the free end of the holding webs.

[0017]

A trained according to this technical teaching anchoring element has the advantage that the ring element only needs to be placed axially on the free end of the holding webs and can be brought by a slight pivoting in its final, secured position.

Such a secured ring element holds in the receiving slot

[0018]
already located provisionally in the desired position, so that the operating doctor can now screw in the locking element in order to adjust the rod and fix.

[0019]

It has proven to be advantageous to form the Renkverbindung as a bayonet lock, with a radially projecting gripper and a slot or groove-like recording, wherein the gripper engages in the receptacle to fix the ring member of the holding webs.

Such a bayonet closure is inexpensive to implement and allows a quick and easy attachment of the ring member to the holder of the anchoring element.

[0020]
The configuration of the receptacle with an axial introduction and a radial holding element has the advantage that the gripper can be brought into the introduction in a simple manner and passes by rotation in the holding element to remain there and form a positive bayonet closure.

[0021]
It is understood that the rod may be formed, for example, as a distraction, compression or connecting rod.

[0022]

In a preferred embodiment, the ring element is insertable into the receiving slot and attachable between the retaining webs, wherein the gripper is mounted externally on the ring member, while the receptacle is arranged in the retaining webs.

This has the advantage that hereby the ring element is also integrated in the receiving slot, so that the entire anchoring element can be made very small.

[0023]

In another preferred embodiment, the ring element surrounds the retaining webs, wherein the receptacle is arranged in the ring element, while the gripper is attached to the retaining webs.

This has the

[0024]
Advantage that also by this the radial forces emanating from the locking element are absorbed by the ring member, without causing the holding webs are pressed in an undesirable manner.

[0025]

In yet another preferred embodiment, the insertion is V-shaped.

This has the advantage that the introduced into this introduction gripper need only be placed roughly on the introduction and then properly performed by the V-shaped configuration to the transversely oriented support member to be subsequently introduced by pivoting the ring member in this.

As a result, the placement of the ring element on the retaining webs is further simplified.

[0026]

In a further preferred embodiment, the Halteelemet is formed rising upward, whereby the ring member must perform not only a rotating, but in addition an axial movement in order to be solved. By such a Zusatzerfordenis when loosening the ring element unintentional release of the ring element is difficult. Anloges applies to a broadening of the end of the retaining element.

[0027]

In yet another preferred embodiment of the gripper is designed as a pin edge. The flank advantageously rests against the holding element with a larger area, so that unintentional detachment of the ring element is tempered by the correspondingly higher friction.

[0028]
In yet another preferred embodiment, the gripper extends through and out of the receptacle and is curved or inclined, preferably in the direction of the forces on the securing element, such that the

retaining strut faces inwards

[0029]

is pressed.

Hierdruch the holding webs are pressed inward due to the effective holding forces of the anchoring elements and it is ensured that the ring member is reliably held in the retaining webs. A jumping out of the fuse element due to bending retaining webs is prevented.

[0030]

In a preferred embodiment, a thread for receiving the locking element is provided in the ring element. In addition to the above-mentioned advantage that thereby a small size is achieved, this also has the advantage that the radial forces emanating from the locking element are completely absorbed by the ring element, without deformations occur as in the prior art.

[0031]

Further advantages of the anchoring element according to the invention will become apparent from the accompanying drawings and the embodiments described below. Likewise, according to the invention, the features mentioned above and those which are still further can be used individually or in any desired combinations with one another. The mentioned embodiments are not to be understood as exhaustive enumeration, but rather have exemplary character. Show it:

[0032]
Fig. 1 is an exploded view of a first Ausführngsform an anchoring element according to the invention with a rod;

[0033]
FIG. 2 shows a plan view of the ring element according to FIG. 1; FIG. 3 shows a partially sectioned side view of the anchoring element according to FIG. 1, cut along line IM-IM in FIG. 1;

[0034]
4 shows an exploded view of a second embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention with a rod;

[0035]
Fig. 5 is a plan view of the ring member of FIG. 4; Fig. 6 is a side view of the anchoring element of FIG. 4; 7 is an exploded view of a third embodiment of a

[0036]
anchoring element according to the invention with a rod;

[0037]
FIG. 8 shows a plan view of the ring element according to FIG. 7; FIG.

[0038]
9 shows a partially sectioned side view of the anchoring element according to FIG. 7, cut along line IX - IX in FIG. 7; 10 is an exploded view of a fourth embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention with a rod;

[0039]
11 shows a plan view of the ring element according to FIG. 10; FIG. 12 shows a side view of the anchoring element according to FIG. 10; FIG. 13 is an exploded view of a fifth embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention with a rod; FIG. 14 shows a plan view of the ring element according to FIG. 13; FIG. FIG. 15 shows a side view of the anchoring element according to FIG. 13; FIG. 16 shows an exploded view of a sixth embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention with a rod; 17 shows a plan view of the ring element according to FIG. 16;

[0040]
FIG. 18 is a partially sectioned side view of the anchoring element according to FIG. 16, cut along line XVIII-XVIII in FIG. 16; FIG.

[0041]

19 is an exploded view of a seventh embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention; FIG. 20 shows a plan view of the ring element according to FIG. 19; FIG. Fig. 21 is a side view of the anchoring element according to Flg.

19.

[0042]

FIGS. 1 to 3 show a first embodiment of an anchoring element embodied as a pedicle screw, wherein the anchoring element for insertion into the vertebral bone has a threaded shaft 10 and a U-shaped holder 12 with two retaining struts 14, 16, substantially parallel, a ring element 18 and designed as a grub screw locking element 20 includes.

In this case, a receiving slot 22 for receiving a rod 24 is provided in the holder 12, which over which from the locking element

[0043]
and the ring member 18 composed fuse element is fixed.

[0044]

In this embodiment, two bayonet pins 26, 28 are radially projecting on the ring member 18 on opposite sides, which in a entssprechende, formed on the inside of the holding webs 14, 16 insertion 30 and a holding member 32 are used.

In this case, the ring member 18 is inserted with its two pins 26, 28 from above into the upwardly open insertion 30, and brought to the bottom of the introduction 30 before the ring member 18 is pivoted by a few degrees, so that the pins 26, 28th be performed to the end of the holding element 32.

Arrived in this position, the ring member 18 is released and remains reliably in this position.

[0045]
As can be clearly seen in FIG. 3, the insertion 30 is V-shaped to form a large catching area for insertion of the pins 26, 28.

[0046]

In the ring member 18, an internal thread 34 is provided for receiving the locking screw 20 formed as a locking element.

In this case, the locking member 20 is screwed in so far into the ring member 18 that the locking member 20 presses on the rod 24 and fixes it in the desired position.

[0047]

FIGS. 4 to 6 show a second embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention, also embodied as a pedicle screw.

Again, the anchoring element is composed of a threaded shaft 40 for attachment of the anchoring element in the vertebral bone, a U-shaped bracket 42 with two substantially parallel retaining webs 44, 46, a ring member 48 and a lock screw designed as a Madame 50th

[0048]

together.

In this embodiment, on the respective inner sides of the holding webs 44, 46, an internal thread 52 is formed for receiving the locking element designed as a set screws 50.

In order that in this embodiment the radial forces acting on the holding webs 44, 46 do not lead to a bending of the holding webs 44, 46, in this case the ring element 48 is placed around the holding webs 44, 46 on the outside.

[0049]
Also in this embodiment, a receiving slot 54 of a rod 24 is formed in the holder 42, which is determined by the locking element 50 in the desired position.

[0050]

On the outwardly facing sides of the holding webs 44, 46 each have a radially projecting pin 56, 58 is provided, which are inserted into corresponding, provided on the inside ring element 48 leads 61, which also here at the introduction 60, 61 correspondingly perpendicular corresponding holding elements 62, 63 connect.

Again, the introducers 60, 61 are V-shaped to realize a large catch area.

[0051]

FIGS. 7 to 9 show a third embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention, also designed as a pedicle screw.

This third embodiment differs from the first embodiment according to FIGS. 1 to 3 in that on the inside of the holding webs 14, 16, then a slightly upwardly rising support member 66 is formed on the introduction 30, at the end of a widening 68 is provided is.

The broadening 68 is designed substantially circular.

In this holding element 66 of the pin 26, 28 can be inserted and clamped at a corresponding rotation of the ring member 18 in the upwardly extending support member 66, so that in this way a clamping protection is achieved. In this case, the holding element 66 increases in the direction of

the forces acting on the securing element.

[0052]

The broadening 68 at the end of the holding element 66 also causes that during rotation of the ring member 18 between pin 26, 28, and Ring member 18 on the one hand and the holding webs 14, 16 on the other hand built-up voltage is at least partially degraded again, since the widening 68 extends partially in the direction of the holding force and thus partially abolishes the pressure between the fuse element and rod 24. At the same time thereby a reliable and permanent securing of the ring member 18 is achieved, since to release the ring member 18 just this pressure must be rebuilt, which is not possible without external, targeted force. This means that the ring member 18 can not solve by itself.

[0053]

FIGS. 10 to 12 show a fourth embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention, also embodied as a pedicle screw. This fourth embodiment differs from the second embodiment according to FIGS. 4 to 6 in that on the inside of the ring element 48, a slightly upwardly rising holding element 70 is then formed on the introduction 61. In this holding element 70, the pin 56, 58 can be inserted and clamped at a corresponding rotation of the ring member 48 in the upwardly extending support member 70, so that in this way a clamping protection is achieved.

[0054]
In an embodiment not shown here, the end of the holding element 70, analogous to the holding element 66 of FIG. 9, widened.

[0055]

A fifth embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention, also designed as a pedicle screw, is shown in FIGS. 13 to 15.

This fifth embodiment differs from the second embodiment according to FIGS. 4 to 6 in that here the gripper

[0056]
· & Idigr;

[0057]

As a bayonet edge 72, 74 is formed, which is insertable into a corresponding insertion 76, 77 and retaining element 78 on the ring member 48.

By the broad edge 72, 74 creates a large contact surface between the ring member 48 and retaining web 44, 46, which leads to a large friction as soon as the ring member 48 is placed properly. This friction, in turn, hinders the unintentional release of the ring element 48, so that in this way a safeguard against unintentional release of the ring element 48 is achieved.

[0058]

FIGS. 16 to 18 show a sixth embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention, also designed as a pedicle screw. This sixth embodiment differs from the first embodiment according to FIGS. 1 to 3 in that here too the pins have been replaced by flanks 80, 82, which engage in a corresponding insertion 84 and retaining element 86. Otherwise the same applies to the fifth embodiment.

[0059]

The illustrated in FIGS. 19 to 21 seventh embodiment of an anchoring element according to the invention substantially corresponds to the first embodiment shown in FIGS. 1 to 3, only the gripper of the bayonet closure is formed differently here. As can be seen from FIG. 19, the gripper of the bayonet closure is designed as a radially projecting, upwardly inclined pin 90, 92. This pin 90, 92 is longer than the comparable pin 26, 28 in FIG. 1.

[0060]

After the rod 24 has been inserted into the receiving slot 22, the ring member 18 is also inserted into the receiving slot 22 in the axial direction. The pins 90, 92 are aligned so that they reach the introduction 30. Now, the operating surgeon must press the ring member 18 with appropriate force on the rod 24, so that the latter is pushed deeper into the receiving slot 22, and so

[0061]

that the pins 90, 92 reach the bottom of the introduction 30. Arrived in this position, the ring member 18 can be pivoted by an angular width, so that the pins 90, 92 reach the holding member 32. Since the rod 24 is biased in this case, the latter presses permanently on the ring member 18th That is, as shown in FIGS. 19 to 21, the ring member 18 is pushed upward. The pins 90, 92 are now made so long that they protrude from the support member 32 and are also inclined according to the force acting on the ring member 18 force upwards. Due to this inclination of the pins 90, 92, the forces acting on the pins 90, 92 by the rod 24 are decomposed into an axial and a radial component. The radial component causes the retaining webs 14, 16 are pressed inwards. This ensures that the ring member 18 is reliably fixed in the holding webs 14, 16 even with large, occurring forces.

[0062]
In another embodiment, not shown here, the pins are curved, also to push the holding webs inwards.

[0063]
It goes without saying that the flank 80, 82 according to FIGS. 60 to 80 can also be inclined or curved.

[0064]
The rod 24 may be formed, for example, as a connection, distraction or compression rod depending on the purpose.

[0065]
LIST OF REFERENCE NUMBERS

[0066]
10 threaded shaft

[0067]
12 holder

[0068]
14 holding web

[0069]
16 holding web

[0070]
18 ring element

[0071]
20 Fixing element

[0072]
22 receiving slot

[0073]
24 Rod

[0074]
26 pen

[0075]
28 pen

[0076]

30 introduction

[0077]
32 retaining element

[0078]
34 inner thread

[0079]
40 threaded shaft

[0080]
42 holder

[0081]
44 holding web

[0082]
46 holding web

[0083]
48 rings element

[0084]
50 Fixing element

[0085]
52 inner thread

[0086]
54 receiving slot

[0087]
56 pen

[0088]
58 pen

[0089]
61 introduction

[0090]
62 retaining element

[0091]
63 Holding element 66 holding element 68 widening 70 holding element 72 flank

[0092]
74 flank

[0093]
76 introduction

[0094]
77 introduction

[0095]
78 Retaining element 80 flank

[0096]
82 flank

[0097]
84 introduction

[0098]
86 retaining element

[0099]
90 pen

[0100]
92 pen

(19) BUNDESREPUBLIK DEUTSCHLAND

DEUTSCHES PATENT- UND MARKENAMT

(12) **Gebrauchsmusterschrift**

(10) **DE 202 07 850 U 1**

(51) Int. Cl.[7]:
A 61 B 17/70
A 61 D 1/00

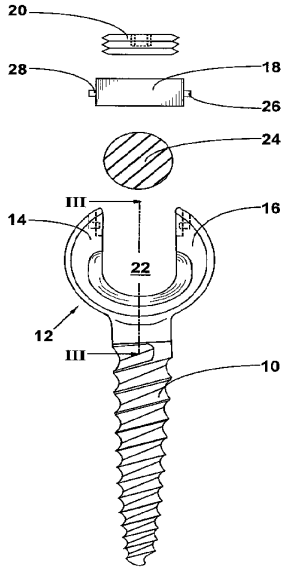
(21) Aktenzeichen: 202 07 850.7
(22) Anmeldetag: 21. 5. 2002
(47) Eintragungstag: 10. 10. 2002
(43) Bekanntmachung im Patentblatt: 14. 11. 2002

(73) Inhaber:
Metz-Stavenhagen, Peter, Dr.med., 34537 Bad Wildungen, DE

(74) Vertreter:
Walther, Walther & Hinz, 34130 Kassel

(54) Verankerungselement zur Befestigung eines Stabes einer Vorrichtung zum Einrichten einer menschlichen oder tierischen Wirbelsäule an einem Wirbelknochen

(57) Verankerungselemente zur Befestigung eines Stabes einer Vorrichtung zum Einrichten einer menschlichen oder tierischen Wirbelsäule an einem Wirbelknochen, mit einer im wesentlichen U-förmig ausgebildeten und zwei im wesentlichen parallel angeordnete Haltestege (14, 16, 44, 46) umfassenden Halterung (12, 42), in dem ein Aufnahmeschlitz (22, 54) zur Aufnahme des Stabes (24) ausgebildet ist, und mit einem gegen den im Aufnahmeschlitz (22, 54) aufgenommenen Stab (22) wirkenden Sicherungselement, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass das Sicherungselement ein Feststellelement (20, 50) und ein Ringelement (18, 48) umfasst, wobei das Ringelement (18, 48) mittels einer Renkverbindung am freien Ende der Haltestege (14, 16, 44, 46) anbringbar ist.



DE 202 07 850 U 1

DE 202 07 850 U 1

21.05.02

Kassel, den 16. Mai 2002 hz/st
Anwaltsakte 19405
Aktenzeichen N. N.

Anmelder:
Dr. med. Peter METZ-STAVENHAGEN
Schloßstraße 24
34537 Bad Wildungen, DE

Vertreter:
Patentanwälte
Walther · Walther & Hinz
Heimradstr. 2
34130 Kassel, DE

VERANKERUNGSELEMENT ZUR BEFESTIGUNG EINES STABES EINER VORRICHTUNG ZUM EINRICHTEN EINER MENSCHLICHEN ODER TIERISCHEN WIRBELSÄULE AN EINEM WIRBELKNOCHEN

Die vorliegende Erfindung betrifft ein Verankerungselement zur Befestigung eines Stabes einer Vorrichtung zum Einrichten einer menschlichen oder tierischen Wirbelsäule an einem Wirbelknochen, mit einern im wesentlichen U-förmig ausgebildeten und zwei im wesentlichen parallel angeordnete Haltestege umfassenden Halterung, in dem ein Aufnahmeschlitz zur Aufnahme des Stabes ausgebildet ist, und mit einem gegen den im Aufnahmeschlitz aufgenommenen Stab wirkenden Sicherungselement.

DE 202 07 850 U1

Aus dem DE 94 02 839 ist eine Pedikelschraube bekannt, die mit ihrem Gewindeschaft in einem Wirbelkörper verankerbar ist und die an ihrem aus dem Wirbelknochen herausragenden Ende eine U-förmig gebildete Halterung mit zwei parallel ausgerichteten Haltestegen aufweist. Dabei ist zwischen den Haltestegen ein Aufnahmeschlitz zur Aufnahme eines Distraktions- oder Kompressionsstabes ausgebildet, der mittels einem an den freien Enden der Haltestege befestigbaren Sicherungselement gesichert und fixiert werden kann. Dieses Sicherungselement setzt sich in einer ersten Ausführungsform aus einem sechseckigen, ringförmigen Element mit einer darin eingelassenen Feststellschraube zusammen, wobei das gesamte Sicherungselement in eine entsprechende Nut in den Haltestegen einschiebbar ist. Das Sicherungselement überspannt den Aufnahmeschlitz, so dass die Feststellschraube direkt auf den Stab wirkt, um diesen zu fixieren.

In einer anderen Ausführungsform setzt sich das Sicherungselement aus einem das Halteelement umschließenden Hülle mit Innengewinde zusammen, wobei die Hülle auf ein entsprechendes, auf den Außenseiten der Haltestege vorgesehenes Gewinde aufschraubbar ist, so dass die auf der Stirnseite der Hülle vorgesehene Feststellschraube in den Aufnahmeschlitz eingreifen kann, um den Stab zu fixieren.

Bei einer derartigen Vorrichtung muss also zunächst einmal die Pedikelschraube im Wirbelkörper verankert werden, um anschließend den Stab in den Aufnahmeschlitz einzulegen. Danach wird das Sicherungselement entweder in die Nuten eingeführt oder aber auf die Halterung aufgeschraubt, bevor der Wirbel bzw. der Stab durch Anziehen der Feststellschraube in die gewünschte Position gebracht wird. Dies hat sich in der Praxis als sehr schwierig herausgestellt, da entweder das Einführen des Sicherungselementes in die Nuten oder das Aufschrauben des Sicherungselementes auf die Halterung sehr viel Fingerspitzengefühl erfordert, wobei gleichzeitig darauf geachtet werden muss, dass der

Wirbelkörper und/oder der Stab währenddessen nicht verrutscht.

Aus dem DE 297 10 484 ist ein Verankerungselement bekannt, bei dem an den Innenseiten der Haltestege ein Sägezahngewinde zur Aufnahme der Feststellschraube vorgesehen ist. Hierdurch wird erreicht, dass die bei einem normalen Gewinde radial auf die Haltestege wirkenden Kräfte entfallen und lediglich axial wirkende Kräfte am Haltesteg angreifen. Hierdurch wird ein Auseinanderbiegen der Haltestege verhindert, so dass auch das die Haltestege umfassende Ringelement entfallen kann. Auch hier hat es sich in der Praxis als sehr mühsam herausgestellt, die jeweilige Feststellschraube in das entsprechende Sägezahngewinde einzuschrauben und dabei gleichzeitig die Wirbelsäule und/oder den Stab so lange in der gewünschten Position zu halten, bis die Feststellschraube den Stab selbständig hält.

Davon ausgehend liegt der vorliegenden Erfindung die Aufgabe zugrunde, ein Verankerungselement zu schaffen, bei dem das Sicherungselement die auftretenden Kräfte zuverlässig aufnimmt und bei dem das Sicherungselement einfach und schnell anzubringen ist.

Als technische Lösung dieser Aufgabe wird erfindungsgemäß vorgeschlagen, das eingangs genannte Verankerungselement dadurch weiterzubilden, dass das Sicherungselement ein Feststellelement und ein Ringelement umfasst, wobei das Ringelement mittels einer Renkverbindung am freien Ende der Haltestege anbringbar ist.

Ein nach dieser technischen Lehre ausgebildetes Verankerungselement hat den Vorteil, dass das Ringelement lediglich axial auf die freien Ende der Haltestege aufgesetzt werden braucht und durch ein leichtes Verschwenken in seine endgültige, gesicherte Position gebracht werden kann. Ein derart gesichertes Ringelement hält den im Aufnahmeschlitz

befindlichen Stab bereits provisorisch in der gewünschten Position, so dass der operierende Arzt nun in Ruhe das Feststellelement einschrauben kann, um den Stab zu justieren und zu fixieren.

Dabei hat es sich als vorteilhaft erwiesen, die Renkverbindung als Bajonettverschluss, mit einem radial abstehenden Greifer und einer schlitz- oder nutartigen Aufnahme auszubilden, wobei der Greifer in die Aufnahme eingreift, um das Ringelement der Haltestege zu fixieren. Ein solcher Bajonettverschluss ist kostengünstig realisierbar und erlaubt eine schnelle und einfache Anbringung des Ringelementes an der Halterung des Verankerungselementes.

Die Ausgestaltung der Aufnahme mit einer axialen Einführung und einem radialen Halteelement hat den Vorteil, dass der Greifer in einfacher Weise in die Einführung gebracht werden kann und durch Verdrehen in das Halteelement gelangt, um dort zu verharren und einen formschlüssigen Bajonettverschluss zu bilden.

Es versteht sich, dass der Stab beispielsweise als Distraktions-, Kompressions- oder Verbindungsstab ausgebildet sein kann.

In einer bevorzugten Ausführungsform ist das Ringelement in den Aufnahmeschlitz einführbar und zwischen den Haltestegen anbringbar, wobei der Greifer außen am Ringelement angebracht ist, während die Aufnahme in den Haltestegen angeordnet ist. Dies hat den Vorteil, dass hiermit das Ringelement ebenfalls im Aufnahmeschlitz integriert ist, so dass das gesamte Verankerungselement sehr klein ausgeführt werden kann.

In einer anderen, bevorzugten Ausführungsform umgreift das Ringelement die Haltestege, wobei die Aufnahme im Ringelement angeordnet ist, während der Greifer an den Haltestegen angebracht ist. Dies hat den

Vorteil, dass auch hierdurch die vom Feststellelement ausgehenden radialen Kräfte vom Ringelement aufgenommen werden, ohne dass dabei die Haltestege in unerwünschter Weise auseinandergedrückt werden.

In noch einer anderen, bevorzugten Ausführungsform ist die Einführung V-förmig ausgebildet. Dies hat den Vorteil, dass der in diese Einführung einzuführende Greifer lediglich grob auf die Einführung aufgesetzt werden braucht und anschließend durch die V-förmige Ausgestaltung dennoch korrekt bis zum quer ausgerichteten Halteelement geführt wird, um anschließend durch Verschwenken des Ringelementes in dieses eingeführt zu werden. Hierdurch wird das Aufsetzen des Ringelementes auf die Haltestege weiter vereinfacht.

In einer weiteren bevorzugten Ausführungsform ist das Halteelemet nach oben ansteigend ausgebildet, wodurch das Ringelement nicht nur eine drehende, sondern zusätzlich eine axiale Bewegung vollziehen muß, um gelöst zu werden. Durch solch ein Zusatzerfordenis beim Lösen des Ringelementes wird ein unbeabsichtigtes Lösen des Ringelementes erschwert. Anloges gilt für eine Verbreiterung des Endes des Halteelementes.

In wieder einer anderen, bevorzugten Ausführungsform ist der Greifer als Stift als Flanke ausgebildet. Die Flanke liegt vorteilhafterweise mit einer größeren Fläche an dem Halteelement an, so dass über die dem-entsprechend höhere Reibung ein unbeabsichtigte Lösen des Ringelementes erwschwert wird.

In noch einer anderen bevorzugten Ausführungsform reicht der Greifer durch die Aufnahme hindurch und aus dieser heraus und ist derart gekrümmt oder geneigt, vorzugsweise in Richtung der auf das Sicherungselement weilenden Kräfte, so dass den Haltesteg nach innen

gedrückt wird. Hierdruch werden die Haltestege aufgrund der wirkenden Haltekräfte des Verankerungselementees nach innen gedrückt und es ist gewährleistet, dass das Ringelement zuverlässig in den Haltestegen gehalten wird. Ein Herausspringen des Sicherungselementes aufgrund sich aufbiegenden Haltestegen wird so verhindert.

In einer bevorzugten Weiterbildung ist im Ringelement ein Gewinde zur Aufnahme des Feststellelementes vorgesehen. Neben dem oben genannten Vorteil, dass hierdurch eine geringe Baugröße erreicht wird, hat dies weiterhin den Vorteil, dass die vom Feststellelement ausgehenden radialen Kräfte vollständig vom Ringelement aufgenommen werden, ohne dass hierbei Verformungen wie im Stand der Technik auftreten.

Weitere Vorteile des erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes ergeben sich aus der beigefügten Zeichnung und den nachfolgend beschriebenen Ausführungsformen. Ebenso können die vorstehend genannten und die noch weiter ausgeführten Merkmale erfindungsgemäß jeweils einzeln oder in beliebigen Kombinationen miteinander verwendet werden. Die erwähnten Ausführungsformen sind nicht als abschließende Aufzählung zu verstehen, sondern haben vielmehr beispielhaften Charakter. Es zeigen:

Fig. 1 eine Explosionsdarstellung einer ersten Ausführngsform eines erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes mit einem Stab;

Fig. 2 eine Draufsicht auf das Ringelement gemäß Fig. 1;

Fig. 3 eine teilweise geschnittene Seitenansicht des Verankerungselementes gemäß Fig. 1, geschnitten entlang Linie III - III in Fig. 1;

Fig. 4 eine Explosionsdarstellung einer zweiten Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes mit einem Stab;

Fig. 5 eine Draufsicht auf das Ringelement gemäß Fig. 4;

Fig. 6 eine Seitenansicht des Verankerungselementes gemäß Fig. 4;

Fig. 7 eine Explosionsdarstellung einer dritten Ausführungsform eines

erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes mit einem Stab;

Fig. 8 eine Draufsicht auf das Ringelement gemäß Fig. 7;

Fig. 9 eine teilweise geschnittene Seitenansicht des Verankerungselementes gemäß Fig. 7, geschnitten entlang Linie IX - IX in Fig. 7;

Fig. 10 eine Explosionsdarstellung einer vierten Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes mit einem Stab;

Fig. 11 eine Draufsicht auf das Ringelement gemäß Fig. 10;

Fig. 12 eine Seitenansicht des Verankerungselementes gemäß Fig. 10;

Fig. 13 eine Explosionsdarstellung einer fünften Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes mit einem Stab;

Fig. 14 eine Draufsicht auf das Ringelement gemäß Fig. 13;

Fig. 15 eine Seitenansicht des Verankerungselementes gemäß Fig. 13;

Fig. 16 eine Explosionsdarstellung einer sechsten Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes mit einem Stab;

Fig. 17 eine Draufsicht auf das Ringelement gemäß Fig. 16;

Fig. 18 eine teilweise geschnittene Seitenansicht des Verankerungselementes gemäß Fig. 16, geschnitten entlang Linie XVIII - XVIII in Fig. 16;

Fig. 19 einer Explosionsdarstellung einer siebten Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes;

Fig. 20 eine Draufsicht auf das Ringelement gemäß Fig. 19;

Fig. 21 eine Seitenansicht des Verankerungselementes gemäß Flg. 19.

In den Figuren 1 bis 3 ist eine erste Ausführungsform eines als Pedikelschraube ausgebildeten Verankerungselementes dargestellt, wobei das Verankerungselement zur Einbringung in den Wirbelknochen einen Gewindeschaft 10, sowie eine U-förmig ausgebildete Halterung 12 mit zwei im Wesentlichen parallel angeordneten Haltestegen 14, 16, ein Ringelement 18 und ein als Madenschraube ausgeführtes Feststellelement 20 umfasst. Dabei ist in der Halterung 12 ein Aufnahmeschlitz 22 zur Aufnahme eines Stabes 24 vorgesehen, welcher über das sich aus dem Feststellelement 20

und dem Ringelement 18 zusammensetzenden Sicherungselement fixiert wird.

In dieser Ausführungform sind am Ringelement 18 an sich gegenüberliegenden Seiten zwei Bajonett-Stifte 26, 28 radial abstehend ausgebildet, welche in eine entssprechende, an der Innenseite der Haltestege 14, 16 ausgebildete Einführung 30 und ein Halteelement 32 einsetzbar sind. Dabei wird das Ringelement 18 mit seinen beiden Stiften 26, 28 von oben in die nach oben offene Einführung 30 eingeführt, und bis an den Grund der Einführung 30 gebracht, bevor das Ringelement 18 um einige Winkelgrade verschwenkt wird, so dass die Stifte 26, 28 bis ans Ende des Halteelementes 32 geführt werden. In dieser Position angekommen, wird das Ringelement 18 losgelassen und verbleibt zuverlässig in dieser Position.

Wie aus Figur 3 gut ersichtlich ist, ist die Einführung 30 V-förmig ausgebildet, um einen großen Fangbereich zum Einführen der Stifte 26, 28 zu bilden.

Im Ringelement 18 ist ein Innengewinde 34 zur Aufnahme des als Madenschraube ausgebildeten Feststellelementes 20 vorgesehen. Dabei wird das Feststellelement 20 so weit in das Ringelement 18 hereingeschraubt, dass das Feststellelement 20 auf den Stab 24 drückt und diesen in der gewünschten Position fixiert.

In den Fig. 4 bis 6 ist eine zweite Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen, ebenfalls als Pedikelschraube ausgeführten Verankerungselementes dargestellt. Auch hier setzt sich das Verankerungselement aus einem Gewindeschaft 40 zur Anbringung des Verankerungselementes im Wirbelknochen, einer U-förmig ausgebildeten Halterung 42 mit zwei im Wesentlichen parallel angeordneten Haltestegen 44, 46, einem Ringelement 48 und einem als Madeschraube ausgeführten Feststellelement 50

zusammen. In dieser Ausführungsform ist an den jeweiligen Innenseiten der Haltestege 44, 46 ein Innengewinde 52 zur Aufnahme des als Madenschrauben ausgebildeten Feststellelementes 50 ausgebildet. Damit in dieser Ausführungsform die auf die Haltestege 44, 46 wirkenden, radialen Kräfte nicht zu einem Aufbiegen der Haltestege 44, 46 führen, wird hierbei das Ringelement 48 außen um die Haltestege 44, 46 herumgelegt.

Auch in dieser Ausführungsform ist in der Halterung 42 ein Aufnahmeschlitz 54 eines Stabes 24 ausgebildet, welcher durch das Feststellelement 50 in der gewünschten Position festgestellt wird.

An den nach außen weisenden Seiten der Haltestege 44, 46 ist jeweils ein radial abstehender Stift 56, 58 vorgesehen, die in entsprechende, innenseitig am Ringelement 48 vorgesehene Einführungen 61 einführbar sind, wobei sich auch hier an die Einführung 60, 61 quasi rechtwinklig entsprechende Halteelemente 62, 63 anschließen. Auch hier sind die Einführungen 60, 61 V-förmig ausgeführt, um einen großen Fangbereich zu realisieren.

In den Fig. 7 bis 9 ist eine dritte Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen, ebenfalls als Pedikelschraube ausgeführten Verankerungselementes dargestellt. Diese dritte Ausführungsform unterscheidet sich von der ersten Ausführungsform gemäß Fig. 1 bis 3 dadurch, dass an der Innenseite der Haltestege 14, 16, sich an die Einführung 30 anschließend eine leicht nach oben ansteigendes Halteelement 66 ausgebildet ist, an dessen Ende eine Verbreiterung 68 vorgesehen ist. Dabei ist die Verbreiterung 68 im Wesentlichen kreisförmig gestaltet. In dieser Halteelement 66 ist der Stift 26, 28 einführbar und verklemmt sich bei entsprechendem Verdrehen des Ringelementes 18 in dem nach oben laufenden Halteelement 66, so dass hierdurch eine Klemmsicherung erreicht wird. Dabei steigt das Halteelement 66 in Richtung der auf das Sicherungselement wirkenden Kräfte.

Die Verbreiterung 68 am Ende des Halteelementes 66 bewirkt auch, dass die beim Verdrehen des Ringelementes 18 zwischen Stift 26, 28, bzw. Ringelement 18 einerseits und den Haltestegen 14, 16 andererseits aufgebaute Spannung zumindest teilweise wieder abgebaut wird, da die Verbreiterung 68 teilweise in Richtung der Haltekraft erstreckt und somit den Druck zwischen Sicherungselement und Stab 24 zumimdest teilweise aufhebt. Gleichzeitig wird hierdurch eine zuverlässige und dauerhafte Sicherung des Ringelementes 18 erreicht, da zum Lösen des Ringelementes 18 eben dieser Druck wieder aufgebaut werden muß, was ohne externe, gezielte Krafteinwirkung nicht möglich ist. Dies bedeutet, dass sich das Ringelement 18 nicht von alleine lösen kann.

In den Fig. 10 bis 12 ist eine vierte Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen, ebenfalls als Pedikelschraube ausgeführten Verankerungselementes dargestellt. Diese vierte Ausführungsform unterscheidet sich von der zweiten Ausführungsform gemäß Fig. 4 bis 6 dadurch, dass an der Innenseite des Ringelementes 48, sich an die Einführung 61 anschließend eine leicht nach oben ansteigendes Halteelement 70 ausgebildet ist. In dieses Halteelement 70 ist der Stift 56, 58 einführbar und verklemmt sich bei entsprechendem Verdrehen des Ringelementes 48 in dem nach oben laufenden Halteelement 70, so dass hierdurch eine Klemmsicherung erreicht wird.

In einer hier nicht dargestellten Ausführungsform ist das Ende des Halteelementes 70, analog zum Halteelement 66 gemäß Fig. 9, verbreitert ausgebildet.

In den Fig. 13 bis 15 ist eine fünfte Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen, ebenfalls als Pedikelschraube ausgeführten Verankerungselementes dargestellt. Diese fünfte Ausführungsform unterscheidet sich von der zweiten Ausführungsform gemäß Fig. 4 bis 6 dadurch, dass hier der Greifer

als Bajonett-Flanke 72, 74 ausgebildet ist, die in eine entsprechende Einführung 76, 77 und Halteelement 78 am Ringelement 48 einführbar ist. Durch die breite Flanke 72, 74 entsteht eine große Anlagefläche zwischen Ringelement 48 und Haltesteg 44, 46, was zu einer großen Reibung führt, sobald das Ringelement 48 vorschriftsmäßig aufgesetzt ist. Diese Reibung widerum erschwert das unbeabsichtigte Lösen des Ringelementes 48, so dass hierdurch eine Sicherung gegen unbeabsichtigtes Lösen des Ringelementes 48 erreicht wird.

In den Fig. 16 bis 18 ist eine sechste Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen, ebenfalls als Pedikelschraube ausgeführten Verankerungselementes dargestellt. Diese sechste Ausführungsform unterscheidet sich von der ersten Ausführungsform gemäß Fig. 1 bis 3 dadurch, dass auch hier die Stifte durch Flanken 80, 82 ersetzt wurden, die in eine entsprechende Einführung 84 und Halteelement 86 eingreifen. Im übrigen gilt das zur fünften Ausführungsform gesagte analog.

Die in den Fig. 19 bis 21 dargestellte siebte Ausführungsform eines erfindungsgemäßen Verankerungselementes entspricht im wesentlichen der in den Fig. 1 bis 3 gezeigten ersten Ausführungsform, einzig der Greifer des Bajonettverschlusses ist hier anders ausgebildet. Wie Fig. 19 zu entnehmen ist, ist der Greifer des Bajonettverschlusses als ein radial abstehender, nach oben geneigter Stift 90, 92 ausgebildet. Dieser Stift 90, 92 ist länger als der vergleichbare Stift 26, 28 in Fig. 1.

Nachdem der Stab 24 in den Aufnahmeschlitz 22 eingelegt wurde, wird das Ringelement 18 ebenfalls in axialer Richtung in den Aufnahmeschlitz 22 eingeführt. Dabei sind die Stifte 90, 92 so ausgerichtet, dass sie in die Einführung 30 gelangen. Nun muss der operierende Chirurg das Ringelement 18 mit angemessener Kraft auf den Stab 24 aufdrücken, so das letzterer tiefer in den Aufnahmeschlitz 22 hineingedrückt wird, und so

dass die Stifte 90, 92 bis auf den Grund der Einführung 30 gelangen. In dieser Position angekommen, kann das Ringelement 18 um eine Winkelbreite verschwenkt werden, so dass die Stifte 90, 92 in das Halteelement 32 gelangen. Da der Stab 24 hierbei vorgespannt wird, drückt letzterer dauerhaft auf das Ringelement 18. Das heißt gemäß den Fig. 19 bis 21 wird das Ringelement 18 nach oben gedrückt. Die Stifte 90, 92 sind nun so lang ausgeführt, dass diese aus dem Halteelement 32 herausragen und entsprechend der auf das Ringelement 18 wirkenden Kraft ebenfalls nach oben geneigt sind. Durch diese Neigung der Stifte 90, 92 werden die durch den Stab 24 auf die Stifte 90, 92 wirkenden Kräfte in einer Axial- und einer Radialkomponente zerlegt. Dabei bewirkt die Radialkomponente, dass die Haltestege 14, 16 nach innen gedrückt werden. Hierdurch wird gewährleistet, dass das Ringelement 18 auch bei großen, auftretenden Kräften zuverlässig in den Haltestegen 14, 16 fixiert wird.

In einer anderen, hier nicht dargestellten Ausführungsform sind die Stifte gekrümmt ausgebildet, ebenfalls um die Haltestege nach innen zu drücken.

Es versteht sich, dass die Flanke 80, 82 gemäß Fig. 60 bis 80 ebenfalls geneigt oder gekrümmt ausgebildet sein kann.

Der Stab 24 kann je nach Verwendungszweck beispielsweise als Verbindungs-, Distraktions- oder Kompressionsstab ausgebildet sein.

Bezugszeichenliste:

10	Gewindeschaft	61	Einführung
12	Halterung	62	Halteelement
14	Haltesteg	63	Halteelement
16	Haltesteg	66	Halteelement
18	Ringelement	68	Verbreiterung
20	Feststellelement	70	Halteelement
22	Aufnahmeschlitz	72	Flanke
24	Stab	74	Flanke
26	Stift	76	Einführung
28	Stift	77	Einführung
30	Einführung	78	Haltelement
32	Halteelement	80	Flanke
34	Innengewinde	82	Flanke
40	Gewindeschaft	84	Einführung
42	Halterung	86	Halteelement
44	Haltesteg	90	Stift
46	Haltesteg	92	Stift
48	Ringeelement		
50	Feststellelement		
52	Innengewinde		
54	Aufnahmeschlitz		
56	Stift		
58	Stift		

Ansprüche:

1. Verankerungselemente zur Befestigung eines Stabes einer Vorrichtung zum Einrichten einer menschlichen oder tierischen Wirbelsäule an einem Wirbelknochen, mit einer im wesentlichen U-förmig ausgebildeten und zwei im wesentlichen parallel angeordnete Haltestege (14, 16, 44, 46) umfassenden Halterung (12, 42), in dem ein Aufnahmeschlitz (22, 54) zur Aufnahme des Stabes (24) ausgebildet ist, und mit einem gegen den im Aufnahmeschlitz (22, 54) aufgenommenen Stab (22) wirkenden Sicherungselement, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass das Sicherungselement ein Feststellelement (20, 50) und ein Ringelement (18, 48) umfasst, wobei das Ringelement (18, 48) mittels einer Renkverbindung am freien Ende der Haltestege (14, 16, 44, 46) anbringbar ist.

2. Verankerungselement nach Anspruch 1, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass die Renkverbindung als Bajonettverschluß ausgebildet ist, wobei der Bajonettverschluß eine schlitz- oder nutartige Aufnahme und einen in die Aufnahme eingreifenden Greifer umfasst.

3. Verankerungselement nach Anspruch 2, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass die Aufnahme eine axiale Einführung (30, 61, 76, 77, 84) und ein tangentiales Halteelement (32, 62,63, 66, 70, 78, 86) umfasst.

4. Verankerungselement nach wenigstens einem der Ansprüche 2 oder 3, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass das Ringelement (18) axial in den Aufnahmeschlitz (22) einführbar und zwischen den Haltestegen (14, 16) anbringbar ist, wobei der Bajonettgreifer aussen am Ringelement (18) angebracht ist, während die Aufnahme in den Haltestegen (14, 16) angeordnet ist.

5. Verankerungselement nach wenigstens einem der Ansprüche 2 oder 3, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass das Ringelement (48) die Haltestege (44, 46) umgreift, wobei die Aufnahme im Ringelement (48) angeordnet ist, während der Greifer an den Haltestegen (44, 46) angebracht ist.

6. Verankerungselement nach wenigstens einem der Ansprüche 3 bis 5, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass die Einführung (30, 61, 76, 77, 84) V-förmig ausgebildet ist.

7. Verankerungselement nach wenigstens einem der Ansprüche 3 bis 6, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass das Halteelement (66, 70) leicht nach oben steigend ausgebildet ist.

8. Verankerungselement nach wenigstens einem der Ansprüche 3 bis 7, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass sich das Halteelement (66) am Ende verbreitert.

9. Verankerungselement nach wenigstens einem der Ansprüche 2 bis 8, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass der Greifer als Stift (26, 28, 56, 58, 90, 92) oder Flanke (72, 74, 80, 82) ausgebildet ist.

10. Verankerungselement nach wenigstens einem der Ansprüche 2 bis 9, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass der im wesentlichen radial abstehende Greifer durch die Aufnahme hindurch und aus dieser heraus reicht, wobei der Greifer derart gekrümmt oder geneigt ist, dass der im Bereich des Halteelementes (32) am Haltesteg (14, 16) zur Anlage kommende Greifer diesen nach Innen drückt.

11. Verankerungselement nach Anspruch 10, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass der Greifer in Richtung der auf das Sicherungselement wirkenden Kräfte gekrümmt oder geneigt ist.

12. Verankerungselement nach einem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass im Ringelement (18, 48) ein Gewinde (34, 52) zur Aufnahme des Feststellelementes (20, 50) vorgesehen ist.

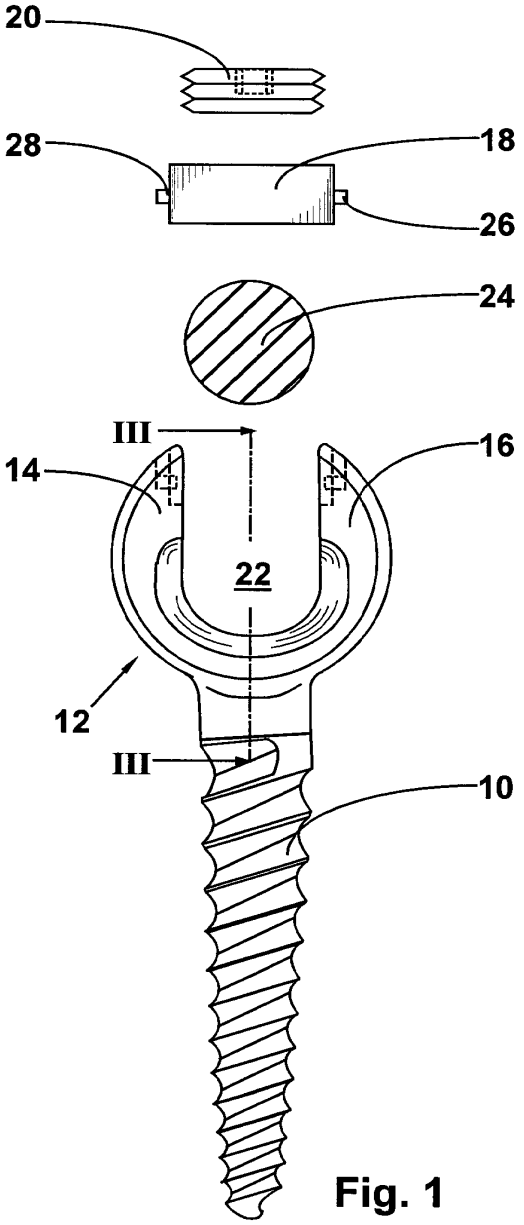


Fig. 1

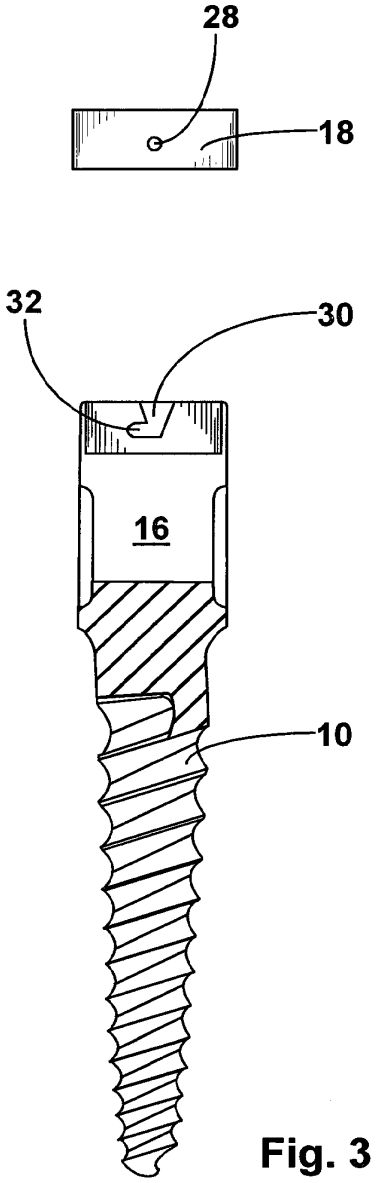


Fig. 3

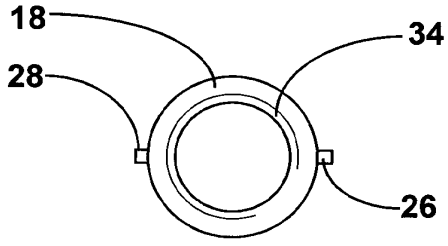


Fig. 2

DE 202 07 850 U1

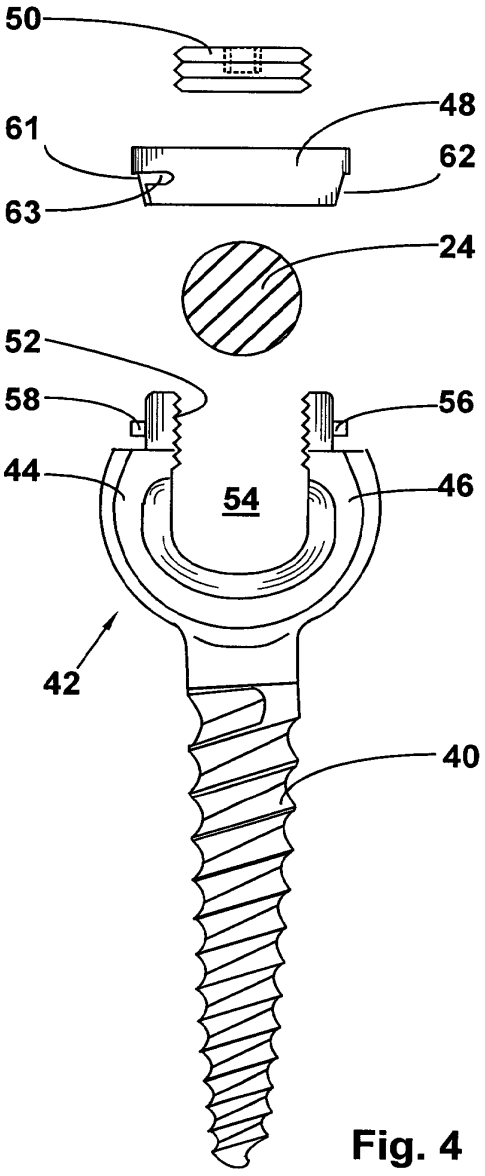


Fig. 4

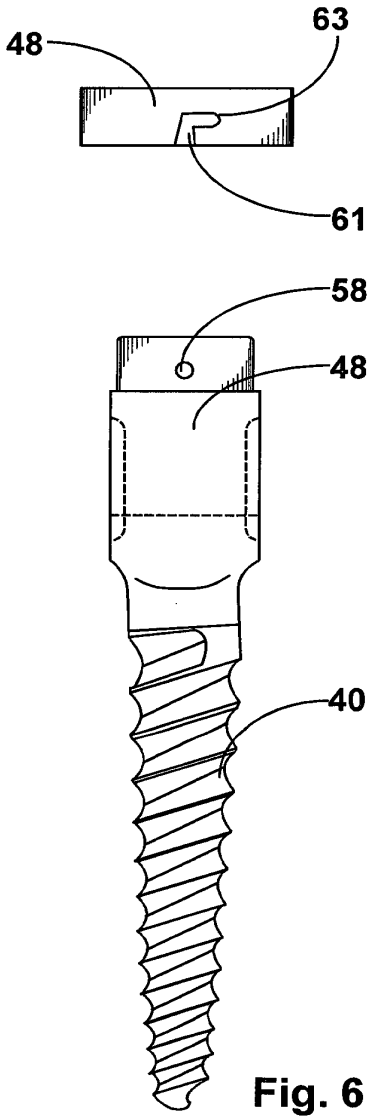


Fig. 6

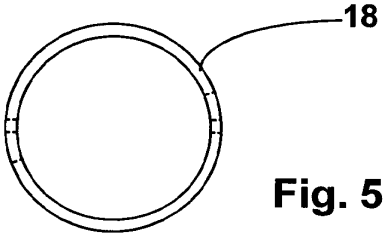


Fig. 5

19405

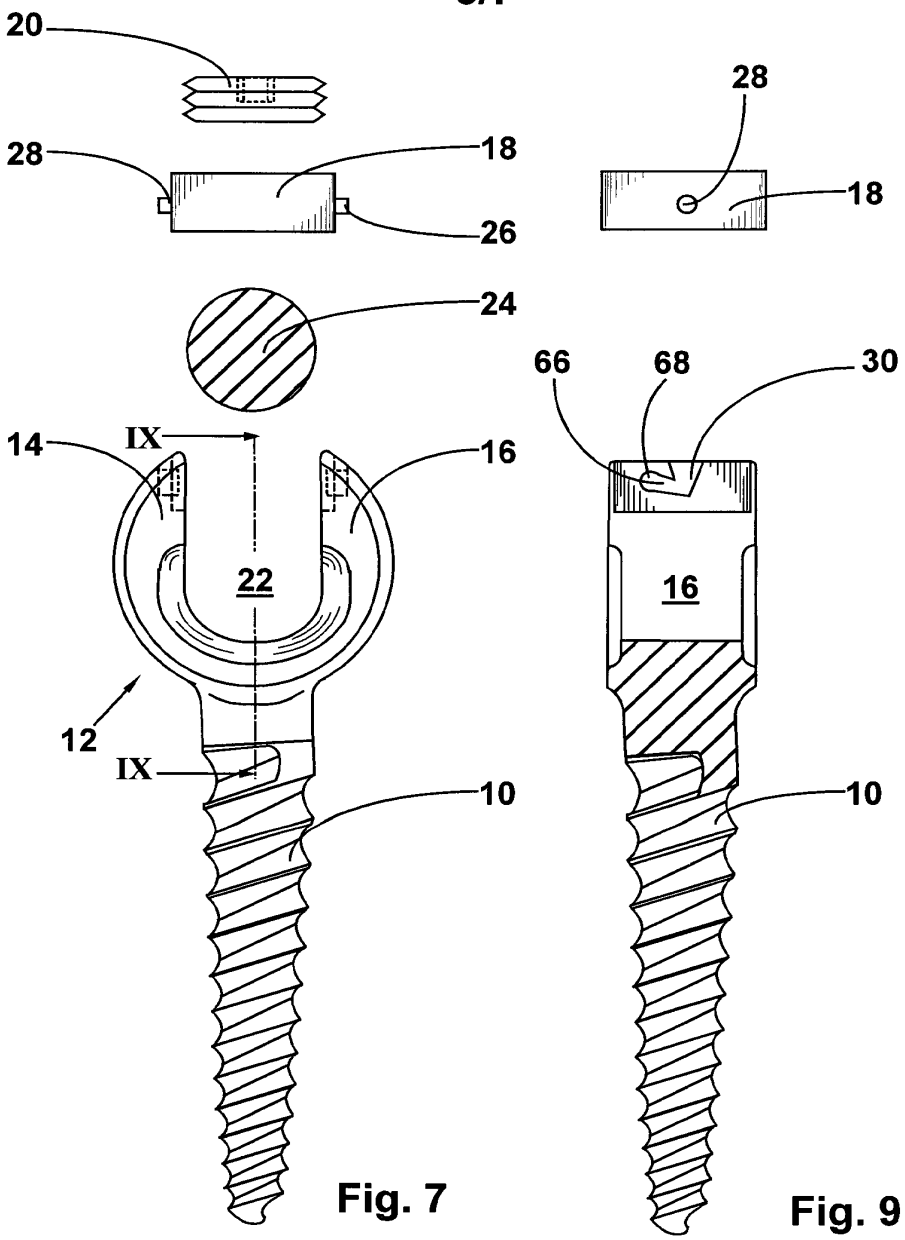


Fig. 7

Fig. 9

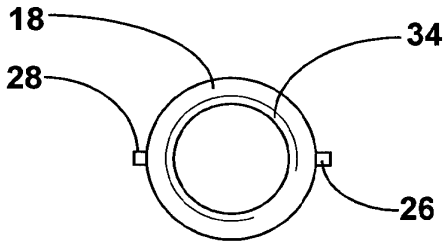


Fig. 8

DE 202 07 850 U1

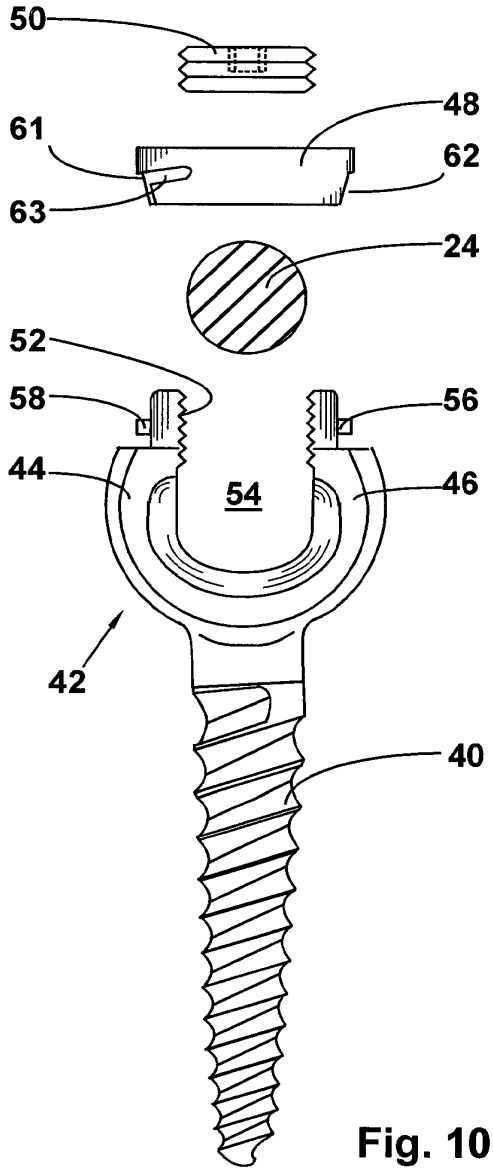


Fig. 10

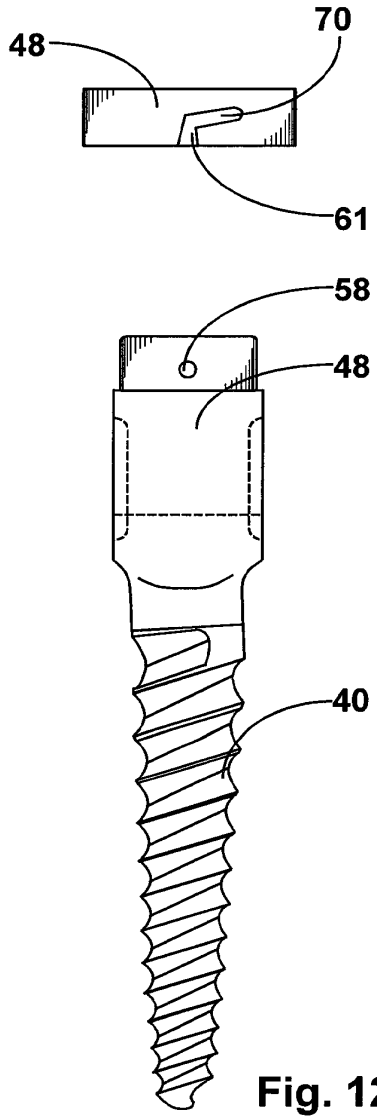


Fig. 12

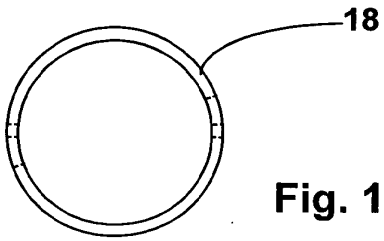


Fig. 11

19405

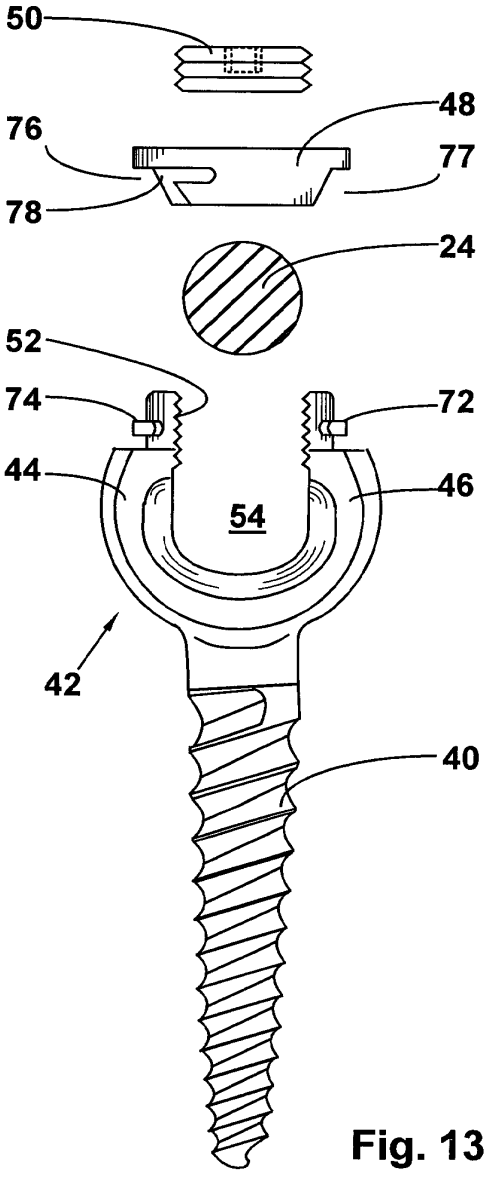


Fig. 13

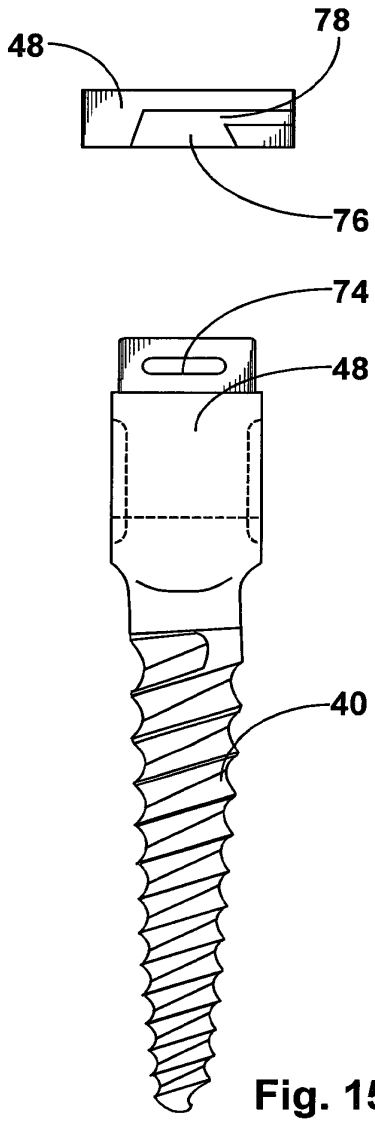


Fig. 15

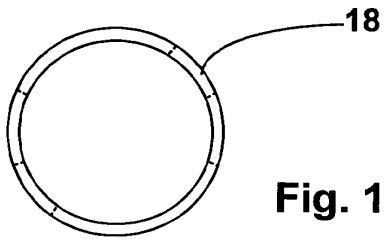


Fig. 14

19405

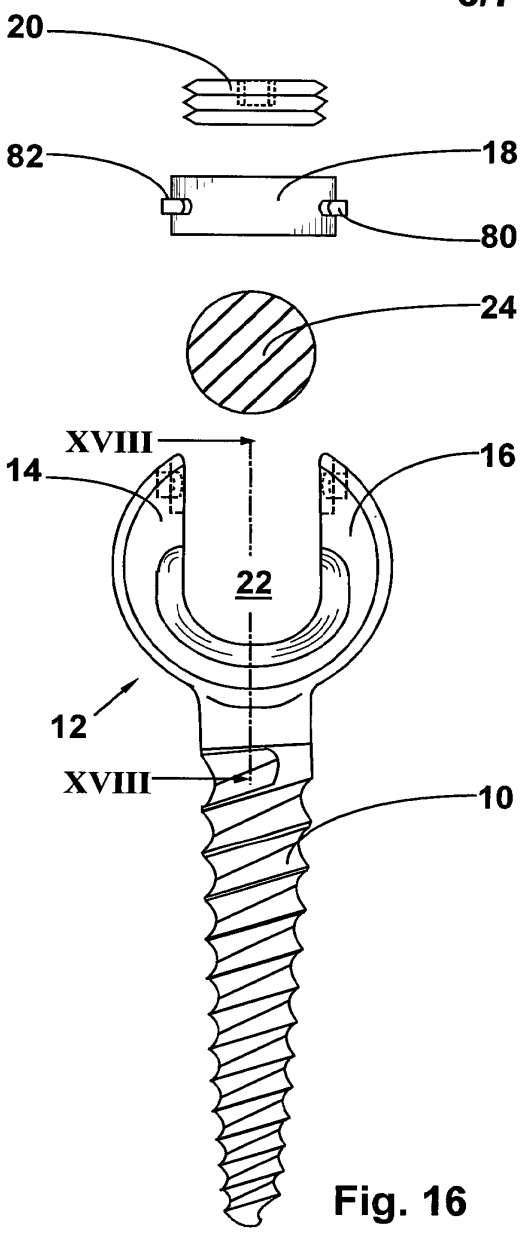


Fig. 16

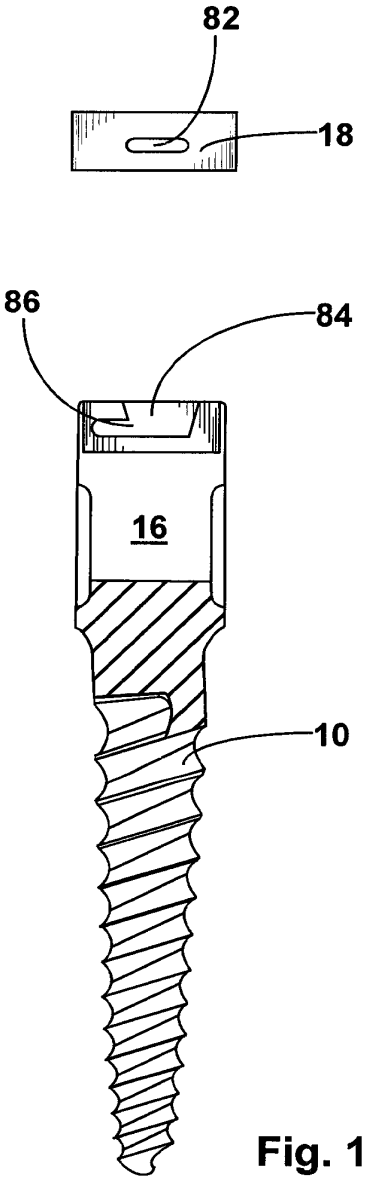


Fig. 18

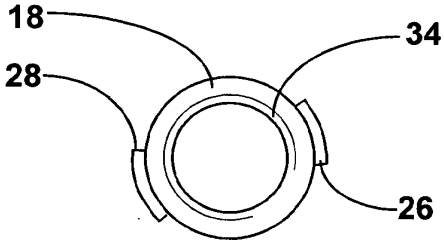


Fig. 17

19405

DE 202 07 850 U1

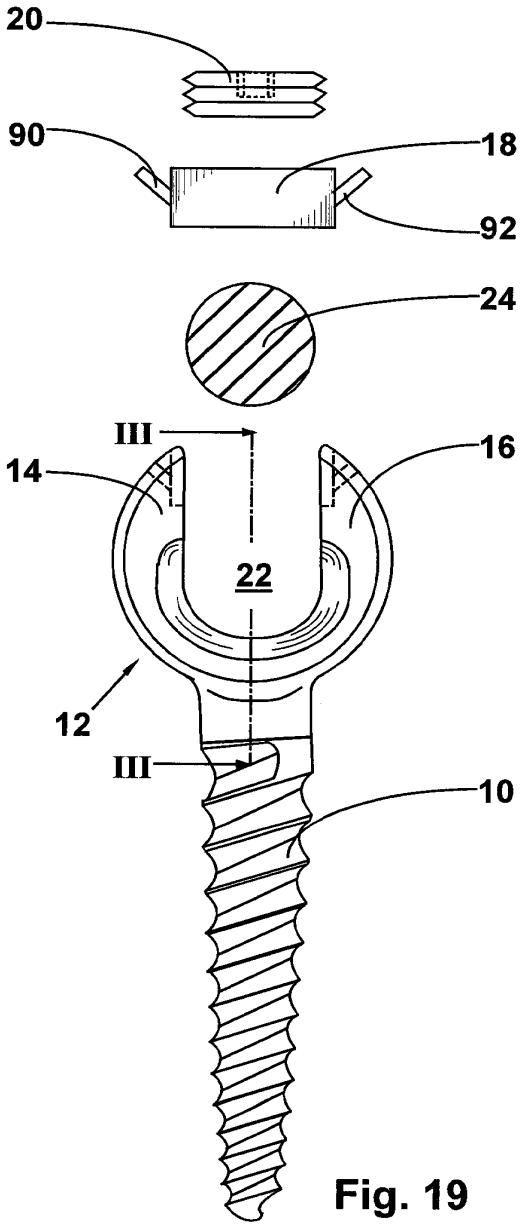


Fig. 19

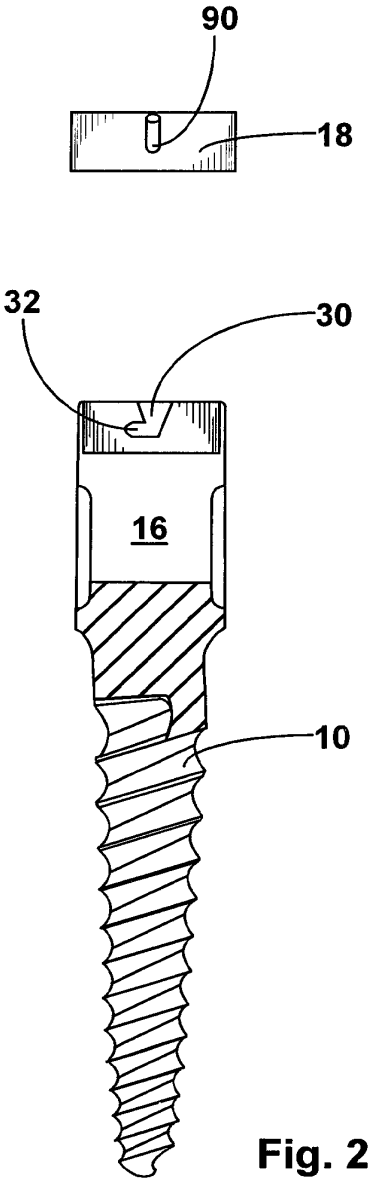


Fig. 21

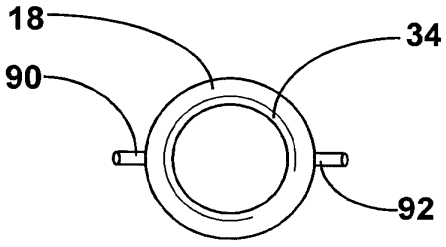


Fig. 20

19405

DE 202 07 850 U1

Espacenet

EP1316294A2 Fastener assembly for securing a rod-shaped element in a retaining element connected to a shaft

Applicants: BIEDERMANN MOTECH GMBH [DE]
Inventors: BIEDERMANN LUTZ [DE]

IPC ***A61B17/58; A61B17/70;*** (IPC1-7): A61B17/70;

CPC **A61B17/7032 (EP);A61B17/7035 (EP);A61B17/7049 (EP);**

Application number: EP02025336A
Priority numbers: DE10157814A 2001-11-27
Publication date: 2003-06-04
Filing date: 2002-11-13
Priority date: 2001-11-27
Published as: **DE10157814A1; DE10157814B4**; EP1316294A2;**EP1316294A3; EP1316294B1; JP2003180707A; JP4311930B2; KR20030043722A; KR100764188B1; US2003100904A1; US7223268B2; US2007260246A1**

Abstract: Fastener assembly for securing a rod-shaped element in a retaining element connected to a shaft
A slit (14) extends in axial direction through a locking component (8) having a hollow cylindrical shape, with an axis of rotation, an outer thread (9) and an inner thread (10).

(19) Europäisches Patentamt
European Patent Office
Office européen des brevets

(11) EP 1 316 294 B1

(12) **EUROPÄISCHE PATENTSCHRIFT**

(45) Veröffentlichungstag und Bekanntmachung des Hinweises auf die Patenterteilung:
09.01.2008 Patentblatt 2008/02

(51) Int Cl.:
A61B 17/70 *(2006.01)*

(21) Anmeldenummer: **02025336.5**

(22) Anmeldetag: **13.11.2002**

(54) **Verschlusseinrichtung zum Sichern eines stabförmigen Elements in einem mit einem Schaft verbundenen Halteelement**

Fastener assembly for securing a rod-shaped element in a retaining element connected to a shaft

Dispositif de fixation pour sécuriser un élément en forme de barre dans un élément de retenue relié à une tige

(84) Benannte Vertragsstaaten:
CH DE FR GB LI

(30) Priorität: **27.11.2001 DE 10157814**

(43) Veröffentlichungstag der Anmeldung:
04.06.2003 Patentblatt 2003/23

(73) Patentinhaber: **BIEDERMANN MOTECH GmbH**
78054 VS-Schwenningen (DE)

(72) Erfinder: **Biedermann, Lutz**
78048 VS-Villingen (DE)

(74) Vertreter: **Hofer, Dorothea et al**
Prüfer & Partner GbR
Patentanwälte
Sohnckestrasse 12
81479 München (DE)

(56) Entgegenhaltungen:
EP-A- 0 280 748
WO-A-95/01132
DE-U- 29 810 798
GB-A- 258 106
US-A- 6 063 090
US-A- 6 074 391

Anmerkung: Innerhalb von neun Monaten nach der Bekanntmachung des Hinweises auf die Erteilung des europäischen Patents kann jedermann beim Europäischen Patentamt gegen das erteilte europäische Patent Einspruch einlegen. Der Einspruch ist schriftlich einzureichen und zu begründen. Er gilt erst als eingelegt, wenn die Einspruchsgebühr entrichtet worden ist. (Art. 99(1) Europäisches Patentübereinkommen).

Printed by Jouve, 75001 PARIS (FR)

EP 1 316 294 B1

Beschreibung

[0001] Die Erfindung betrifft eine in der Wirbelsäulen- bzw. Unfallchirurgie zu verwendende Verschlußeinrichtung zum Sichern eines stabförmigen Elements in einem mit einem Schaft verbundenen Halteelement. Ferner betrifft die Erfindung ein Element mit einem Schaft und einem damit verbundenen Halteelement zum Verbinden mit einem Stab mit einer derartigen Verschlußeinrichtung.

[0002] Aus der WO 95/01132 und der US 6,224,598 B1 ist jeweils ein Wirbelsäulenimplantat mit einem Aufnahmeteil mit einer U-förmigen Ausnehmung zur Aufnahme eines Stabes bekannt, wobei die durch die U-förmige Ausnehmung gebildeten freien Schenkel ein Innengewinde aufweisen. Zur Fixierung des Stabes ist ein zwischen die Schenkel einschraubbares Verschlußelement mit einem Außengewinde, einer zentralen Bohrung mit Innengewinde und eine in das Verschlußelement einschraubbare Innenschraube vorgesehen. Bei der aus der WO 95/01132 bekannten Vorrichtung wird zum Vermeiden des Aufspreizens der Schenkel eine die Schenkel von außen umfassende Sicherheitshülse verwendet.

[0003] Aufgabe der Erfindung ist es, eine Verschlußeinrichtung der eingangs beschriebenen Art zu schaffen, welche eine verbesserte Sicherung gegen Lockerung oder Lösen der Verschlußelemente gewährleistet und gleichzeitig kompakt gebaut und einfach herzustellen ist.

[0004] Diese Aufgabe wird durch die in Patentanspruch 1 gekennzeichnete Verschlußeinrichtung bzw. durch das in Patentanspruch 5 gekennzeichnete Element gelöst. Weiterbildungen der Erfindung sind in den Unteransprüchen gegeben.

[0005] Die Erfindung ist sowohl für monoaxiale als auch für polyaxiale Knochenschrauben geeignet, da sie es erlaubt, daß die Fixierung des Stabes bzw. des Stabes und des Kopfes der Knochenschraube im endgültigen Zustand so zusammenwirken, daß ein sicheres Verblokken gegen Lockern oder Lösen des Verschlußmechanismus besteht.

[0006] Weitere Merkmale und Zweckmäßigkeiten der Erfindung ergeben sich aus der Beschreibung von Ausführungsbeispielen anhand der Figuren. Von den Figuren zeigen:

Fig. 1: eine erste Ausführungsform in perspektivischer Explosionsdarstellung;

Fig. 2a: eine schematische Darstellung der auf das Verschlußelement von Fig. 1 wirkenden Kräfte vor dem Einschrauben der Innenschraube;

Fig. 2b: eine schematische Darstellung der auf das Verschlußelement von Fig. 1 wirkenden Kräfte nach dem Einschrauben der Innenschraube;

Fig. 3: eine Schnittansicht einer zweiten Ausführungsform;

Fig. 4: eine Schnittansicht einer dritten Ausführungsform;

Fig. 5: eine Schnittansicht eines Details einer vierten Ausführungsform;

Fig. 6: eine Schnittansicht eines Details einer fünften Ausführungsform;

Fig. 7: eine Schnittansicht eines Details einer sechsten Ausführungsform; und

Fig. 8: eine Schnittansicht eines Details einer siebten Ausführungsform.

[0007] Das erfindungsgemäße Element ist in der in der in den Figuren Fig. 1 dargestellten Ausführungsform als Monoaxial-Knochenschraube ausgebildet. Diese weist einen Schaft 1 mit einem Knochengewindeabschnitt und ein damit starr verbundenes Aufnahmeteil 2 zur Aufnahme eines die Knochenschraube mit weiteren Knochenschrauben verbindenden Stabes 100 auf. Hierzu ist das Aufnahmeteil mit einer Ausnehmung 3 mit einem U-förmigen Querschnitt versehen, die gerade so groß bemessen ist, daß der Stab 100 einlegbar ist und in den Grund der Ausnehmung passt. Durch die U-förmige Ausnehmung 3 sind zwei freie Schenkel 4, 5 mit jeweils einem freien Ende 6 gebildet, welches den oberen Rand des Aufnahmeteils 2 bildet. Angrenzend an das freie Ende 6 weisen die Schenkel 4, 5 ein Innengewinde 7 auf.

[0008] Zum Verschließen des Stabes 100 in der Ausnehmung 3 ist ein zwischen die Schenkel 4, 5 einschraubbares muffen- bzw. mutterartiges Verschlußelement 8 mit einem mit dem Innengewinde 7 der Schenkel zusammenwirkenden Außengewinde 9 und einem Innengewinde 10 vorgesehen. Das Verschlußelement 8 weist ein erstes stirnseitiges Ende 11 und diesem gegenüberliegend ein zweites Ende 12 auf. Zum Ineingriffbringen mit einem Einschraubwerkzeug sind an dem ersten stirnseitigen Ende 11 radial verlaufende Einschnitte 13 vorgesehen. Einer der Einschnitte erstreckt sich durch das gesamte Verschlußelement 8 in axialer Richtung und bildet somit einen Schlitz 14 derart, daß das Verschlußelement nach Art eines Spannrings eine gewisse Elastizität aufweist. Die Länge des Verschlußelements 8 in axialer Richtung ist derart bemessen, daß das Verschlußelement vollständig zwischen die Schenkel 4, 5 einschraubbar ist.

[0009] Ferner ist eine in das Verschlußelement einschraubbare Innenschraube bzw. Klemm- oder Setzschraube 15 vorgesehen, deren Außengewinde 16 mit dem Innengewinde 10 des Verschlußelements 8 zusammenwirkt. Die Innenschraube 15 weist an ihrem einen Ende eine Ausnehmung 17 zum Ineingriffbringen mit einem Schraubwerkzeug auf.

Ex.1004 / Page 240 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

[0010] Bei der in Fig. 1 gezeigten Ausführungsform sind das Innengewinde 7 der Schenkel, daß Außengewinde 9 des Verschlußelements, sowie das Innengewinde 10 des Verschlußelements und das Außengewinde 16 der Innenschraube 15 als metrische Gewinde ausgebildet.

[0011] Im Betrieb wird die Knochenschraube zuerst in den Knochen eingeschraubt und anschließend der Stab 100 eingelegt. Dann wird das Verschlußelement 8 mit bereits eingeschraubter, aber noch nicht mit ihrer Unterseite den Stab berührender Innenschraube 15 eingeschraubt, wodurch der Stab zunächst nur am Herauskippen gehindert wird, aber noch verschiebbar ist. Beim Einschrauben des Verschlußelements 8 kommt es aufgrund der geschlitzten und damit elastischen Ausbildung desselben nicht zu einem Aufspreizen der Schenkel 4, 5, sondern, wie in Fig. 2a gezeigt ist, setzen die Schenkel dem geschlitzten Verschlußelement einen Widerstand entgegen, der es versucht zusammenzudrücken, was durch die nach innen gerichteten Pfeile veranschaulicht ist. Anschließend wird die Innenschraube 15 so eingeschraubt bis sie mit ihrer Unterseite auf den Stab drückt und diesen fixiert. Durch das Festziehen der Innenschraube 15 wirkt auf das Verschlußelement 8 wie in Fig. 2b durch die Pfeile dargestellt ist, eine nach radial nach außen gerichtete Kraftkomponente, wodurch das Außengewinde 9 des Verschlußelements in das Innengewinde 7 der Schenkel gedrückt wird und sich dort verblockt. Damit ist ein gegen Lockerung gesicherter Verschluß gewährleistet.

[0012] In der in Fig. 3 gezeigten Ausführungsform ist das erfindungsgemäße Element als Polyaxialschraube ausgebildet, die ein Schraubenelement mit einem Gewindeschaft 1 mit einem Knochengewinde und einem kugelsegmentförmigen Kopf 20 aufweist, der mit einem Aufnahmeteil 21 verbunden ist Das Aufnahmeteil 21 hat an seinem einen Ende eine axialsymmetrisch ausgerichtete erste Bohrung 22, deren Durchmesser größer als der des Gewindeabschnitts des Schafts 1 und kleiner als der des Kopfs 20 ist. Ferner weist das Aufnahmeteil 21 eine koaxiale zweite Bohrung 23 auf, die auf dem der ersten Bohrung 22 gegenüberliegenden Ende offen ist und deren Durchmesser so groß ist, daß das Schraubenelement durch das offene Ende mit seinem Gewindeabschnitt durch die erste Bohrung 22 hindurch und mit dem Kopf 20 bis zum Grund der zweiten Bohrung 23 führbar ist. Zwischen der ersten und der zweiten Bohrung ist ein kleiner koaxialer Abschnitt 24 vorgesehen, der unmittelbar an die erste Bohrung 22 angrenzt und zum offenen Ende hin sphärisch ausgebildet ist, wobei der Radius im wesentlichen gleich dem kugelsegmentförmigen Abschnitts des Kopfs 20 ist. Das Aufnahmeteil 21 weist ebenso wie das Aufnahmeteil 2 der ersten Ausführungsform eine zur Mitte des Teiles symmetrisch angeordnete U-förmige Ausnehmung 25 auf, deren Grund zur ersten Bohrung 22 hin gerichtet ist und durch die zwei freie Schenkel 26, 27 gebildet sind, deren freies Ende 28 den oberen Rand des Aufnahmeteils 21 bilden. In einem Bereich angrenzend an das freie Ende 28 weisen die Schenkel 26, 27 ein Innengewinde 29 auf.

[0013] Es ist ferner ein Druckelement 30 vorgesehen, das so ausgebildet ist, daß es an seiner dem Kopf 20 zugewandten Seite eine sphärische Ansenkung 31 aufweist, deren Radius im wesentlichen gleich dem Radius des kugelsegmentförmigen Abschnitts des Kopfes 20 ist. Der Außendurchmesser des Druckelements ist so gewählt, daß das Druckelement in dem Aufnahmeteil 21 eine Gleitbewegung durchführen kann, also zu dem Kopf 20 hin verschiebbar ist. Das Druckelement weist ferner eine koaxiale Bohrung 32 für den Zugriff auf eine Ausnehmung 33 in dem Schraubenkopf 20 zum Ineingriffbringen mit einem Eindrehwerkzeug auf.

[0014] Die Ausbildung des Verschlußelements 8 und der Innenschraube 15 ist wie bei der ersten Ausführungsform.

Im Betrieb wird das Schraubenelement nach Einsetzen in das Aufnahmeteil 21 in den Knochen eingeschraubt. Dann werden nacheinander das Druckelement 30 und der Stab 100 eingesetzt. In diesem Stadium ist der Schraubenkopf 20 noch verschwenkbar. Durch Einschrauben des Verschlußelements 8 und der Innenschraube 15 in derselben Weise wie bei der ersten Ausführungsform werden das Schraubenelement und das Aufnahmeteil 21 zueinander und damit auch der Stab 100 fixiert.

[0015] Die in Fig. 4 dargestellte dritte Ausführungsform zeigt ebenfalls eine Polyaxial-Knochenschraube. Der zweiten Ausführungsform entsprechende Teile sind mit denselben Bezugszeichen versehen. Die dritte Ausführungsform unterscheidet sich von der zweiten Ausführungsform im wesentlichen durch die Ausbildung des Druckelements 40.

[0016] Das Druckelement 40 dieser Ausführungsform ist im wesentlichen zylindrisch ausgebildet mit einem Außendurchmesser, der so gewählt ist, dass das Druckelement 40 in der zweiten Bohrung 23 des Aufnahmeteils 21' gleiten kann. An seinem einen Ende ist eine sich zu dem Ende hin erweiternde kugelsegmentförmige Ausnehmung 41 vorgesehen, deren Kugelradius so gewählt ist, dass er in einem in das Aufnahmeteil eingesetzten Zustand den Kopf 20 des Schraubenelements teilweise umfasst. Ein wesentlicher Unterschied zu dem Druckelement 30 der zweiten Ausführungsform besteht darin , daß das Druckelement40 der dritten Ausführungsform in Richtung des freien Endes 28 der Schenkel verlängert ist. Dazu weist es an seinem der kugelsegmentförmigen Ausnehmung 41 gegenüberliegenden Ende eine U-förmige Ausnehmung 42 auf, wobei die Abmessungen der U-förmigen Ausnehmungen des Druckelements so bemessen sind, dass in den dadurch gebildeten Kanal der Stab 100 eingelegt werden kann. Die in Richtung der Zylinderachse des Aufnahmeteils 21' gesehene Tiefe der U-förmigen Ausnehmung 42 ist größer als der Durchmesser des aufzunehmenden Stabs 100, so dass das Druckelement 40 mit seitlichen Schenkeln 43 über den eingelegten Stab 100 nach oben hervorsteht. Das Druk-

Ex.1004 / Page 241 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

kelement 40 weist ferner eine zentrale Bohrung 44 auf, die sich durch dieses hindurch erstreckt. Der Durchmesser der zentralen Bohrung 44 ist gerade so groß bemessen, dass ein Schraubwerkzeug zum Ineingriffbringen mit der in dem Kopf 20 vorgesehenen Ausnehmung 33 hindurchführbar ist.

[0017] Die Ausbildung des Verschlußelements 8 und der Innenschraube 15 ist wie bei der ersten und zweiten Ausführungsform.

[0018] Im Betrieb unterscheidet sich die in Fig. 4 gezeigte dritte Ausführungsform von der in Fig. 3 gezeigten zweiten Ausführungsform darin, daß über das Verschlußelement 8 zuerst der Kopf 20 in seiner Stellung blockiert wird, in dem das Verschlußelement 8 auf die verlängerten Schenkel 43 des Druckelements 40 drückt und damit auf den Kopf 20. Durch Festziehen der Innenschraube 15 wird dann der Stab 100 unabhängig von dem Kopf 20 fixiert. Die Verschließwirkung durch das Zusammenwirken von Verschlußelement 8 und Innenschraube 15 ist im übrigen wie bei der ersten und zweiten Ausführungsform.

[0019] Die in den Figuren 5 bis 7 gezeigten Ausführungsformen unterscheiden sich von der in Fig. 4 gezeigten dritten Ausführungsform durch die Art des Innengewindes 7 der Schenkel 26, 27 des Aufnahmeteils 21' und das entsprechende Außengewinde 9 des Verschlußelements 8. Das Innengewinde 10 des Verschlußelements 8 und das Außengewinde 16 der Innenschraube sind bei diesen Ausführungsformen jeweils als metrische Gewinde ausgebildet.

[0020] In der in Fig. 5 gezeigten Ausführungsform ist das Innengewinde 29 der Schenkel 26, 27 so ausgebildet, daß die dem freien Ende abgewandte Flanke 29a mit einer zur Mittenachse M des Aufnahmeteils senkrecht verlaufenden Ebene einen negativen Winkel α einschließt. Entsprechend schließt die in eingeschraubtem Zustand dem freien Ende abgewandte Flanke 9b des Außengewindes 9 des Verschlußelements 8 mit einer zur Schraubenachse S horizontal verlaufenden Ebene einen negativen Winkel ein. Die Maße von Innengewinde der Schenkel und Außengewinde des Verschlußelements sind derart, daß in unbelastetem Zustand zwischen den genannten Flanken 29a und 19b ein Zwischenraum ist.

[0021] Im Betrieb erfahren die Schenkel 26, 27 durch den negativen Flankenwinkel beim Festziehen des Verschlußelements 8 wobei, daß die Flanken 29a und 10b aufeinandergelangen eine radial nach innen gerichtete Kraftkomponente, so daß die Schenkel etwas zusammengezogen werden. Damit erfolgt eine zuverlässige Blockierung des Kopfes 20 über das Druckelement 40. Beim Einschrauben der Innenschraube spreizt sich das Verschlußelement 8 aufgrund der dann radial nach außen wirkenden Kraftkomponente und wirkt somit der Kraft, die die Schenkel zusammenzieht entgegen. Der Stab wird fixiert und gleichzeitig erfolgt ein gegeneinander Blockieren von Verschlußelelement 8 und Schenkel.

[0022] Die in Fig. 6 gezeigte Ausführungsform unterscheidet sich von der in Fig. 5 gezeigten Ausführungsform durch die Ausbildung der Gewinde 29, 9 als Sägengewinde mit einer horizontal zur Mittenachse M bzw. Schraubenachse S verlaufenden Lastflanke 29a bzw. 19b. Auch damit ist die erfindungsgemäße Funktion des Verschlußelements gegeben.

[0023] Die in Fig. 7 gezeigte Ausführungsform unterscheidet sich von der in Fig. 5 bzw. 6 gezeigten Ausführungsform dadurch, daß das Innengewinde 29 der Schenkel und das Außengewinde 9 des Verschlußelements als Flachgewinde ausgebildet sind. Dieses weist zwei horizontal zur Mittenachse M bzw. Schraubenachse S verlaufende Flanken 29a, 29b bzw. 9a, 9b auf. Der Gewindequerschnitt ist im wesentlichen rechteckig ausgebildet. Auch damit ist die erfindungsgemäße Funktion des Verschlußelements gegeben.

[0024] Auch bei den in Fig. 6 und 7 gezeigten Gewindeformen ist ein Flankenspiel derart vorgesehen, daß das Verblocken des Verschlußelements nach Einschrauben der Innenschraube möglich ist.

[0025] In der in Fig. 8 gezeigten Ausführungsform ist das Verschlußelement 80 mit einem ringförmigen Ansatz 81 an seinem stirnseitigen, die Einschnitte 13 aufweisenden Ende versehen. Der Schlitz 14 erstreckt sich in diesem Fall wie bei dem Verschlußelement 8 wenigstens durch den axialen Abschnitt, in dem das Außengewinde 9 vorgesehen ist, jedoch nicht durch den Ansatz 81. Der Schlitz 14 ist ferner in Umfangsrichtung so angeordnet, daß er sich in einen der Einschnitte 13 erstreckt.

[0026] Im Betrieb bildet der Ansatz 81 beim Einschrauben des Verschlußelements einen Anschlag, der die Kraft auf das Druckelement auf einen vorbestimmten Wert begrenzt.

[0027] Weitere Ausführungsformen der Erfindung ergeben sich durch das Vorsehen der Gewindearten gemäß den Ausführungsformen nach Fig. 5 bis 6 und/oder des Verschlußelements nach Fig. 8 bei einer Monoaxialschraube gemäß der ersten Ausführungsform nach Fig. 1 oder der Polyaxialschraube gemäß der zweiten Ausführungsform nach Fig. 3.

[0028] Anstelle der oben beschriebenen Ausführungen, bei denen der das Aufnahmeteil mit einer Knochenschraube verbunden ist, kann das Aufnahmeteil auch mit einem Haken verbunden sein, wie er in der Wirbelsäulenchirurgie zum Einhaken hinter Knochenvorsprüngen der Wirbelsäule verwendet wird.

[0029] In einer weiteren Abwandlung der polyaxialen Ausführungsformen ist anstelle des Gewindeschaftes 1 oder des Hakens eine Stange oder ein stabförmiges Element vorgesehen, das an beiden Enden einen kugelsegmentförmigen Kopf hat, der mit einem Aufnahmeteil der beschriebenen Art verbunden ist. Damit kann ein solches Element als Verbindungselement zwischen zwei Stäben 100 verwendet werden.

Ex.1004 / Page 242 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

Patentansprüche

1. Verschlußeinrichtung zum Sichern eines stabförmigen Elements in einem mit einem Schaft (1) verbundenen Halteelement (2; 21; 21') zum Einsatz in der Wirbelsäulen- oder Unfallchirurgie, mit einem Verschlußelement (8; 80) mit einer im wesentlichen hohlzylindrischen Form mit einer Rotationsachse, einem Außengewinde (9) und einem Innengewinde (10)
gekennzeichnet durch einen sich in axialer Richtung **durch** das Verschlußelement (8) erstreckenden Schlitz (14).

2. Verschlußeinrichtung nach Anspruch 1, **gekennzeichnet durch** eine in das Verschlußelement (8; 80) einschraubbare Innenschraube (15).

3. Verschlußeinrichtung nach Anspruch 1 oder 2, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Innengewinde (10) als metrisches Gewinde ausgebildet ist.

4. Verschlußeeinrichtung nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3,
dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß das Außengewinde (9) als metrisches Gewinde oder als Gewinde mit horizontalem oder negativem Winkel der Lastflanke oder als Flachgewinde mit zwei horizontalen Flanken ausgebildet ist.

5. Element mit einem Schaft (1) und einem damit verbundenen Halteelement (2; 21; 21') zum Verbinden mit einem Stab (100), wobei das Halteelement (2; 21; 21') eine einen U-förmigen Querschnitt aufweisende Ausnehmung zur Aufnahme des Stabes mit zwei an einem Ende (6; 28) freien Schenkeln (4, 5; 26, 27) und einem Innengewinde (7; 29) an den freien Schenkeln aufweist und mit einem Verschlußelement (8; 80) mit einem Außengewinde (9) in wenigstens einem Abschnitt seiner Außenwand, wobei das Außengewinde (9) mit dem Innengewinde (7; 29) der Schenkel zusammenwirkt und wobei das Verschlußelement eine zentrale Bohrung aufweist,
dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß das Verschlußelement (8, 80) einen sich im wesentlichen in axialer Richtung durch seine Außenwand erstreckenden Schlitz (14) aufweist.

6. Element nach Anspruch 5, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Verschlußelement (8, 80) ein Innengewinde (10) aufweist und eine Innenschraube (15) zum Einschrauben in das Verschlußelement vorgesehen ist.

7. Element nach Anspruch 5 oder 6, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Innengewinde (10) des Verschlußelements (8; 80) und das damit zusammenwirkende Außengewinde (16) der Innenschraube (15) als metrische Gewinde ausgebildet sind.

8. Element nach einem der Ansprüche 5 bis 7, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Innengewinde (7) der Schenkel (4, 5; 26, 27) als metrisches Gewinde ausgebildet sind.

9. Element nach einem der Ansprüche 5 bis 7, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Innengewinde (7) der Schenkel (4, 5; 26,a b) als Gewinde mit einem negativen Flankenwinkel der Lastflanke ausgebildet ist.

10. Element nach einem der Ansprüche 5 bis 7, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Innengewinde (7) der Schenkel (4, 5; 26, 27) als Sägengewinde mit einem im wesentlichen horizontalen Winkel der Lastflanke (29a) ausgebildet ist.

11. Element nach einem der Ansprüche 5 bis 7, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Innengewinde (7) der Schenkel (4, 5; 26, 27) als Flachgewinde zwei horizontale Flanken (29a, 29b) ausgebildet ist.

12. Element nach einem der Ansprüche 5 bis 11, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Außengewinde (9) des Verschlußelements (8, 80) mit einem zu dem Innengewinde (7; 29) der Schenkel (4, 5; 26, 27) passenden Gewindetyp ausgebildet ist.

13. Element nach einem der Ansprüche 5 bis 12, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** das Verschlußelement (80) einen Anschlag (81) aufweist.

14. Element nach einem der Ansprüche 5 bis 13, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** der Schaft (1) und das Halteelement (2) monoaxial verbunden sind.

15. Element nach einem der Ansprüche 5 bis 13, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** der Schaft (1) und das Halteelement (21; 21') polyaxial verbunden sind.

16. Element nach Anspruch 15, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß** ein in dem Halteelement (21') vorgesehenes Druckelement (40) vorgesehen ist, auf welches das Verschlußelement (8, 80) zum Fixieren der Winkelstellung des Schafts (1) einwirkt.

17. Element nach Anspruch 16, **dadurch gekennzeichnet daß** die Winkelstellung des Schafts über das Verschlußelement (8, 80) und der Stab über die Innenschraube (15) fixierbar sind.

Claims

1. Fastener assembly for securing a rod-shaped element in a retaining element (2; 21; 21') connected

Ex.1004 / Page 243 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

to a shaft (1), for use in spinal surgery or accident and emergency surgery, with a fastener element (8; 80) of substantially hollow cylindrical shape with a rotation axis, an outer thread (9) and an inner thread (10), **characterized by** a slit (14) extending in the axial direction through the fastener element (8).

2. Fastener assembly according to Claim 1, **characterized by** an inner screw (15) that can be screwed into the fastener element (8; 80).

3. Fastener assembly according to Claim 1 or 2, **characterized in that** the inner thread (10) is designed as a metric thread.

4. Fastener assembly according to one of Claims 1 to 3, **characterized in that** the outer thread (9) is designed as a metric thread or as a thread with a horizontal or negative angle of the load-bearing flank or as a flat thread with two horizontal flanks.

5. Element with a shaft (1), and with a retaining element (2; 21; 21') which is connected to the latter and which serves for connection to a rod (100), the retaining element (2; 21; 21') having a recess with a U-shaped cross section for receiving the rod and with two free legs (4, 5; 26, 27) at one end (6; 28) and an inner thread (7; 29) on the free legs, and with a fastener element (8; 80) which has an inner thread (9) in at least one portion of its outer wall, the outer thread (9) cooperating with the inner thread (7; 29) of the legs, and the fastener element having a central bore, **characterized in that** the fastener element (8, 80) has a slit (14) extending substantially in an axial direction through its outer wall.

6. Element according to Claim 5, **characterized in that** the fastener element (8, 80) has an inner thread (10), and an inner screw (15) for screwing into the fastener element is provided.

7. Element according to Claim 5 or 6, **characterized in that** the inner thread (10) of the fastener element (8; 80) and the outer thread (16) of the inner screw (15) cooperating therewith are designed as metric threads.

8. Element according to one of Claims 5 to 7, **characterized in that** the inner thread (7) of the legs (4, 5; 26, 27) is designed as a metric thread.

9. Element according to one of Claims 5 to 7, **characterized in that** the inner thread (7) of the legs (4, 5; 26,a b) is designed as a thread with a negative flank angle of the load-bearing flank.

10. Element according to one of Claims 5 to 7, **characterized in that** the inner thread (7) of the legs (4, 5; 26, 27) is designed as a buttress thread with a substantially horizontal angle of the load-bearing flank (29a).

11. Element according to one of Claims 5 to 7, **characterized in that** the inner thread (7) of the legs (4, 5; 26, 27) is designed as a flat thread with two horizontal flanks (29a, 29b).

12. Element according to one of Claims 5 to 11, **characterized in that** the outer thread (9) of the fastener element (8, 80) is designed with a thread type corresponding to the inner thread (7; 29) of the legs (4, 5; 26, 27).

13. Element according to one of Claims 5 to 12, **characterized in that** the fastener element (80) has a limit stop (81).

14. Element according to one of Claims 5 to 13, **characterized in that** the shaft (1) and the retaining element (2) are connected monoaxially.

15. Element according to one of Claims 5 to 13, **characterized in that** the shaft (1) and the retaining element (21; 21') are connected multiaxially.

16. Element according to Claim 15, **characterized in that** a pressure element (40) provided in the retaining element (21') is provided, on which the fastener element (8, 80) acts in order to fix the angle position of the shaft (1).

17. Element according to Claim 16, **characterized in that** the angle position of the shaft can be fixed via the fastener element (8, 80), and the rod via the inner screw (15).

Revendications

1. Dispositif de fixation pour sécuriser un élément en forme de barre dans un élément de retenue (2 ; 21 ; 21') relié à une tige (1), pour utilisation dans la chirurgie de la colonne vertébrale ou des accidents, avec un élément de fixation (8 ; 80) ayant une forme sensiblement cylindrique creuse, avec un axe de rotation, un filetage extérieur (9) et un filetage intérieur (10),
caractérisé par une fente (14) s'étendant en direction axiale à travers l'élément de fixation.

2. Dispositif de fixation selon la revendication 1,
caractérisé par une vis intérieure (15) susceptible d'être vissée dans l'élément de fixation (8 ; 80).

3. Dispositif de fixation selon la revendication 1 ou 2, **caractérisé en ce que** le filetage intérieur (10) est

Ex.1004 / Page 244 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

réalisé sous la forme de filetage métrique.

4. Dispositif de fixation selon l'une des revendications 1 à 3, **caractérisé en ce que** le filetage extérieur (9) est réalisé sous la forme de filetage métrique ou de filetage à angle horizontal ou négatif du flanc de charge, ou sous forme de filetage plat avec deux flancs horizontaux.

5. Elément avec une tige (1) et un élément de retenue (2 ; 21 ; 21') lui étant relié, pour assurer la liaison à une barre (100), l'élément de retenue (2 ; 21 ; 21') présentant un évidement à section transversale en forme de U pour recevoir la barre, avec deux branches (4, 5 ; 26, 27) libres, à une extrémité (6 ; 28), et un filetage intérieur (7 ; 29) sur les branches libres; et avec un élément de fixation (8 ; 80) ayant un filetage extérieur (9) en au moins un tronçon de sa paroi extérieure, le filetage extérieur (9) coopérant avec le filetage intérieur (7 ; 29) des branches, et l'élément de fixation présentant un perçage central, **caractérisé en ce que** l'élément de fixation (8, 80) présente une fente (14) s'étendant sensiblement en direction axiale à travers sa paroi extérieure.

6. Élément selon la revendication 5, **caractérisé en ce que** l'élément de fixation (8 ; 80) présente un filetage intérieur (10) et une vis intérieure (15), pour vissage dans l'élément de fixation.

7. Élément selon la revendication 5 ou 6, **caractérisé en ce que** le filetage intérieur (10) de l'élément de fixation (8 ; 80) et le filetage extérieur (16), coopérant avec lui, de la vis intérieure (15) sont réalisés sous forme de filetage métrique.

8. Élément selon l'une des revendications 5 à 7, **caractérisé en ce que** le filetage intérieur (7) des branches (4, 5 ; 26, 27) est réalisé sous la forme de filetage métrique.

9. Élément selon l'une des revendications 5 à 7, **caractérisé en ce que** le filetage intérieur (7) des branches (4, 5 ; 26, a b) est réalisé sous la forme de filetage, avec un angle de flanc négatif du flanc de charge.

10. Élément selon l'une des revendications 5 à 7, **caractérisé en ce que** le filetage intérieur (7) des branches (4, 5 ; 26, 27) est réalisé sous la forme de filetage en dents de scie, avec un angle sensiblement horizontal du flanc de charge (29a).

11. Élément selon l'une des revendications 5 à 7, **caractérisé en ce que** le filetage intérieur (7) des branches (4, 5 ; 26, 27) est réalisé sous forme de filetage plat à deux flancs horizontaux (29a, 29b).

12. Élément selon l'une des revendications 5 à 11, **caractérisé en ce que** le filetage extérieur (9) de l'élément de fixation (8. 80) est réalisé avec un type de filetage s'ajustant au filetage intérieur (7 ; 29) des branches (4, 5 ; 26, 27).

13. Élément selon l'une des revendications 5 à 12, **caractérisé en ce que** l'élément de fixation (80) présente une butée (81).

14. Élément selon l'une des revendications 5 à 13, **caractérisé en ce que** la tige (1) et l'élément de retenue (2) sont reliés de façon monoaxiale.

15. Élément selon l'une des revendications 5 à 13, **caractérisé en ce que** la tige (1) et l'élément de retenue (21 ; 21') sont reliés de façon polyaxiale.

16. Élément selon la revendication 15, **caractérisé en ce qu'**un élément de pressage (40) prévu dans l'élément de retenue (21') est prévu sur lequel l'élément de fixation (8, 80) agit pour la fixation de la position angulaire de la tige (1).

17. Élément selon la revendication 16, **caractérisé en ce que** la position angulaire de la tige est susceptible d'être fixée par l'intermédiaire de l'élément de fixation (8, 80). et la barre est susceptible d'être fixée par l'intermédiaire de la vis intérieure (15).

Ex.1004 / Page 245 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

FIG. 1

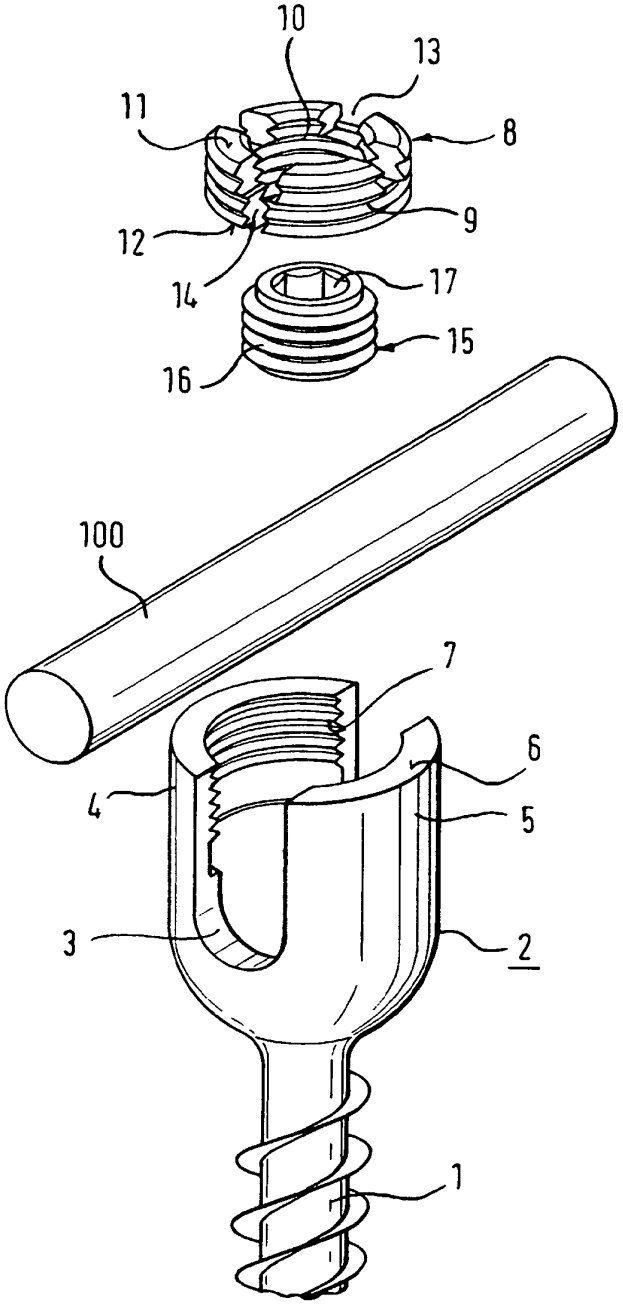


FIG. 2a

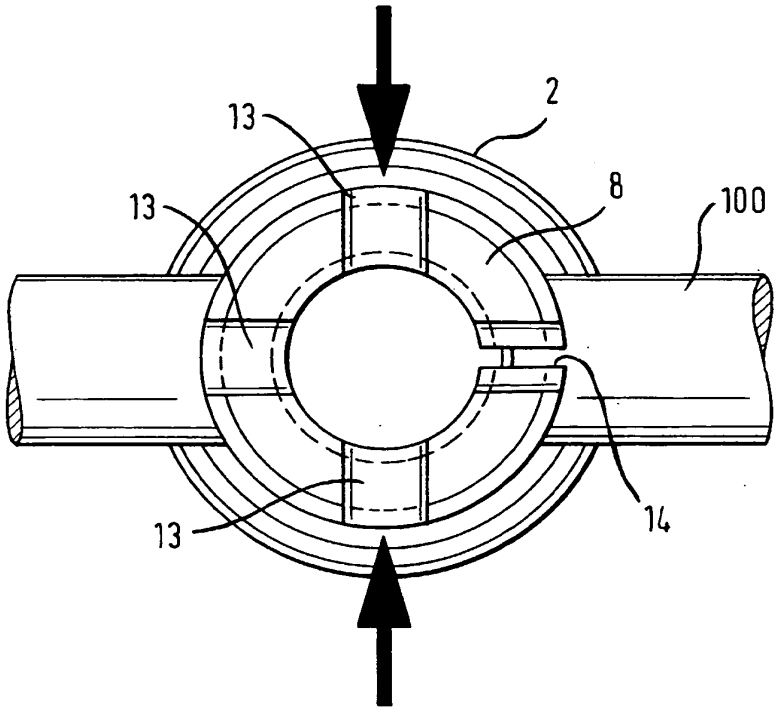


FIG. 2b

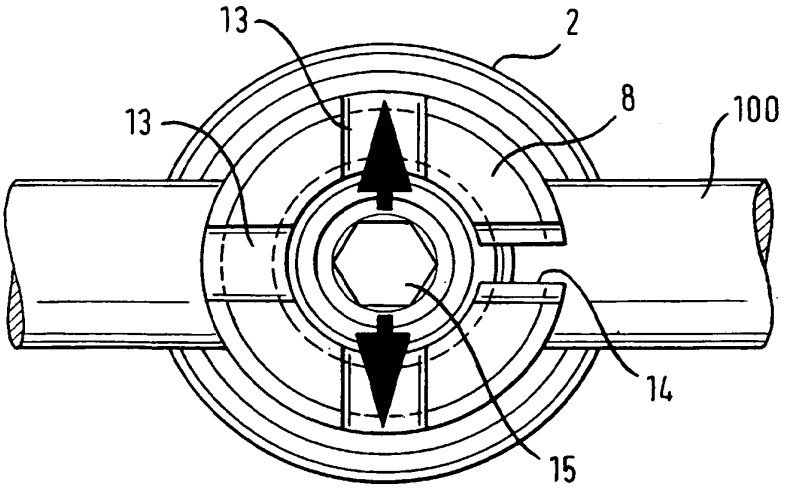


FIG. 3

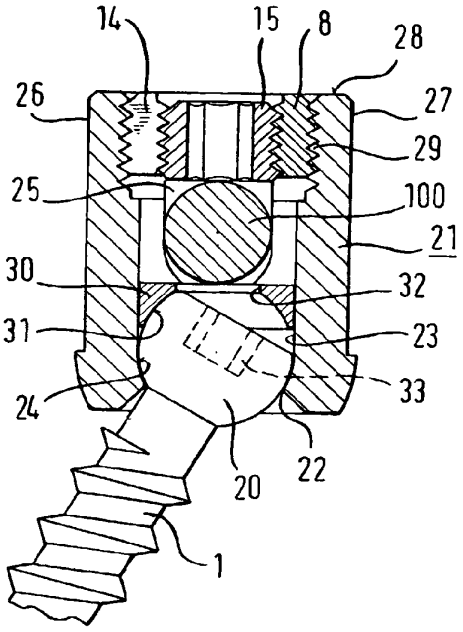

14
15
8
28
26
27
29
25
100
21
30
32
31
23
33
24
20
22
1

FIG. 4

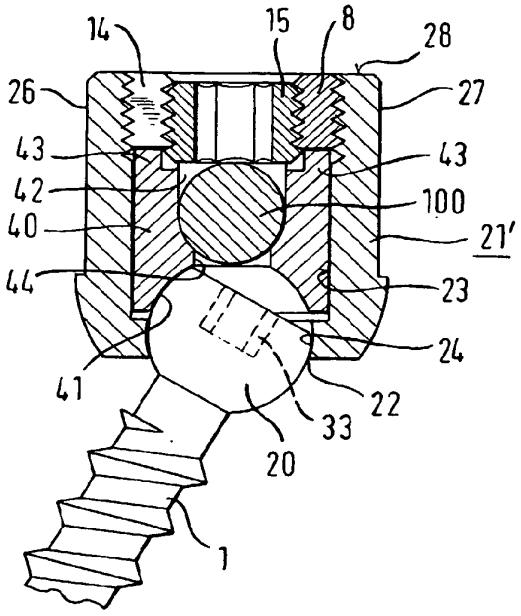

14
15
8
28
26
27
43
43
42
100
40
21'
44
23
24
41
22
33
20
1

FIG. 5

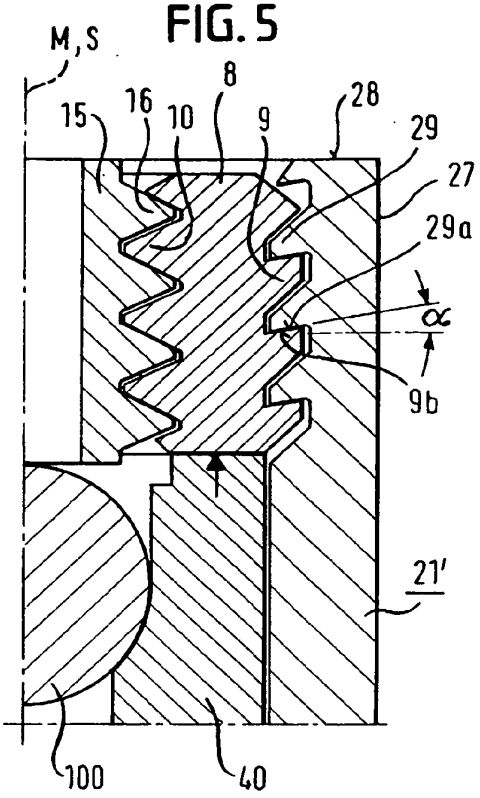


FIG. 6

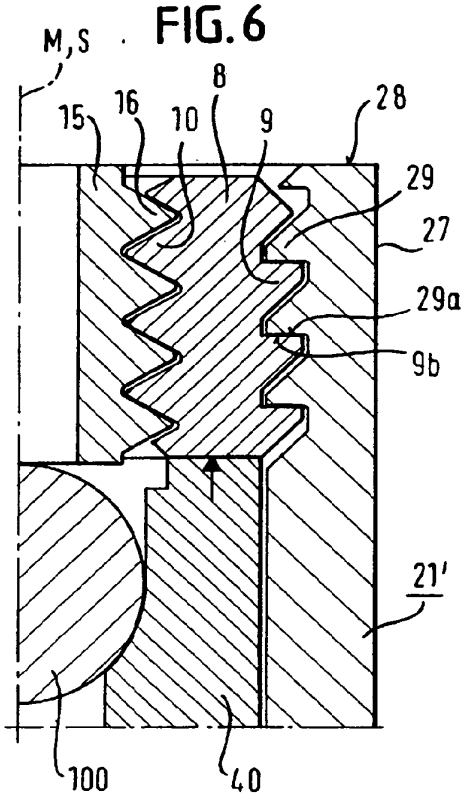


FIG. 7

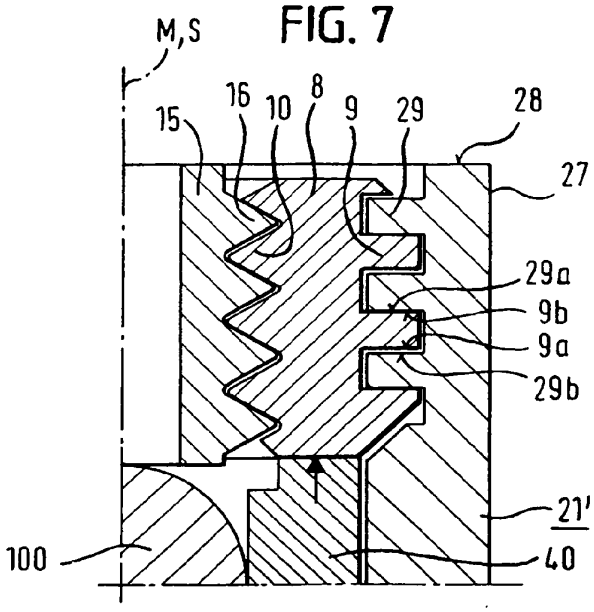
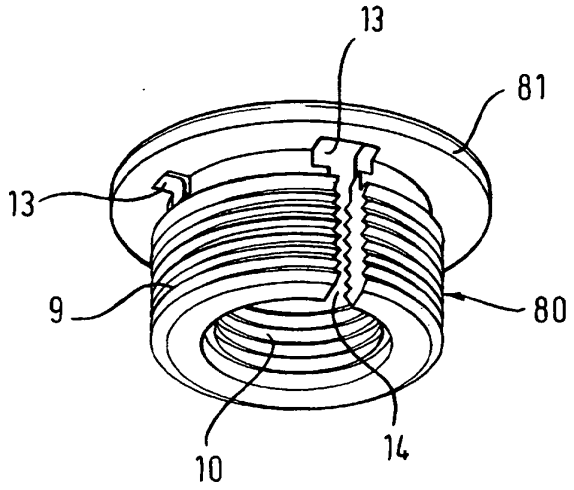


FIG. 8



IN DER BESCHREIBUNG AUFGEFÜHRTE DOKUMENTE

Diese Liste der vom Anmelder aufgeführten Dokumente wurde ausschließlich zur Information des Lesers aufgenommen und ist nicht Bestandteil des europäischen Patentdokumentes. Sie wurde mit größter Sorgfalt zusammengestellt; das EPA übernimmt jedoch keinerlei Haftung für etwaige Fehler oder Auslassungen.

In der Beschreibung aufgeführte Patentdokumente

- WO 9501132 A **[0002] [0002]**
- US 6224598 B1 **[0002]**

Ex.1004 / Page 251 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

Espacenet

EP1570796A1 Bone fixing element and stabilising device comprising one such bone fixing element
Applicants: BIEDERMANN MOTECH GMBH [DE]
Inventors: BIEDERMANN LUTZ [DE]; HARMS JUERGEN [DE]; MATTHIS WILFRIED [DE]
IPC ***A61B17/70;*** *A61B17/86;* (IPC1-7): A61B17/70;

CPC **A61B17/7032 (EP);A61B17/7035 (EP);A61B17/7037 (EP);A61B17/7059 (EP);**A61B17/8605 (EP);

Application number: EP05004677A
Priority numbers: DE102004010382A 2004-03-03; US55000904P 2004-03-03
Publication date: 2005-09-07
Filing date: 2005-03-03
Priority date: 2004-03-03
Published as: **DE102004010382A1; DE102004010382B4;** EP1570796A1;**EP1570796B1; ES2286728T3; US2005216003A1; US7591839B2**
Abstract: Bone fixing element and stabilising device comprising one such bone fixing element
The device comprises a first element with a threaded shaft (1, 2, 3) and a first semispherical head segment (4) accommodated inside a second head segment (10) and held in place by an elastic element (20). The second head segment (10) is inserted into a spherical space underneath a pressure element (50) inside a cylindrical case (40). The unit is secured to a transversal rod (100) with a first wider screw (60) with an outer and an inner thread and a smaller screw (70) inserted into the threaded bore at the wider screw (60).

(19) Europäisches Patentamt
European Patent Office
Office européen des brevets

(11) EP 1 570 796 B1

(12) **EUROPÄISCHE PATENTSCHRIFT**

(45) Veröffentlichungstag und Bekanntmachung des Hinweises auf die Patenterteilung:
16.05.2007 Patentblatt 2007/20

(51) Int Cl.:
A61B 17/70 *(2006.01)*

(21) Anmeldenummer: **05004677.0**

(22) Anmeldetag: **03.03.2005**

(54) **Knochenverankerungselement und Stabilisierungseinrichtung mit einem solchen Knochenverankerungselement**

Bone fixing element and stabilising device comprising one such bone fixing element

Elément d'ancrage osseux et dispositif de stabilisation comprenant un tel élément d'ancrage osseux

(84) Benannte Vertragsstaaten:
CH DE ES FR GB IT LI

(30) Priorität: **03.03.2004 DE 102004010382**
03.03.2004 US 550009 P

(43) Veröffentlichungstag der Anmeldung:
07.09.2005 Patentblatt 2005/36

(73) Patentinhaber: **BIEDERMANN MOTECH GmbH**
78054 VS-Schwenningen (DE)

(72) Erfinder:
- **Biedermann, Lutz**
  78048 VS-Villingen (DE)
- **Harms, Jürgen**
  76227 Karlsruhe (DE)
- **Matthis, Wilfried**
  79367 Weisweil (DE)

(74) Vertreter: **Hofer, Dorothea et al**
Prüfer & Partner GbR
Patentanwälte
Sohnckestrasse 12
81479 München (DE)

(56) Entgegenhaltungen:
EP-A- 1 273 269
WO-A-98/34554
US-A- 6 022 350

Anmerkung: Innerhalb von neun Monaten nach der Bekanntmachung des Hinweises auf die Erteilung des europäischen Patents kann jedermann beim Europäischen Patentamt gegen das erteilte europäische Patent Einspruch einlegen. Der Einspruch ist schriftlich einzureichen und zu begründen. Er gilt erst als eingelegt, wenn die Einspruchsgebühr entrichtet worden ist. (Art. 99(1) Europäisches Patentübereinkommen).

Printed by Jouve, 75001 PARIS (FR)

EP 1 570 796 B1

Beschreibung

[0001] Die Erfindung betrifft ein Knochenverankerungselement zur Verankerung in einem Knochen oder einem Wirbel und eine Stabilisierungseinrichtung mit einem solchen Knochenverankerungselement.

[0002] Zur Fixierung von Knochenfrakturen oder zur Stabilisierung der Wirbelsäule sind Fixations- und Stabilisierungseinrichtungen bekannt, die aus wenigstens zwei im Knochen bzw. Wirbel verankerten und über eine Platte oder einen Stab verbundenen Knochenschrauben bestehen. Derartige starre Systeme erlauben keine Bewegung der relativ zueinander fixierten Knochenteile oder Wirbel.

[0003] Für bestimmte Indikationen ist jedoch eine dynamische Stabilisierung wünschenswert, bei der die zu stabilisierenden Knochenteile oder Wirbel eine kontrollierte begrenzte Bewegung zueinander ausführen können. Eine Realisierungsmöglichkeit für eine dynamische Stabilisierungseinrichtung besteht in der Verwendung eines beweglichen Elements anstelle eines die Knochenverankerungselemente verbindenden starren Stabes, wie es beispielsweise in der EP 0 669 109 B1 oder in der US 2003/0109880 A1 beschrieben ist.

[0004] Bei diesen bekannten Systemen kann häufiger das Problem auftreten, dass eine Übertragung der aus der Bewegung resultierenden Momente auf den im Knochen oder Wirbel verankerten Schaft der Verankerungselemente stattfindet, was aufgrund der dauernden zyklischen Teilbelastung des Knochenverankerungselements zur Lockerung des Schafts in dem umgebenden Knochenmaterial und damit zum Lösen der Verankerung führen kann.

[0005] Es besteht daher das Bedürfnis, die Bewegung der Knochen bzw. Wirbel von der Schaftverankerung weitgehend abzukoppeln, um der Forderung gerecht zu werden, dass das Implantat oft ein Leben lang sicher im Körper des Patienten verankert bleiben muss. Ferner soll aber bei einer Entkopplung der Bewegung der Knochen bzw. Wirbel von der Schaftverankerung trotzdem die Möglichkeit bestehen, das Verankerungselement relativ zu einem mehrere solcher Elemente verbindenden Stab oder zu einer solchen Platte optimal positionieren zu können, wie es z.B. von den herkömmlichen Polyaxialschrauben bekannt ist.

[0006] Die US 6,022,350 offenbart eine Knochenbefestigungsvorrichtung mit einem länglichen Verbindungsmittel, das eine durch eine Öffnung in dem Verbindungsmittel hindurch geführte Knochenbefestigungsschraube aufnimmt. In dem Boden des Verbindungsmittels ist eine Lagerungsfläche mit im Wesentlichen kreisförmigem Querschnitt vorgesehen und der Kopf der Schraube beinhaltet eine im Wesentlichen kugelförmige Oberfläche, die sich an der Lagerungsfläche abstützt. Bei einer Ausführungsform sind in der Öffnung in dem Verbindungsmittel ferner zwei O-Ringe aus z.B. Silikon vorgesehen.

[0007] Aus der US 5,474,555 ist ferner ein Knochenverankerungselement in Form einer Polyaxial-Knochenschraube mit einem Schraubenelement und einem Aufnahmeteil zur Verbindung mit einem Stab bekannt, bei der das im Knochen zu verankernde Schraubenelement mit dem Aufnahmeteil derart verbunden ist, daß Schwenkbewegungen zwischen dem Schraubenelement und dem Aufnahmeteil möglich sind. Die beschriebene Lösung erlaubt jedoch keine Stabilisierung der Knochenteile untereinander mit einer kontrollierten Teilbewegung.

[0008] Es ist Aufgabe der Erfindung ein Knochenverankerungselement und eine Stabilisierungseinrichtung für Knochen bzw. Wirbel mit einem solchen Knochenverankerungselement bereitzustellen, das bzw. die eine kontrollierte Teilbewegung der zu stabilisierenden Knochenteile oder Wirbel bei gleichzeitig hoher Sicherheit der Verankerung erlaubt und dabei optimal positionierbar ist.

[0009] Die Aufgabe wird gelöst durch ein Knochenverankerungselement zur Verankerung in einem Knochen oder in einem Wirbel nach Patentanspruch 1 und durch eine Stabilisierungseinrichtung mit einem solchen Knochenverankerungselement nach Patentanspruch 15.

[0010] Weiterbildungen der Erfindung sind in den Unteransprüchen angegeben.

[0011] Die Erfindung weist den Vorteil auf, daß das Knochenverankerungselement aufgrund seiner elastischen Verbindung von erstem und zweitem Kopfteil axiale Kräfte in Richtung seiner Schaftachse, Biegekräfte und Torsionskräfte aufnimmt. Damit wird eine durch die rücktreibende Kraft begrenzte Bewegung des Knochenteils oder Wirbels, in dem es verankert ist, erlaubt und die bei der Bewegung auf den Schaft wirkenden Momente werden reduziert, so dass ein Lösen der Verbindung durch dauernde zyklische Teilbelastung der Verankerung unterbleibt.

[0012] Die Erfindung weist weiterhin den Vorteil auf, dass eine gewünschte Ruhewinkelstellung zwischen dem Schaft und dem Aufnahmeteil wie bei einer herkömmlichen Polyaxialschraube justierbar ist.

[0013] Die elastischen Eigenschaften des Knochenverankerungselements können bei der Herstellung auf einfache Art durch Ändern der Dimensionen von erstem Kopfteil, zweitem Kopfteil und elastischem Druckelement und/oder des verwendeten Materials für das elastische Druckelement verwirklicht werden. Das Knochenverankerungselement ist mit den bekannten Verbindungselementen wie Platten und Stäben verwendbar. Somit kann eine dynamische Stabilisierungseinrichtung mit einer gewünschten Bewegungsbegrenzung durch Auswahl von Knochenverankerungselementen mit geeigneten elastischen Eigenschaften unter Verwendung von herkömmlichen Platten oder Stäben bereitgestellt werden.

[0014] Weitere Merkmale und Zweckmäßigkeiten der Erfindung ergeben sich aus der Beschreibung von Ausführungsbeispielen anhand der Figuren.

[0015] Von den Figuren zeigen:

Fig. 1 eine teilgeschnittene Darstellung eines

Ex.1004 / Page 254 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

Knochenverankerungselements nach einer ersten Ausführungsform;

Fig. 2 eine teilgeschnittene Explosionsdarstellung des Knochenverankerungselements der ersten Ausführungsform;

Fig. 3a bis 3c teilgeschnittene Darstellungen, die eine elastische Auslenkung des Knochenverankerungselements der ersten Ausführungsform aus der Ruhewinkelstellung schematisch darstellen.

Fig. 4 eine teilgeschnittene Darstellung eines Knochenverankerungselements nach einer zweiten Ausführungsform;

Fig. 5 eine teilgeschnittene Darstellung eines Knochenverankerungselements nach einer dritten Ausführungsform; und

Fig. 6 eine teilgeschnittene Darstellung eines Knochenverankerungselements nach einer vierten Ausführungsform.

Erste Ausführungsform

[0016] Ein Knochenverankerungselement nach der in den Fig. 1 und 2 gezeigten ersten Ausführungsform ist als Polyaxial-Knochenschraube zum Verbinden mit einem Stab 100 ausgebildet. Die Polyaxial-Knochenschraube weist ein im Knochen zu verankerndes Schraubenelement 1 mit einem Schaft 2 mit einem Knochengewinde 3 und mit einem mit dem Schaft 2 in diesem Ausführungsbeispiel einstückig verbundenen ersten Kopfteil 4 auf. Desweiteren weist die Polyaxial-Knochenschraube ein hülsenförmiges zweites Kopfteil 10 zur Aufnahme des ersten Kopfteils 4 und ein Aufnahmeteil 40 zur Aufnahme des zweiten Kopfteiles 10, eines auf dieses einwirkenden zweiten Druckelements 50 und des Stabes 100, sowie eine erste und eine zweite Sicherungsschraube 60, 70 auf.

[0017] Das erste Kopfteil 4 des Schraubenelements 1 weist angrenzend an den Schaft 2 einen kugelsegmentförmigen Abschnitt 5 mit einem Durchmesser auf, der größer ist als der Schaftdurchmesser. Auf der dem Schaft 3 abgewandten Seite ist ein verbreiterter Rand 6 bzw. Kragen vorgesehen, wodurch eine kreisförmige Fläche 7 gebildet ist, die im Wesentlichen glatt ist und in der sich koaxial zur Schaftachse eine Ausnehmung 8 zum Eingreifen mit einem Schraubwerkzeug befindet. In Fig.1 ist eine sechskantförmige Ausnehmung 8 für einen Inbusschlüssel dargestellt.

[0018] Es ist jedoch auch eine andere Ausnehmung, wie z.B. ein Kreuzschlitz, zum Eingreifen mit einem Einschraubwerkzeug möglich.

[0019] Das hülsenförmige zweite Kopfteil 10 ist kugelsegmentförmig mit einer sphärischen Außenfläche 11 und zwei gegenüberliegenden ebenen Enden 12, 13 ausgebildet. Von dem einen Ende 12 erstreckt sich eine koaxiale erste Bohrung 15 mit einem Durchmesser, der größer ist als der Außendurchmesser des verbreiterten Rands 6 des Schraubenelementes 1. Angrenzend an die erste Bohrung 15 erstreckt sich eine koaxiale zweite Bohrung 16 deren Durchmesser angrenzend an das zweite Ende 13 kleiner ist als der Kugeldurchmesser des ersten Kopfteils 4 aber größer als der Durchmesser des Schafts 2, so daß dieser hindurchgeführt werden kann. Die zweite Bohrung 16 erweitert sich ferner ausgehend vom zweiten Ende 13 bis zur ersten Bohrung 15 hin sphärisch mit einem Kugelradius, der so bemessen ist, daß das zweite Kopfteil 4 daran anliegt. Angrenzend an die erste Bohrung 15 ist der Durchmesser der zweiten Bohrung kleiner als der Kugelradius des Kopfteils 4.

[0020] Das Schraubenelement 1 ist derart in das zweite Kopfteil 10 eingesetzt, dass der Schaft 2 durch das Ende 13 angrenzend an die Bohrung 16 hindurchgeführt ist und der kugelsegmentförmige Abschnitt 5 des ersten Kopfteils 4 in der zweiten Bohrung 16 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 gehalten ist.

[0021] Auf der von dem verbreiterten Rand 6 des ersten Kopfteils 4 gebildeten Fläche 7 ist ein elastisches erstes Druckelement 20 angeordnet, das bevorzugt aus einem Elastomer ausgebildet ist. Das erste Druckelement 20 weist die Form einer Scheibe mit kreisförmigem Querschnitt und einer vorbestimmten Dicke auf und besitzt eine koaxiale Bohrung 21, die ein Hindurchgreifen mit dem Schraubwerkzeug in die Ausnehmung 8 der von dem verbreiterten Rand 6 gebildeten Fläche 7 ermöglicht. Der Außendurchmesser des ersten Druckelements 20 ist so gewählt, dass es in die erste Bohrung 15 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 einführbar ist. Vorzugsweise ist zwischen Druckelement 20 und der Seitenwand der Bohrung ein Freiraum 22 vorgesehen, so dass das Druckelement bei elastischer Deformation ausweichen kann.

[0022] Auf der dem Rand 6 des ersten Kopfteils 4 abgewandten Seite des ersten Druckelements 20 ist eine starre Befestigungskappe 30 angeordnet. Die Befestigungskappe 30 weist die Form einer kreisförmigen Scheibe mit einer koaxialen Bohrung 31 auf, die ein Hindurchgreifen mit dem oben genannten Schraubwerkzeug ermöglicht.

[0023] Der Außendurchmesser der Befestigungskappe 30 entspricht in einem dem ersten Druckelement 20 zugewandten Abschnitt 32 dem Innendurchmesser der ersten Bohrung 15 in dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 bzw. ist um soviel kleiner, dass ein Einsetzen und Fixieren z.B. mit Presspassung in dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 ermöglicht ist.

[0024] In einem in eingesetztem Zustand dem ersten Druckelement 20 abgewandten Abschnitt 33 weist die Befestigungskappe 30 einen verbreiterten Außendurchmesser auf, der beim Einsetzen in das zweite Kopfteil 10 durch Zusammenwirken mit dem ersten Ende 12 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 einen Anschlag bildet. Die Außenfläche des Abschnitts 33 ist derart sphärisch ausgebildet,

Ex.1004 / Page 255 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

dass sie im eingesetzten Zustand der Befestigungskappe 30 eine Fortführung der sphärischen Außenfläche 11 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 bildet.

[0025] Die Dicke des ersten Druckelements 20 ist so gewählt, dass es, wenn die Befestigungskappe 30 in das zweite Kopfteil eingesetzt ist, unter Vorspannung gesetzt ist und Druck auf die von dem verbreiterten Rand 6 des ersten Kopfteils 4 gebildete Fläche 7 ausübt, so dass das erste Kopfteil 4 gegen die zweite Bohrung 16 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 gedrückt wird und das Schraubenelement 1 elastisch in dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 gehalten ist. Vorteilhafterweise ist die Lagerung des ersten Kopfteils 4 in der zweiten Bohrung 16 durch Einbringen einer speziellen Gleitbeschichtung, einer Gleitfolie oder eines Gleitringes im Hinblick auf minimale zwischen dem kugelsegmentförmigen Abschnitt 5 und der zweiten Bohrung 16 wirkende Reibungskräfte optimiert.

[0026] Das Aufnahmeteil 40 ist im Wesentlichen zylindrisch ausgebildet. Ausgehend von seinem ersten Ende 41 ist in dem Aufnahmeteil 40 eine koaxiale erste Bohrung 48 vorgesehen, deren Durchmesser größer ist, als der Außendurchmesser des zweiten Kopfteils 10. Angrenzend an das andere Ende 49 des Aufnahmeteils 40 ist eine koaxiale zweite Bohrung 47 vorgesehen, deren Durchmesser sich vom Durchmesser der ersten Bohrung 48 gegen das zweite Ende 49 hin sphärisch verjüngt. Dadurch ist das zweite Kopfteil 10 in dem Aufnahmeteil 40 gehalten und um einen vorbestimmten Winkelbereich schwenkbar.

[0027] Ausgehend von seinem einen ersten Ende 41 ist ferner eine Ausnehmung 42 mit einem U-förmigen Querschnitt vorgesehen, die gerade so groß bemessen ist, dass der Stab 100 einlegbar ist. Durch die U-förmige Ausnehmung 42 sind zwei freie Schenkel 44, 45 gebildet, die angrenzend an ihr freies Ende ein Innengewinde 46 aufweisen, welches mit einem entsprechenden Außengewinde 61 der zwischen die Schenkel 44, 45 einzuschraubenden ersten Sicherungsschraube 60 zusammenwirkt.

[0028] Auf der der zweiten Bohrung 47 abgewandten Seite befindet sich in dem Aufnahmeteil 40 ein auf das zweite Kopfteil 10 einwirkendes zweites Druckelement 50. Das zweite Druckelement 50 ist im Wesentlichen zylindersymmetrisch mit einem Außendurchmesser, der kleiner ist, als der Innendurchmesser der ersten Bohrung 48, dass das Druckelement in die erste Bohrung 48 einsetzbar ist. Die dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 zugewandte Stirnseite 51 des zweiten Druckelements 50 ist konkav sphärisch ausgebildet, wobei der Radius dem Radius der sphärischen Außenfläche 11 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 und der daran befestigten Befestigungskappe 30 entspricht. Auf der dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 abgewandten Seite weist das zweite Druckelement 50 eine Ausnehmung 52 mit U-förmigem Querschnitt auf, deren Grund 53 einen Radius aufweist, der etwas größer als der Radius des Stabes 100 ist und in die der Stab 100 eingreift.

[0029] Das zweite Druckelement 50 weist ferner eine koaxiale Bohrung zum Hindurchgreifen mit einem Schraubwerkzeug auf.

[0030] In Richtung der Zylinderachse des Aufnahmeteils 40 ist die Höhe des zweiten Druckelements 50 gerade so gewählt, dass durch Anziehen der ersten Sicherungsschraube 60 derart Druck auf das zweite Druckelement 50 ausgeübt werden kann, dass das zweite Kopfteil 10 in dem Aufnahmeteil 40 in einer zu dem Zeitpunkt des Anziehens der Sicherungsschraube 60 eingestellten Winkelstellung vorfixierbar ist, die nachfolgend als Ruhewinkelstellung bezeichnet ist.

[0031] Mit dieser Anordnung wird erreicht, dass das zweite Kopfteil 10 relativ zu dem Aufnahmeteil 40 ausgerichtet und anschlie-ßend in dieser Ausrichtung vorfixiert werden kann.

[0032] Die erste Sicherungsschraube 60 weist eine Bohrung 62 auf, die mit einem Innengewinde 63 versehen ist, das mit einem Außengewinde 71 der zweiten Sicherungsschraube 70 zusammenwirkt. Desweiteren weist die Sicherungsschraube 60 auf ihrer dem Druckelement 50 abgewandten Seite nicht dargestellte Ausnehmungen zum Eingreifen mit einem Schraubwerkzeug auf.

[0033] Die zweite Sicherungsschraube 70 weist an ihrer Oberseite eine Ausnehmung 72 zum Eingreifen mit einem Schraubwerkzeug auf. In Fig.1 ist eine sechskantförmige Ausnehmung 72 für einen Inbusschlüssel dargestellt. Es ist jedoch auch eine andere Ausnehmung, wie z.B. ein Kreuzschlitz, zum Eingreifen mit einem Einschraubwerkzeug möglich.

[0034] Durch Anziehen der zweiten Sicherungsschraube 70 wird der Stab 100 gegen den Grund 53 der Ausnehmung 52 gedrückt und damit Druck auf das zweite Druckelement 50 und damit auf das zweite Kopfteil 10 ausgeübt, um ein optimales Fixieren der Ruhewinkelstellung zu erzielen. Der Stab 100 wird dabei durch die zweite Sicherungsschraube 70 und den Grund 53 in der U-förmigen Ausnehmung 42 des Aufnahmeteils fixiert.

[0035] Im Betrieb wird das Schraubenelement 1 zuerst mit dem Schaft 2 durch die Bohrungen 15, 16 in dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 hindurchgeführt, sodass das erste Kopfteil 4 in der zweiten Bohrung 16 gehalten wird. Anschließend wird das erste Druckelement 20 in das zweite Kopfteil 10 eingeführt und durch Einsetzen der Befestigungskappe 30 in das zweite Kopfteil 10 gegen die Fläche 7 des ersten Kopfteils 4 gedrückt und in diesem vorgespannten Zustand über die eingesetzte Befestigungskappe 30 gehalten. Dann wird das aus Schraube 1 und zweitem Kopfteil 10 gebildete Element in das Aufnahmeteil 40 eingebracht und anschließend das zweite Druckelement 50 in das Aufnahmeteil 40 eingesetzt. Dann wird das Schraubenelement 1 durch Hindurchgreifen durch die koaxialen Bohrungen des zweiten Druckelements 50, der Befestigungskappe 30 und des ersten Druckelements 20 und Eingreifen in die Ausnehmung 8 des Schraubenelements mit einem Schraubendreher in den Knochen oder Wirbel eingeschraubt. Anschließend wird der Stab eingelegt, wobei die Stellung des Aufnahmeteils 40 relativ zu dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 justiert wird.

Ex.1004 / Page 256 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

Diese Stellung, die die gewünschte Ruhewinkelstellung ist, wird durch die erste Sicherungsschraube 60, die auf das zweite Druckelement 50 drückt, vorfixiert.

[0036] Bei dem Vorfixieren der Ruhewinkelstellung wird die Befestigungskappe 30 durch Zusammenwirken ihrer sphärischen Außenfläche mit der sphärischen Ausnehmung der Stirnseite 51 des zweiten Druckelements 50 gegen das erste Druckelement 20 gedrückt und somit gegen Lösen gesichert.

[0037] Der Stab 100 wird anschließend durch Einschrauben der zweiten Sicherungsschraube 70 gegen den Grund 53 gedrückt und dadurch fixiert. Gleichzeitig wird durch das Anziehen der zweiten Sicherungsschraube 70 über den Stab 100 auf das zweite Druckelement 50 und damit auf das zweite Kopfteil 10 Druck ausgeübt, sodass damit eine zusätzliche Fixierung der Ruhewinkelstellung erzielt wird.

[0038] Das Vorsehen der beiden Sicherungsschrauben 60, 70 führt dazu, dass das zweite Kopfteil 10 und der Stab 100 unabhängig voneinander fixierbar sind.

[0039] In den Fig. 3a bis 3c ist schematisch die Auslenkbarkeit des Schraubenelementes 1 relativ zu dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 dargestellt. In Fig. 3a ist eine voreingestellte Ruhewinkelstellung gezeigt, die Fig. 3b und 3c zeigen jeweils eine Auslenkung aus dieser Ruhewinkelstellung in unterschiedliche Richtungen, wobei der Pfeil die Auslenkungsrichtung bezeichnet.

[0040] Wie in Fig. 3a gezeigt ist, weist das erste Drukkelement 20 in der Ruhewinkelstellung eine gleichmäßige Dicke auf. In Fig. 3b ist schematisch dargestellt, dass ein Auslenken des Schraubenelements dazu führt, dass eine Seite 22 des Druckelements komprimiert wird, wohingegen die gegenüberliegende Seite 23 entspannt wird. Das Verformen des elastischen ersten Druckelementes 20 führt zum Aufbau internen Spannungen in diesem, die eine der Auslenkung entgegenwirkende rücktreibende Kraft ausüben, sodass das Schraubenelement 1 in die Ruhewinkelstellung zurückgedrängt wird.

[0041] Die Größe der rücktreibenden Kraft kann dabei zum Einen durch die Dicke des ersten Druckelements 20 beeinflusst werden, die die Vorspannung des ersten Druckelements 20 im eingebauten Zustand bestimmt. Desweiteren kann die Größe der rücktreibenden Kraft auch durch die Materialwahl für das erste Druckelement 20, wobei unterschiedlichste Elastizitäten und Kompressibilitäten möglich sind, und durch die genaue Formgebung des ersten Druckelements 20 eingestellt werden, so dass eine gewünschte Steifigkeit des Knochenverankerungselements gegenüber axialen Kräften, Biegekräften und Torsionskräften erzielt werden kann.

[0042] Bei der Auslenkung aus der Ruhewinkelstellung begrenzt das Verhältnis des Durchmessers des Rands 6 des Schraubenelementes 1 zu dem Durchmesser der ersten Bohrung 15 in dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 die Auslenkbarkeit. Durch unterschiedliche Größenverhältnisse zwischen dem Durchmesser des Randes 6 und dem Innendurchmesser der Bohrung 15 kann somit die Auslenkbarkeit variiert werden. Z.B. können durch Wahl von Schrauben 1 mit unterschiedlich breiten Rändern 6, die in ein zweites Kopfteil mit vorgegebenen Innendurchmesser der Bohrung 15 einsetzbar sind, somit Verankerungselemente mit unterschiedlicher Auslenkbarkeit bereitgestellt werden.

[0043] Ein besonderer Vorteil dieser Ausbildung eines Knochenverankerungselements ist die Entkopplung der elastischen Auslenkung des Schraubenelements 1 von der Einstellmöglichkeit der Ruhewinkelstellung, was durch die Kombination von erstem Kopfteil 4, zweitem Kopfteil 10 und Aufnahmeteil 40 erreicht wird.

[0044] Eine erfindungsgemäße Stabilisierungseinrichtung umfasst wenigstens ein Knochenverankerungselement wie oben beschrieben in Kombination mit einem Stab und ein zweites Knochenverankerungselement, das bevorzugt ebenfalls wie oben beschrieben ausgebildet ist.

[0045] Bei einer Bewegung des Knochens bzw. Wirbels aus der zu stabilisierenden Ruhelage heraus wird über das elastische erste Druckelement 20 eine rücktreibende Kraft auf den Knochen bzw. Wirbel ausgeübt, die ihn wieder in die Ruhelage bringt und somit die Bewegung limitiert. Dadurch wird ein über die Bewegung des Knochens oder des Wirbels auf den Schraubenschaft wirkendes Biegemoment abgefangen und es kommt nicht zu einer Lockerung der Knochenverankerung.

Zweite Ausführungsform

[0046] Bei einem Knochenverankerungselement der zweiten Ausführungsform, die in Fig. 4 dargestellt ist, ist das Knochenverankerungselement derart ausgebildet, dass nicht das Befestigen eines Stabes, sondern einer Platte vorgesehen ist. Bei dieser Ausführungsform entspricht der Aufbau von erstem Schraubenelement 1, erstem Druckelement 20, Befestigungskappe 30 und zweitem Kopfteil 10 dem Aufbau der ersten Ausführungsform, weshalb für diese Komponenten dieselben Bezugszeichen verwendet werden und eine erneute Beschreibung unterbleibt.

[0047] Der wesentliche Unterschied der zweiten Ausführungsform gegenüber der ersten Ausführungsform besteht darin, dass das Aufnahmeteil durch die zu befestigende Platte 200 gebildet wird.

[0048] Die Platte 200 weist eine erste Bohrung 248 auf, die von einer ersten Seite der Platte in die Platte hineinreicht und deren Durchmesser größer ist, als der Außendurchmesser des zweiten Kopfteils 10. Die erste Bohrung 248 weist in dem der ersten Seite der Platte zugewandten Bereich desweiteren ein Innengewinde 246 auf. Angrenzend an die andere Seite 249 der Platte ist koaxial zur ersten Bohrung 248 und verbunden mit dieser eine zweite Bohrung 247 vorgesehen, deren Durchmesser sich vom Durchmesser der ersten Bohrung 248 gegen die zweite Seite 249 hin sphärisch verjüngt. Dadurch ist das zweite Kopfteil 10 in der Platte 200 gehalten und um einen vorbestimmten Winkelbereich schwenkbar, wie bei der ersten Ausführungsform.

Ex.1004 / Page 257 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

[0049] Auf der der zweiten Bohrung 247 abgewandten Seite befindet sich in der ersten Bohrung 248 ein auf das zweite Kopfteil 10 einwirkendes zweites Druckelement 250. Das zweite Druckelement 250 ist im Wesentlichen zylindersymmetrisch mit einem Außendurchmesser, der kleiner ist, als der Innendurchmesser der ersten Bohrung 248, sodass das Druckelement in die erste Bohrung 248 einsetzbar ist. Die dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 zugewandte Stirnseite 251 des zweiten Druckelements 250 ist konkav sphärisch ausgebildet, wobei der Radius dem Radius der sphärischen Außenfläche 11 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 und der daran befestigten Befestigungskappe 30 entspricht. Das zweite Druckelement 250 weist ferner eine koaxiale Bohrung zum Hindurchgreifen mit einem Schraubwerkzeug auf.

[0050] In Richtung der Bohrung in der Platte ist die Höhe des zweiten Druckelements 250 gerade so gewählt, dass durch Anziehen einer Sicherungsschraube 260, die in das Innengewinde 246 der Bohrung 248 einschraubbar ist, derart Druck auf das zweite Druckelement 250 ausgeübt werden kann, dass das zweite Kopfteil 10 in der Platte in einer zu dem Zeitpunkt des Anziehens der Sicherungsschraube 260 eingestellten Winkelstellung fixierbar ist, die nachfolgend als Ruhewinkelstellung bezeichnet ist, und die Platte dabei gleichzeitig mit dem Schraubenelement 1 verbunden wird.

[0051] Mit dieser Anordnung wird erreicht, dass das zweite Kopfteil 10 relativ zu der Platte 200 ausgerichtet und anschließend in dieser Ausrichtung vorfixiert werden kann.

[0052] Die Sicherungsschraube 260 weist eine koaxiale Bohrung 262 zum Eingreifen mit einem Schraubwerkzeug auf. In Fig. 4 ist eine sechskantförmige Bohrung 262 für einen Inbusschlüssel dargestellt. Es ist jedoch auch eine andere Formgebung zum Eingreifen mit einem Einschraubwerkzeug möglich.

[0053] Die koaxiale Bohrung 262 weist einen solchen Querschnitt auf, dass ein Hindurchgreifen mit dem Schraubwerkzeug, für das die Ausnehmung 8 des ersten Kopfteils vorgesehen ist, ermöglicht ist.

[0054] Diese Ausführungsform weist den besonderen Vorteil auf, dass der gesamte Aufbau vormontiert werden kann. Im Betrieb ist zuerst nur die Sicherungsschraube 260 nicht angezogen. Das Schraubenelement kann in dem vormontierten Zustand in den Knochen oder Wirbel eingeschraubt werden, indem mit dem Schraubwerkzeug durch die konzentrischen Bohrungen in dem ersten Druckelement 20, der Befestigungskappe 30, des zweiten Druckelements 250 und der Sicherungsschraube 260 in die Ausnehmung 8 des Schraubenelements 1 eingegriffen wird. Anschließend kann die Winkelstellung der Platte 200 zum Schaft 2 eingestellt werden und durch Anziehen der Sicherungsschraube 260 Druck auf das zweite Druckelement 250 und damit auf das zweite Kopfteil 10 ausgeübt werden, um ein Fixieren der Ruhewinkelstellung zu erzielen.

[0055] Dritte Ausführungsform

[0056] Bei einem Knochenverankerungselement der dritten Ausführungsform, das in Fig. 5 dargestellt ist, unterscheidet sich das Knochenverankerungselement nur dadurch von der zweiten Ausführungsform, dass das zweite Druckelement und die Sicherungsschraube einstückig in Form einer Sicherungsschraube 280 ausgebildet sind.

[0057] Bei dieser Ausführungsform entspricht der Aufbau von erstem Schraubenelement 1, erstem Druckelement 20, Befestigungskappe 30, zweitem Kopfteil 10 und Platte 200 dem Aufbau der zweiten Ausführungsform, weshalb für diese Komponenten dieselben Bezugszeichen verwendet werden und eine erneute Beschreibung unterbleibt.

[0058] Die Sicherungsschraube 280 weist einen ersten Abschnitt 281 auf, der mit einem Außengewinde 281 zum Einschrauben in das Innengewinde 246 der Bohrung 248 versehen ist. Angrenzend an den ersten Abschnitt 281 weist die Sicherungsschraube 280 auf der Seite, die der zweiten Bohrung 247 zugewandt ist, einen zweiten Abschnitt 282 auf. Der zweite Abschnitt 282 ist im Wesentlichen zylindersymmetrisch mit einem Außendurchmesser, der kleiner ist, als der Innendurchmesser der ersten Bohrung 248, sodass die Sicherungsschraube 280 in die erste Bohrung 248 einschraubbar ist.

[0059] Die dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 zugewandte Stirnseite 283 der Sicherungsschraube 280 ist konkav sphärisch ausgebildet, wobei der Radius dem Radius der sphärischen Außenfläche 11 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 und der daran befestigten Befestigungskappe 30 entspricht.

[0060] In Richtung der Bohrung in der Platte ist die Höhe der Sicherungsschraube 280 gerade so gewählt, dass durch Anziehen die Stirnfläche 283 derart Druck auf das zweite Kopfteil 10 ausübt, dass es in der Platte in einer zu dem Zeitpunkt des Anziehens der Sicherungsschraube 280 eingestellten Winkelstellung fixierbar ist, die nachfolgend als Ruhewinkelstellung bezeichnet ist. Die Platte 200 wird dabei gleichzeitig mit dem Schraubenelement 1 verbunden.

[0061] Mit dieser Anordnung wird erreicht, dass das zweite Kopfteil 10 relativ zu der Platte 200 ausgerichtet und anschließend in dieser Ausrichtung fixiert werden kann.

[0062] Die Sicherungsschraube 280 weist eine koaxiale Bohrung 285 auf, die ein Eingreifen mit einem Schraubwerkzeug ermöglicht. In Fig. 5 ist eine sechskantförmige Bohrung 285 für einen Inbusschlüssel dargestellt. Es ist jedoch auch eine andere Formgebung zum Eingreifen mit einem Einschraubwerkzeug möglich.

[0063] Die koaxiale Bohrung 285 weist einen solchen Querschnitt auf, dass ein Hindurchgreifen mit dem Schraubwerkzeug, für das die Ausnehmung 8 des ersten Kopfteils vorgesehen ist, ermöglicht ist.

[0064] Diese Ausführungsform weist den besonderen Vorteil auf, dass der gesamte Aufbau vormontiert werden kann. Im Betrieb ist zuerst nur die Sicherungsschraube 280 nicht angezogen. Das Schraubenelement kann in dem vormontierten Zustand in den Knochen oder Wirbel

Ex.1004 / Page 258 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

eingeschraubt werden, indem mit dem Schraubwerkzeug durch die konzentrischen Bohrungen in dem ersten Druckelement 20, der Befestigungskappe 30 und der Sicherungsschraube 280 in die Ausnehmung 8 des Schraubenelements 1 eingegriffen wird. Anschließend kann die Winkelstellung der Platte 200 zum Schaft 2 eingestellt und mit der Sicherungsschraube 280 fixiert werden.

Vierte Ausführungsform

[0065] Die in Fig. 6 dargestellte vierte Ausführungsform der vorliegenden Erfindung unterscheidet sich von der ersten bevorzugten Ausführung im Wesentlichen nur in der Ausbildung des ersten Kopfteiles und des elastischen ersten Druckelementes und gleiche oder ähnliche Elemente werden mit denselben Bezugszeichen bezeichnet.

[0066] Bei der vierten Ausführungsform schließt sich im Gegensatz zu der ersten Ausführungsform an den verbreiterten Rand 6 auf der dem Schaft 2 abgewandten Seite ein in dieser Ausführungsform mit dem ersten Kopfteil 4' einstückig verbundener zylinderförmiger Abschnitt 9 an, der als elastisches erstes Druckelement dient. Der zylinderförmige Abschnitt 9 erstreckt sich im Wesentlichen in Form eines Hohlzylinders koaxial zu der Achse des Schaftes 2 in Richtung des zweiten Druckelementes 50. In Richtung des zweiten Druckelements 50 weist der zylinderförmige Abschnitt 9 einen Bereich 9b mit einem verbreiterten Außendurchmesser auf, der in der ersten Bohrung 15 des zweiten Kopfteils 10 gehalten ist. Die dem zweiten Druckelement 50 zugewandte Stirnfläche des zylinderförmigen Abschnitts 9 ist derart sphärisch ausgebildet, dass sie im zusammengebauten Zustand des Knochenverankerungselementes eine Fortführung des der sphärischen Außenfläche 11 des zweiten Kopfteiles 10 bildet. Der Zylindermantel des zylinderförmigen Abschnittes 9 weist umlaufende Ausnehmungen 9a derart auf, dass der zylinderförmige Abschnitt 9 eine parallel zu der Schaftachse verlaufende Spiralfeder bildet.

[0067] Im Betrieb wird prinzipiell wie bei der ersten Ausführungsform verfahren und das zweite Kopfteil 10 durch den von dem zweiten Druckelement 50 ausgeübten Druck in dem Aufnahmeteil 40 in einer gewünschten Ruhewinkelstellung fixiert. In diesem Zustand ist wiederum, wie bei der ersten Ausführungsform eine Auslenkung des Schaftes 2 relativ zu dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 aus der Ruhewinkelstellung möglich. Bei der Auslenkung aus der Ruhewinkelstellung wird die Spiralfeder des zylinderförmigen Abschnitts 9 elastisch deformiert und es wirkt folglich auf das erste Kopfteil 4' eine in die Ruhewinkelstellung rücktreibende Kraft, wobei bei dieser Ausbildung in Form einer einstückig mit dem ersten Kopfteil 4 ausgebildeten Schraubenfeder eine Druck- und eine Zugseite zu der Rückstellung beitragen, da bei einer Auslenkung eine Seite komprimiert und die gegenüberliegende Seite gedehnt wird.

[0068] Durch die Spiralfeder des zylinderförmigen Abschnitts 9 können durch eine geeignete Wahl der Federkraft und der Vorspannung verschieden starke Rücktreibekräfte realisiert werden, was zu einer großen Variabilität des Knochenverankerungselementes führt.

[0069] Weiterhin ist auch eine Kombination der Merkmale der vierten Ausführungsführungsform mit denen der anderen Ausführungsformen möglich, insbesondere kann der beschriebene Aufbau auch in einer Platte wie bei der zweiten und dritten Ausführungsform Verwendung finden.

Weitere Ausführungsformen und Abwandlungen

[0070] Das erste Kopfteil 4 und die zweite Bohrung 16 in dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 müssen nicht kugelsegmentförmig bzw. hohlkugelsegmentförmig ausgebildet sein, sondern können eine andere Form aufweisen, solange die gewährleistet ist, daß das erste Kopfteil 4 in dem zweiten Kopfteil schwenkbar gehalten ist.

[0071] Ebenfalls müssen das zweite Kopfteil 10 und der das zweite Kopfteil haltende Bereich des Aufnahmeteils nicht kugelsegmentförmig bzw. hohlkugelsegmentförmig sein, sondern müssen ebenfalls eine Schwenkbarkeit des zweiten Kopfteils 10 in dem Aufnahmeteil und bei Fixierung in der gewünschten Ruhewinkelstellung eine ausreichende Haltekraft ermöglichen.

[0072] Das Halten der Befestigungskappe 30 in dem zweiten Kopfteil 10 kann auch durch ein auf dem Abschnitt 32 vorgesehenes Außengewinde realisiert sein, das mit einem Innengewinde der Bohrung 15 in einem an das erste Ende 12 angrenzenden Bereich zusammenwirkt.

[0073] Das erste Druckelement 20 muss nicht unbedingt aus einem Elastomer bestehen, sondern kann beispielsweise auch durch entsprechend angeordnete Federn realisiert werden, die die Rückstellkraft ausüben.

[0074] Es ist ebenfalls denkbar, zum Fixieren des Stabes 100 und zum Fixieren der Ruheposition nur eine Innenschraube zu verwenden, die über den Stab 100 Druck auf das zweite Druckelement 50 und damit auch auf das zweite Kopfteil 10 ausübt.

[0075] Der Schaft 2 und das erste Kopfteil 4 sind einstückig ausgebildet gezeigt, jedoch ist auch eine mehrstückige Ausbildung möglich, bei der zum Beispiel Schaft 2 und erstes Kopfteil 4 mittels einer Schraubverbindung, Passsitz oder ähnlichem verbunden sind.

[0076] Weitere Abwandlungen der vorher beschriebenen Ausführungsformen sind möglich. Insbesondere können Elemente einer Ausführungsform mit den Elementen einer anderen Ausführungsform kombiniert werden.

[0077] Es können zwei oder mehr erfindungsgemäße Knochenverankerungselemente in Kombination mit einem Stab oder mit einer Platte verwendet werden, ebenso können erfindungsgemäße Knochenverankerungselemente mit bekannten Knochenverankerungselementen, insbesondere mit Knochenschrauben oder Haken, kombiniert werden.

Ex.1004 / Page 259 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

[0078] Die Erfindung ist nicht auf die konkret beschriebenen Beispiele eines polyaxialen Knochenverankerungselements beschränkt. Es können auch andere Ausbildungen desselben, insbesondere der Aufnahmeteile und der Befestigungseinrichtungen möglich sein. Entscheidend ist, dass der Schaft elastisch aus einer Ruhewinkelstellung auslenkbar ist und dass die Einstellung der Ruhewinkelstellung von der elastischen Auslenkbarkeit entkoppelt ist.

[0079] Bei allen vorgenannten Ausführungsformen besteht ferner der Vorteil, daß die begrenzte Bewegungsmöglichkeit der Knochenteile bzw. Wirbel zu einer erhöhten zyklischen Teilbelastung führt, die das Knochenwachstum anregt. Gleichzeitig bleibt die Sicherheit der Verankerung im Knochen gewährleistet.

Patentansprüche

1. Knochenverankerungselement mit
einem Element (1) mit einem Schaft (2) zur Verankerung in einem Knochen oder einem Wirbel und mit einem mit dem Schaft (2) verbundenen ersten Kopfteil (4),
einem mit dem Element (1) verbindbaren zweiten Kopfteil (10), in dem das erste Kopfteil schwenkbar gehalten ist,
einem Aufnahmeteil (40, 200), in dem das zweite Kopfteil (10) aufgenommen ist, und
einer Fixiervorrichtung (60; 260; 280) zum Fixieren des zweiten Kopfteils (10) in dem Aufnahmeteil (40; 200)
dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass
das zweite Kopfteil (10) hülsenförmig zum Aufnehmen des ersten Kopfteils (4) ausgebildet und in dem Aufnahmeteil (40, 200) schwenkbar gehalten ist,
die Fixiervorrichtung das zweite Kopfteil (10) in dem Aufnahmeteil (40, 200) in einer Stellung fixiert, die eine Ruhewinkelstellung des Schaftes (2) relativ zu dem Aufnahmeteil bestimmt, und
das erste und das zweite Kopfteil derart miteinander elastisch verbunden sind, dass der Schaft (2) relativ zu dem zweiten Kopfteil (10) aus der Ruhewinkelstellung auslenkbar ist und dabei auf das erste Kopfteil (4) eine in die Ruhewinkelstellung rücktreibende Kraft wirkt.

2. Knochenverankerungselement nach Anspruch 1, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** die Auslenkung des Schaftes (2) aus der Ruhewinkelstellung von dem Fixieren der Ruhewinkelstellung entkoppelt ist.

3. Knochenverankerungselement nach Anspruch 1 oder 2, die derart ausgebildet ist, dass ein elastisches Druckelement (20, 9) vorgesehen ist, das auf das erste Kopfteil (4) einwirkt.

4. Knochenverankerungselement nach Anspruch 3, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** das elastische Druckelement (20) aus einem Elastomer ausgebildet ist.

5. Knochenverankerungselement nach Anspruch 3, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** das elastische Druckelement (9) einstückig mit dem ersten Kopfteil (4) ausgebildet ist.

6. Knochenverankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 5, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** das zweite Kopfteil (10) eine im Wesentlichen kugelsegmentförmige Außenfläche aufweist.

7. Knochenverankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 6, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** das erste Kopfteil (4) eine im Wesentlichen kugelsegmentförmige Form aufweist.

8. Knochenverankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 7, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** der Innendurchmesser des hülsenförmigen zweiten Kopfteils (10) in einem ersten Bereich (15) größer ist als der Durchmesser des ersten Kopfteils (4) und in einem zweiten Bereich (16) kleiner ist, so dass das erste Kopfteil (4) darin einführbar und schwenkbar gehalten ist.

9. Knochenverankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 8, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** das erste Kopfteil (4) an seiner dem Schaft (2) abgewandten Seite einen verbreiterten Rand (6) aufweist.

10. Knochenverankerungselement nach Anspruch 9, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** der verbreiterte Rand (6) die Auslenkbarkeit des ersten Kopfteils (4) aus der Ruhewinkelstellung beschränkt.

11. Knochenverankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 3 bis 10, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** das elastische Druckelement (20, 9) unter Vorspannung zwischen dem ersten Kopfteil (4) und einer das zweite Kopfteil (10) bedeckenden Kappe (30) befestigt ist.

12. Knochenverankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 11, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** ein zweites Druckelement (50; 250; 280) vorgesehen ist, das zum Fixieren der Ruhewinkelstellung auf das zweite Kopfteil einwirkt.

13. Knochenverankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 12, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** das Aufnahmeteil (40) im wesentlichen hohlzylinderförmig ausgebildet ist und an einem Ende einen Bereich (47) mit einem verjüngten Innendurchmesser zum Halten des zweiten Kopfteils (10) aufweist.

Ex.1004 / Page 260 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

14. Knochenverankerungselement nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 12, **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** das Aufnahmeteil als eine Platte (200) mit einer im wesentlichen hohlzylinderförmigen Bohrung (248; 247) ausgebildet ist und an einem Ende der Bohrung einen Bereich (247) mit einem verjüngten Innendurchmesser zum Halten des zweiten Kopfteils (10) aufweist.

15. Stabilisierungseinrichtung mit einem ersten Knochenverankerungselement und einem zweiten Knochenverankerungselement und einem diese verbindenden Stab (100) oder einer Platte (200), **dadurch gekennzeichnet, dass** wenigstens eines der Knochenverankerungselemente nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 14 ausgebildet ist.

Claims

1. Bone anchoring element with
an element (1) having a shaft (2) for anchoring in a bone or vertebra, and having a first head part (4) connected to the shaft (2),
a second head part (10) connectable to the element (1), in which the first head part is pivotably held,
a receiving part (40; 200) in which the second head part (10) is received, and
a fixation device (60; 260; 280) for fixing the second head part (10) in the receiving part (40; 200),
characterized in that
the second head part (10) is formed as sleeve-shaped for receiving the first head part (4) and is pivotably held in the receiving part (40, 200),
the fixing device fixes the second head part (10) in the receiving part (40, 200) in a position which determines a resting angular position of the shaft (2) relative to the receiving part, and
the first and second head parts are elastically connected to each other such that the shaft (2) is deflectable from the resting angular position relative to the second head part (10) and, in doing so, a force restoring to the resting angular position acts on the first head part (4).

2. Bone anchoring element according to Claim 1, **characterized in that** the deflection of the shaft (2) from the resting angular position is decoupled from the fixation of the resting angular position.

3. Bone anchoring element according to Claim 1 or 2, being formed such that an elastic pressure element (20, 9) acting on the first head part (4) is provided.

4. Bone anchoring element according to Claim 3, **characterized in that** the elastic pressure element (20) is made from an elastomer.

5. Bone anchoring element according to Claim 3, **characterized in that** the elastic pressure element (9) is formed in one piece with the first head part (4).

6. Bone anchoring element according to any one of Claims 1 to 5, **characterized in that** the second head part (10) comprises an outer surface essentially shaped as a segment of a sphere.

7. Bone anchoring element according to any one of Claims 1 to 6, **characterized in that** the first head part (4) essentially has a shape as a segment of a sphere.

8. Bone anchoring element according to any one of Claims 1 to 7, **characterized in that**, in a first region (15), the inner diameter of the sleeve-shaped second head part (10) is larger than the diameter of the first head part (4) and, in a second region (16), is smaller, such that the first head part (4) is insertable therein and pivotably held.

9. Bone anchoring element according to any one of Claims 1 to 8, **characterized in that** the first head part (4) comprises a widened edge (6) at its side facing away from the shaft (2).

10. Bone anchoring element according to Claim 9, **characterized in that** the widened edge (6) limits the capability of deflection of the first head part (4) from the resting angular position.

11. Bone anchoring element according to any one of Claims 3 to 10, **characterized in that** the elastic pressure element (20, 9) is attached under pre-load between the first head part (4) and a cap (30) covering the second head part (10).

12. Bone anchoring element according to any one of Claims 1 to 11, **characterized in that** a second pressure element (50; 250; 280) is provided which, for fixing the resting angular position, acts on the second head part.

13. Bone anchoring element according to any one of Claims 1 to 12, **characterized in that** the receiving part (40) is provided to be essentially hollow cylindrical in shape and, at one end, comprises a region (47) with a tapered inner diameter for holding the second head part (10).

14. Bone anchoring element according to any one of Claims 1 to 12, **characterized in that** the receiving part is provided as a plate (200) with an essentially hollow cylindrical bore (248; 247) and, at one end of the bore, comprises a region (247) with a tapered inner diameter for holding the second head part (10).

Ex.1004 / Page 261 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

15. Stabilization device with a first bone anchoring element and a second bone anchoring element and a rod (100) or a plate (200) connecting these, **characterized in that** at least one of the bone anchoring elements is provided according to any one of Claims 1 to 14.

Revendications

1. Élément d'ancrage osseux, comprenant :

   un élément (1) avec une tige (2), pour ancrage dans un os ou une vertèbre, et avec une première partie de tête (4) reliée à la tige (2),
   une deuxième partie de tête (10), susceptible d'être reliée à l'élément (1) et dans laquelle la première partie de tête est maintenue de façon à pouvoir pivoter,
   une partie de logement (40, 200) dans laquelle la deuxième partie de tête (10) est logée, et
   un dispositif de fixation (60; 260; 280) pour fixation de la deuxième partie de tête (10) dans la partie de logement (40 ; 200),

   caractérisé en ce que
   la deuxième partie de tête (10) est réalisée en forme de douille pour recevoir la première partie de tête (4) et est maintenue à pivotement dans la partie de logement (40 ; 200),
   le dispositif de fixation fixe la deuxième partie de tête (10) dans la partie de logement (40 ; 200), en une position déterminant une position angulaire de repos de la tige (2) par rapport à la partie de logement, et la première et la deuxième partie de tête étant reliées ensemble de façon élastique, de manière que la tige (2) puisse être déviée par rapport à la deuxième partie de tête (10) en partant d'une position angulaire de repos, et qu'une force, ramenant la première partie de tête (4) à la position angulaire de repos, agisse.

2. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon la revendication 1, **caractérisé en ce que** le débattement de la tige (2) depuis la position de repos, est désaccouplé de la fixation de la position angulaire de repos.

3. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon la revendication 1 ou 2, réalisé de manière qu'un élément de pressage (20, 9) élastique soit prévu, agissant sur la première partie de tête (4).

4. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon la revendication 3, **caractérisé en ce que** l'élément de pressage (20) élastique est réalisé en un élastomère.

5. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon la revendication 3, **caractérisé en ce que** l'élément de pressage (9) élastique est réalisé d'une seule pièce avec la première partie de tête (4).

6. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon l'une des revendications 1 à 5, **caractérisé en ce que** la deuxième partie de tête (10) présente une surface extérieure sensiblement en forme de segment de sphère.

7. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon l'une des revendications 1 à 6, **caractérisé en ce que** la première partie de tête (4) présente une forme sensiblement en forme de segment de sphère.

8. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon l'une des revendications 1 à 7, **caractérisé en ce que** le diamètre intérieur de la deuxième partie de tête (10) en forme de douille, dans une première zone (15), est plus grand que le diamètre de la première partie de tête (4) et, dans une deuxième zone (16), est plus petit, de manière que la première partie de tête (4) puisse y être introduite et y être maintenue à pivotement.

9. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon l'une des revendications 1 à 8, **caractérisé en ce que** la première partie de tête (4) présente sur sa face opposée à la tige (2) un bord (6) élargi.

10. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon la revendication 9, **caractérisé en ce que** le bord (6) élargi limite la possibilité de débattement de la première partie de tête (4) depuis la position angulaire de repos.

11. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon l'une des revendications 3 à 10, **caractérisé en ce que** l'élément de pressage (20, 9) élastique est fixé sous précontrainte entre la première partie de tête (4) et un capuchon (30) couvrant la deuxième partie de tête (10).

12. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon l'une des revendications 1 à 11, **caractérisé en ce qu'**un deuxième élément de pressage (50 ; 250 ; 280) est prévu, agissant pour fixer la position angulaire de repos sur la deuxième partie de tête.

13. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon l'une des revendications 1 à 12, **caractérisé en ce que** la partie de logement (40) est réalisée sensiblement avec une forme de cylindre creux, et présente à une extrémité une zone (47) ayant un diamètre intérieur effilé pour maintenir la deuxième partie de tête (10).

14. Élément d'ancrage osseux selon l'une des revendications 1 à 12, **caractérisé en ce que** la partie de logement est réalisée sous la forme d'une plaque (200) ayant un perçage (248 247) sensiblement en forme de cylindre creux, et présente sur une extrémité du perçage une zone (247) ayant un diamètre intérieur effilé, pour assure le maintien de la deuxième partie de tête (10).

Ex.1004 / Page 262 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

15. Dispositif de stabilisation comprenant un premier élément d'ancrage osseux et un deuxième élément d'ancrage osseux, et une barre (100) ou une plaque (200) reliant ceux-ci, **caractérisé en ce qu'**au moins l'un des éléments d'ancrage osseux est réalisé selon l'une des revendications 1 à 14.

Ex.1004 / Page 263 of 363
SeaSpine Holdings Corporation

Fig. 1

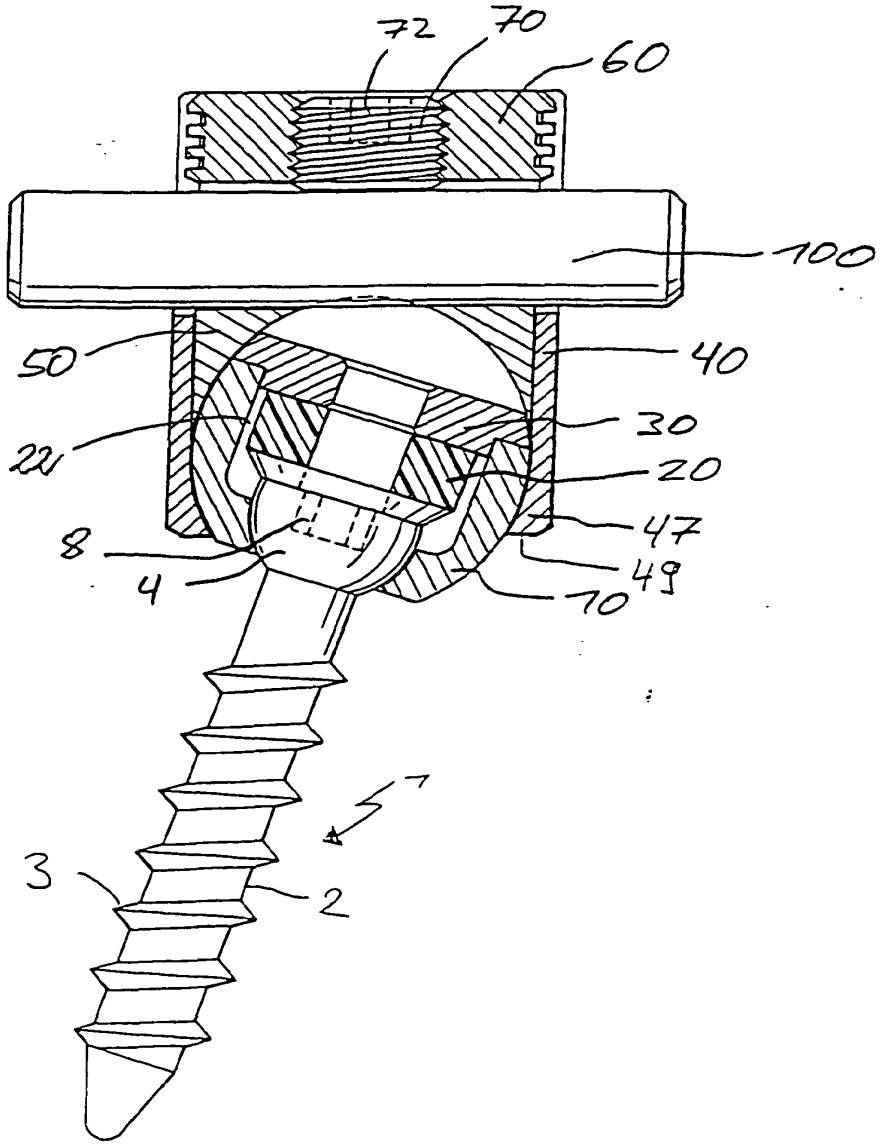


Fig. 2

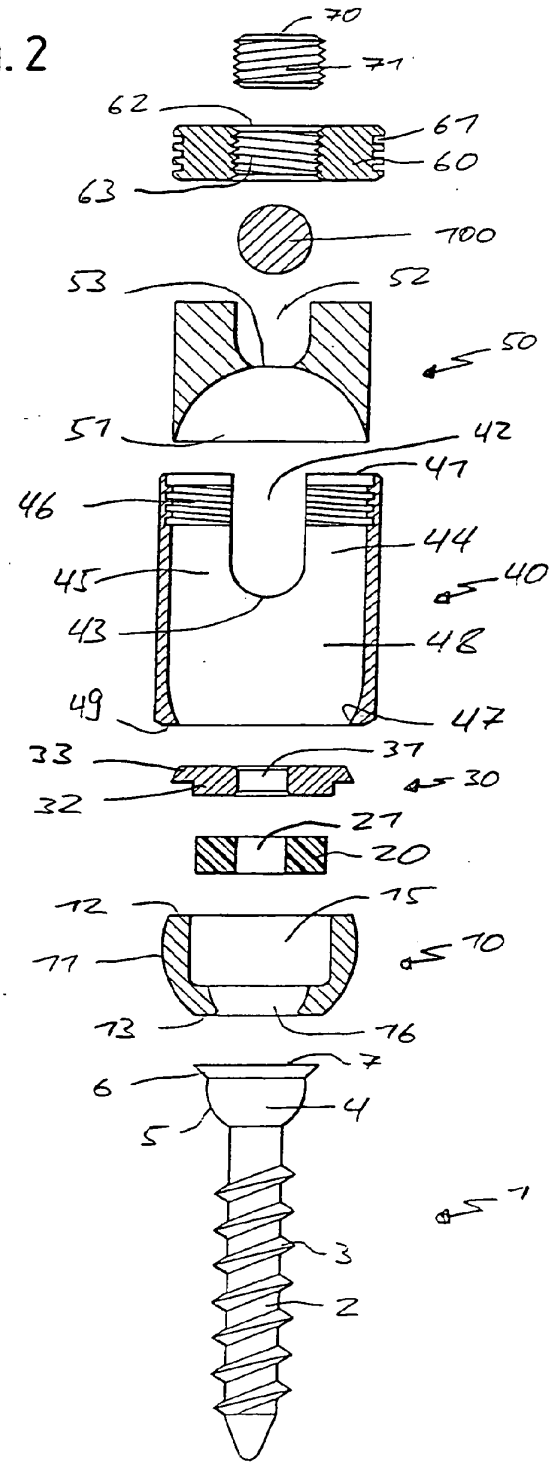

70
71
62
67
60
63
100
53
52
50
51
42
47
46
44
45
40
43
48
49
47
33
37
30
32
27
20
12
15
10
11
13
16
7
6
4
5
1
3
2

Fig. 3c

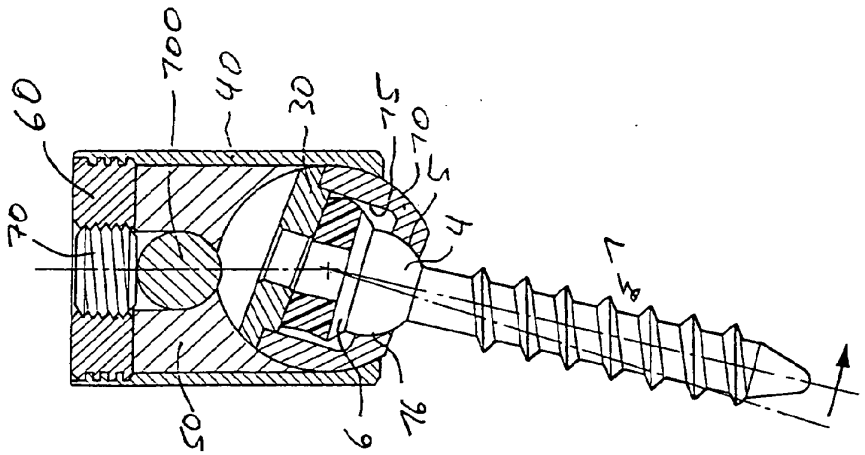


Fig. 3b

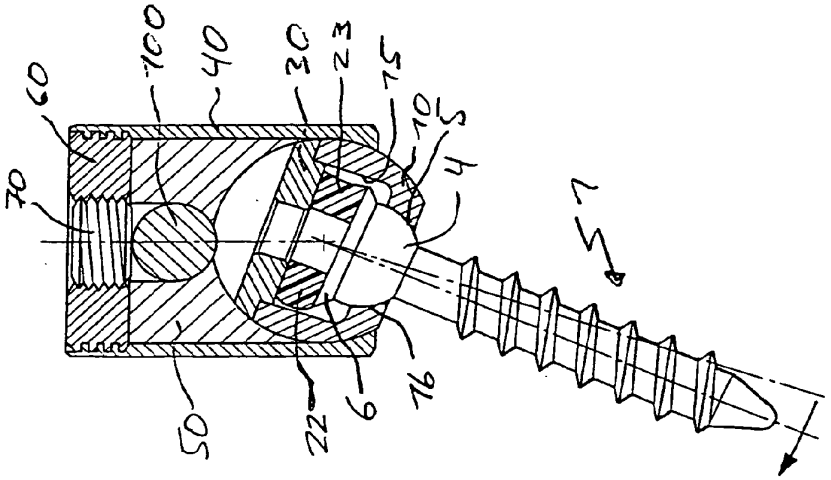


Fig. 3a

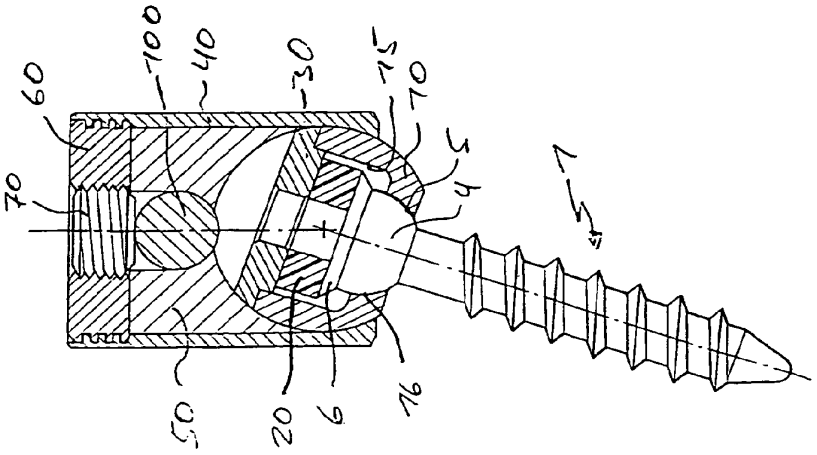


Fig. 4

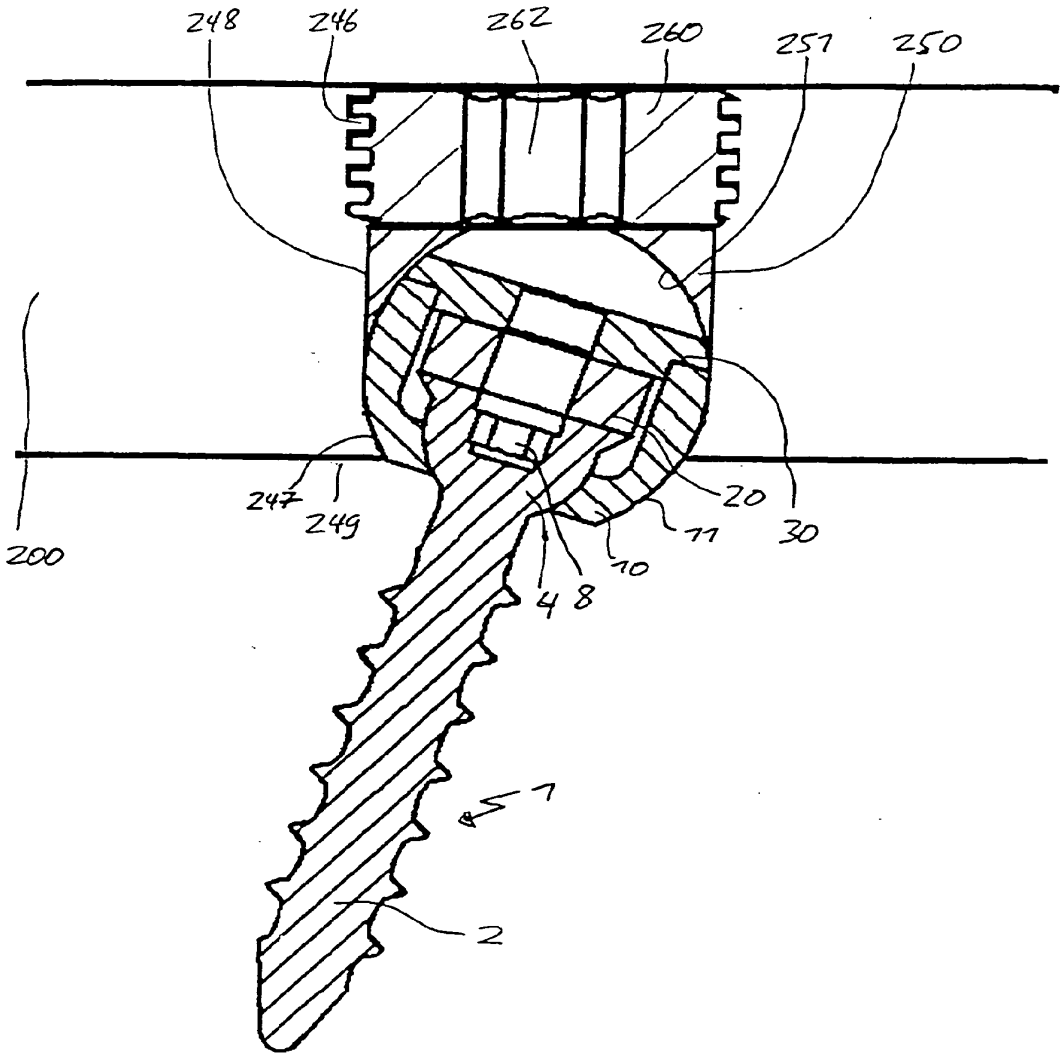


Fig. 5

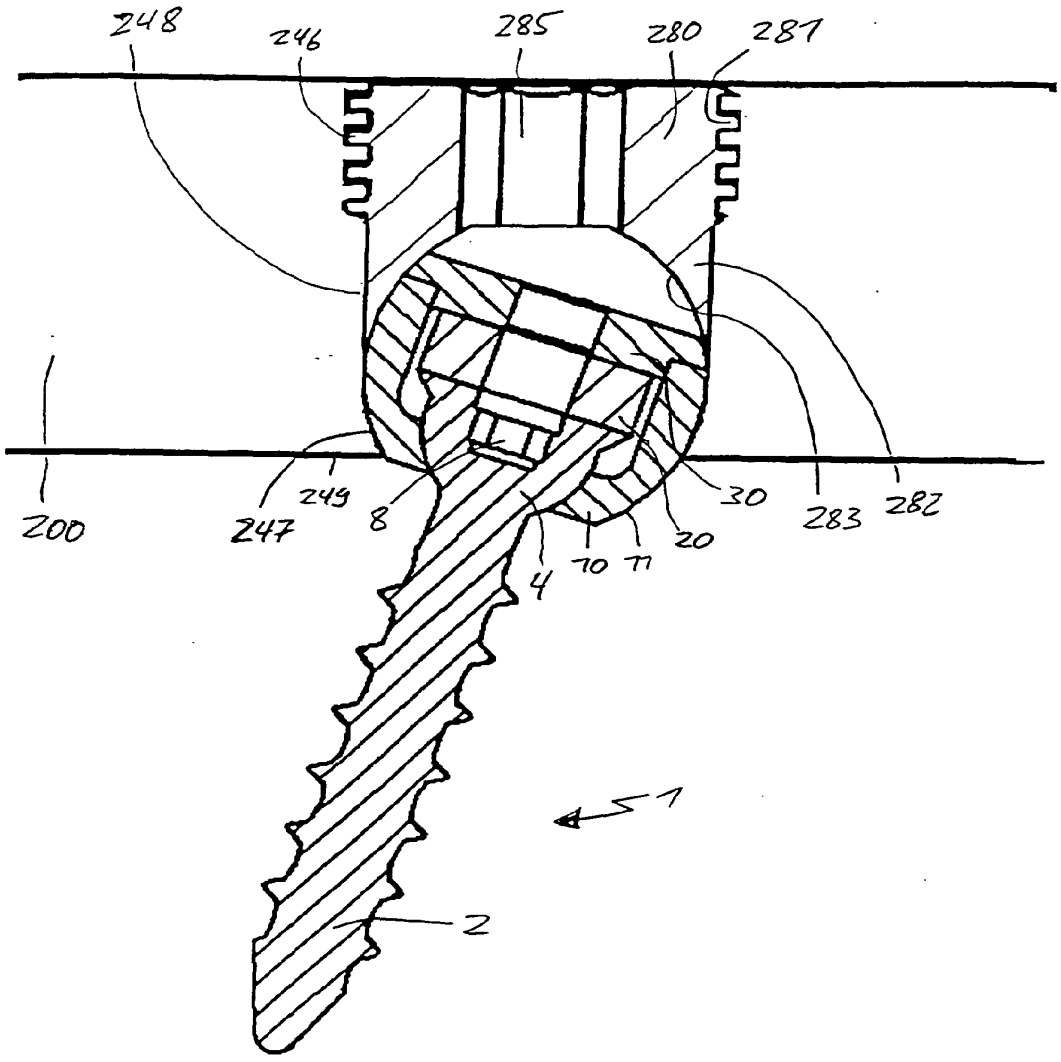
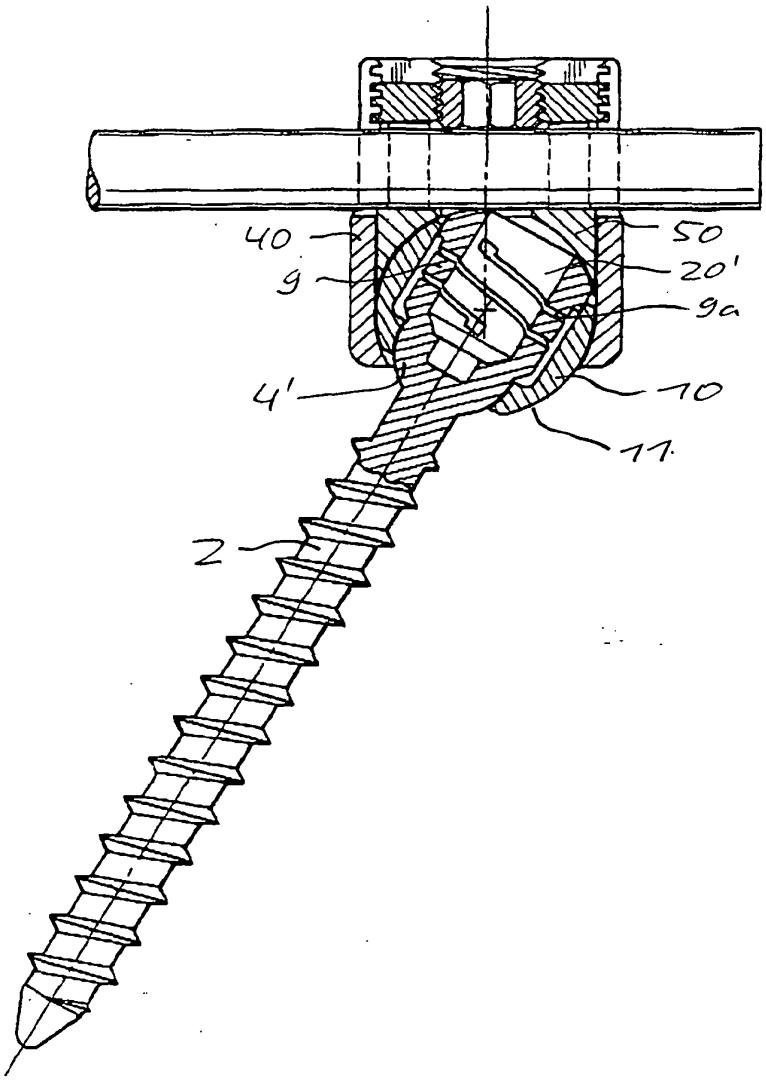


Fig. 6



(12) UK Patent Application (19) GB (11) 2 140 523 A

(43) Application published **28 Nov 1984**

(21) Application No **8411265**

(22) Date of filing **2 May 1984**

(30) Priority data

(31) **8313546** (32) **17 May 1983** (33) **GB**

(71) Applicant
Hepworth Electrical Developments Limited, (United Kingdom), Riverholme Works, Huddersfield Road, Holmfirth, Huddersfield HD7 2TN

(72) Inventor
Roy Dent

(74) Agent and/or Address for Service
Bailey Walsh & Co., 5 York Place, Leeds SL1 2SD

(51) INT CL³
F16B 31/02

(52) Domestic classification
F2H 11A5 17B
U1S 2055 F2H

(56) Documents cited

GB 1564237	**GB 1387969**
GB 1559040	**GB 1357875**
GB 1517657	**GB 1330320**
GB 1411151	**GB 1298095**
GB 1398180	**GB 0898026**

(58) Field of search
F2H

(54) Shear head screws or bolts, or shear head adaptor

(57) A shear head screw 10 (Fig. 3) comprises a first (screw) head 14A and a second head 14B coupled by a shear neck 16 so that the screw can be tightened by the first head 14A until the screw shears at the neck 16 leaving the second head 14B and a threaded stem 12 tightened to a predetermined torque determined by the shear force. The screw thus applied can subsequently be loosened by the second head 14B.

A shear head adaptor 108 (Fig. 19) comprises a socket 112 drivingly engageable with the screw head 106, and a drive head 114 coupled by a shear neck 116 to the socket 112.

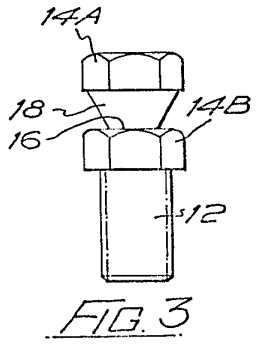


FIG. 3

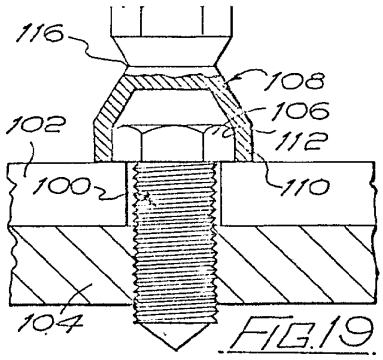


FIG. 19

The drawings originally filed were informal and the print here reproduced is taken from a later filed formal copy.

GB 2 140 523 A

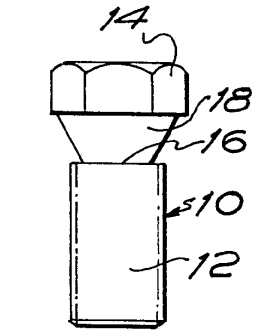


FIG. 1

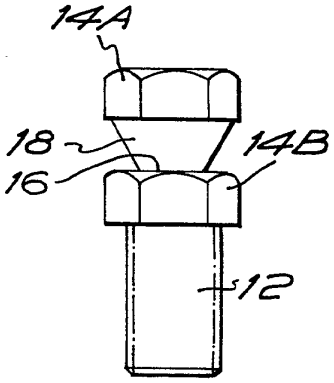


FIG. 3

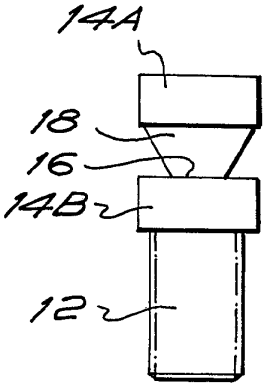


FIG. 5

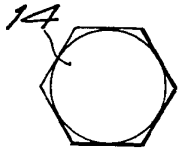


FIG. 2



FIG. 4

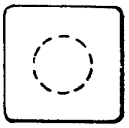


FIG. 6

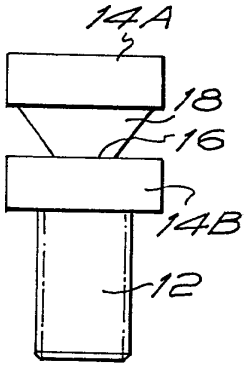


FIG. 7

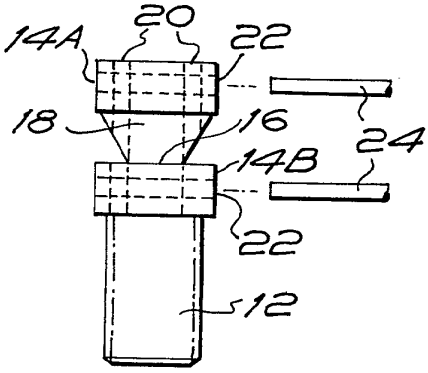


FIG. 9

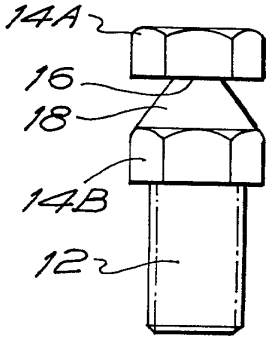


FIG. 11

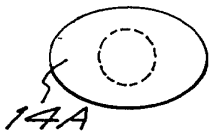


FIG. 8

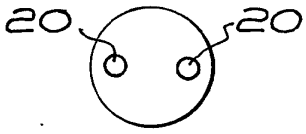


FIG. 10

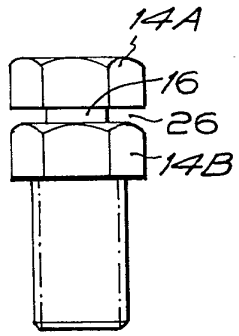


FIG.12

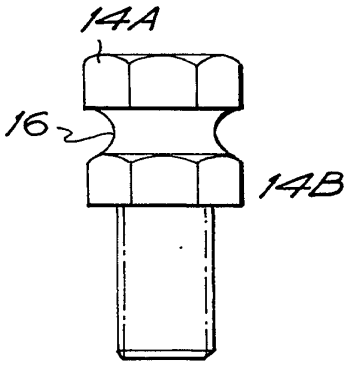


FIG.13

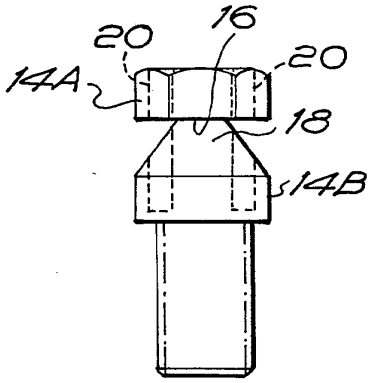


FIG.14

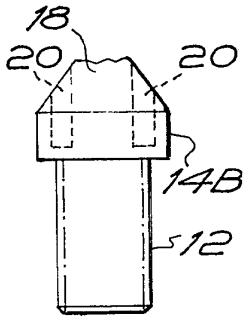


FIG.15

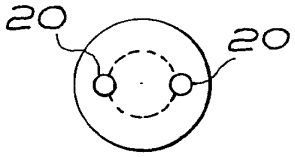


FIG.16

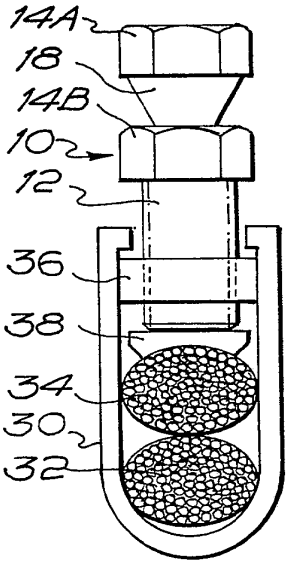


FIG.17

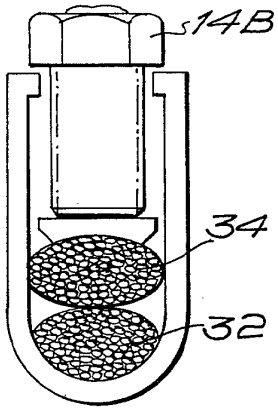


FIG.18

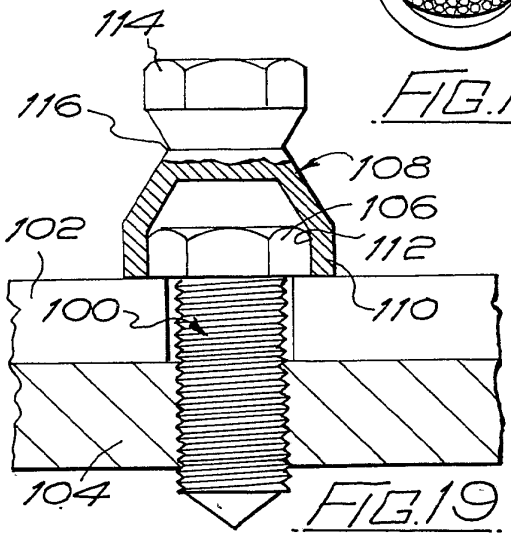


FIG.19

SPECIFICATION

Improvements relating to shear head screws or bolts

This invention relates to shear head screws or bolts, referred to hereinafter simply as shear head screws for convenience, or adaptors therefor, and concerns a novel form of shear head screw or adaptor to provide functionality not heretofore conceived in connection with shear head screws.

Essentially, shear head screws are utilised in circumstances where it is desired to turn a screw, in the tightening of same, to a torque of a predetermined value or lying within a predetermined range, the principle being that the screw is tightened until such times as the head thereof shears from the threaded portion of the screw in a predetermined region, the said region in relation to the screw thread pitch and diameter being designed so that shearing will take place at the predetermined torque.

These shear head screws have a wide application in electrical connectors for the connecting of electrical distribution cables, because in such connectors it is important that the torque applied to the screw which performs the clamping of the connector to another connector or to a connector body should be tightened to a predetermined torque reliably without the use of a torque meter. It is necessary in such application to have a predetermined torque which is neither too high nor too low, because if the torque is too high or too low then the electrical performance of the connector will be reduced unacceptably.

The disadvantage of a shear head screw is that when the head has been sheared from the threaded portion of the screw, it is difficult subsequently to remove the screw. This is not a problem in connection with many electrical connectors of the type referred to above, because such connectors are invariably included in shells or casing which are in any event filled with an encapsulating material such as a synthetic resin, and there is rarely if ever a requirement to disconnect an electrical connector once coupled.

However, the possibility of providing a shear head screw of a type which can be unscrewed represents a significant step forward in certain electrical connectors which are known as terminal connectors which couple supply cables to distribution boards, parts of which require replacement from time to time, but in any event a shear head screw which is capable of being unscrewed represents a considerable advantage in general engineering, because then the screw can be designed to shear at a particular torque, but the shearing of the head does not mean that the screw cannot subsequently be removed. A particularly suitable application for such screws is in internal combustion engines where such screws could be used with good effect for the connecting of the engine cylinder head to the cylinder block.

There is furthermore the general application that if a screw is a shear head screw but is capable of subsequently being unscrewed, then in all engineering applications the screw can be designed so that the head will shear before the threads shear, and this will prevent the application of screws to more than a predetermined design torque. In many instances in engineering and industry, fitters overtighten screws, causing stripping of the thread, or shearing of the head, with the consequent difficulties of screw removal.

The shear head screw in accordance with the present invention comprises a threaded stem, and at one end of the stem, there are two tool engaging sections for the turning of the screw, the said two sections being an outer section and an inner section as regards their relationship with the threaded stem, such sections being separated by a shear throat designed so that when the screw is turned, the outer section will shear from the remainder of the screw including the second section and threaded stem in the throat area before failure of the screw threaded stem, leaving the screw to be unscrewed by means of a suitable tool which can engage the second section.

Preferably, the said throat will be a reduced diameter region between the first and second sections.

The form of tool to be used in connection with the turning of the screw by engagement of the first and second sections may be any suitable, such as a spanner or socket wrench, and the said sections may be designed so that different tools are required to turn the screw by engagement of the first and second sections.

To achieve any predetermined shear torque at which the first section will shear from the remainder of the screw, will depend upon a number of factors including the material from which the screw is produced, the pitch and diameter of the thread of the threaded portion, and the cross sectional area of the shear throat. Particular screws will of course be designed for particular applications.

The principle of the invention as applied to screws as mentioned above, can also be applied to adaptors, in that an adaptor is drivably coupleable to a screw head, and has another portion which is adapted to be engaged by a tool, and between these portions is a shear area, so that turning of the screw through the medium of the adaptor transmits the torque across the shear area of the adaptor, so that the adaptor will shear at such area when the predetermined torque has been applied to the screw. This means that adaptors can be used with conventional screws, and can tighten same to predetermined torques. In this arrangement, adaptors can be made of different material from the screw being tightened.

Various embodiments of the invention will now be described, by way of example, with reference to the accompanying drawings, wherein:-

Figures 1 and *2* are a side elevation and plan of a shear head screw which is used extensively in electrical connectors;

Figures 3 and *4* are views similar to Figures 1 and 2 showing a first embodiment of the invention;

Figures 5 and *6*, *Figures 7* and *8*, and *Figures 9* and *10* show respectively three further embodiments of a shear head screw according to the invention, in a manner similar to Figures 3 and 4;

Figure 11 is a side elevation of a shear head screw according to another embodiment of the invention, showing an alternative formation;

Figures 12 and *13* respectively show, in two further embodiments of the invention, how the throat formation can be modified;

Figure 14 shows a side elevation of a screw according to yet another embodiment of the invention;

Figure 15 shows the screen of Figure 14 after shearing of same;

Figure 16 is a plan view of the shear head screw portion shown in Figure 15;

Figure 17 is a side elevation of an electrical connector showing how the screw according to Figures 3 and 4 is utilised;

Figure 18 shows the connector of Figure 17 after tightening of the screw and shearing of same; and

Figure 19 is a sectional elevation showing an adaptor according to the invention.

Referring to the drawings, where appropriate the same reference numerals, or the same reference numerals with suffix letters have been used throughout.

In Figure 1 there is shown a screw 10 which is of the shear head type in that it is provided with a threaded stem 12, a hexagonal head 14 and a reduced dimension throat 16 forming the shear area of the screw. The throat 16 connects the top of the threaded stem 12 to the head 14 by a frusto-conical section 18. The dimension of the throat 16 is smaller than at least the outer diameter of the thread of stem 12, and will usually be less than the inner diameter of the thread, to ensure that when the screw is tightened, the head 14 will shear from the stem 12 along the shear area 16, at a predetermined torque, which is related to the material of the screw, the diameter and pitch of the thread of stem 12, and the dimension of the throat 16, all of which can be calculated depending upon the application.

Figure 2 shows that the largest cross section of the screw is the head 14, and the screw can be produced from hexagonal bar of the dimension of the head 14.

Screws as shown in Figures 1 and 2 are widely used in electrical connectors as described herein.

The disadvantage of the screw shown in Figures 1 and 2 is that when the head has sheared from the threaded stem, the threaded stem cannot be unscrewed without considerable difficulty. The shear head screws of the present invention are such as to be capable of being unscrewed after the initial shearing has taken place.

In the embodiment of the invention shown in Figure 3, there are two sections 14A and 14B by which the screw can be turned, and the sections 14A and 14B are connected by frusto-conical portion 18 leading from the shear throat 16 located at one side of the section 14B. Figure 4 shows that the screw can be made from hexagonal bar stock. One use of the screw shown in Figures 3 and 4 will be described when referring to Figures 17 and 18.

Figures 5 and 6 show in a manner similar to Figures 3 and 4, a further embodiment of the invention, and illustrate that the sections 14A and 14B can be square instead of hexagonal, whilst Figures 7 and 8 show that the sections 14A and 14B may be oval, in which case a special tool may be required to turn the stem 12 by engaging either the section 14A or the section 14B. Figures 9 and 10 show that the sections 14A and 14B can in fact be circular, in which case the screw may be provided with axial holes 20 passing through both sections 14A and 14B, whereby turning of the screw to shear the section 14A would be by means of a special tool having two pins for engaging the holes 20. Figure 9 also shows that the sections 14A and 14B may be provided with radial holes 22 so that the screw can be turned by engaging either of the holes 22 with tommy bars 24.

In the arrangement of Figure 11, the only difference between this embodiment and the Figures 3 and 4 embodiment is that the section 18 is inverted, so that the shear throat 16 is adjacent to section 14A.

In the arrangement of Figure 12, the throat is defined by a radial slot 26, instead of a frusto-conical section 18, and in the arrangement of Figure 13, the shear section 16 is defined by waisting the section connecting sections 14A and 14B.

In each of the examples described, the shear head screw is applied initially by driving through the section 14A, until the section 14A shears from the remainder at the shear area 16, whereby the screw is tightened to a predetermined torque as indicated herein, and for the removal of the screw, a suitable tool is engaged with the section 14B, and the screw is unscrewed thereby.

As regards the arrangement shown in Figures 14 to 16, the screw illustrated has the first drive section 14A adapted for driving engagement by a tool of a first configuration, whilst the section 14B is such as to require a driving tool of a different configuration for the unscrewing of the screw, and indeed the section 14B is designed so that only a custom built tool will be capable of unscrewing the screw. This embodiment of the invention therefore is particularly effective for security applications where only possessors of the custom built tool can unscrew the screw. Specifically, the section 14A is hexagonal, whilst the section 14B is circular and the frusto-conical section 18 narrows from section 14B to section 14A defining the throat 16 adjacent section 14A. Axial holes 20 extend through the section 14A, the frusto-conical portion 18 and the section 14B as shown, and therefore when the section 14A has been sheared from the remainder as shown in Figure 15, only a tool with a frusto-conical cavity with appropriate drive pins therein can be used for unscrewing of the screw.

Figures 17 and 18 illustrate a typical application of the screw shown in Figures 3 and 4. In Figures 17 and 18, reference 30 indicates a rigid U-shaped, metal yoke, containing two stranded electrical conductors 32 and 34 which are to be electrically connected. The conductor wires are bared and placed in contact as shown, and a screw 10 as shown in Figures 3 and 4 is threaded in a bridge piece 36 and the lower end of the threaded stem 12 engages a pressure pad 38 of the same material as the yoke. To complete the connection, the screw is driven by the section 14A and thereby compressing the stranded

conductors as shown in Figure 18, until the section 14A and the frusto-conical section 18 shear from the remainder of the screw as shown in Figure 18, at the predetermined torque giving a pre-calculated compression between the conductors 32 and 34. To unscrew the screw, it is simply a matter of driving same by the remaining section 14B using the same tool.

When driving a screw of the invention by the outer section 14A, it may be necessary to locate a member around the section 14B, preventing driving engagement between the driving tool and section 14B, to ensure that the tightening torque will be applied through the shear throat area 16.

Shear head screws according to the present invention will have many applications.

Referring now to Figure 19, in this drawing a conventional screw 100 is shown as connecting two components 102 and 104, and mounted on the head 106 of the screw is an adaptor 108 having a socket portion 110 of which a hexagonal socket 112 drivingly engages the head 106 of the screw, and the socket furthermore has a hexagonal drive head 114, the said headed socket being connected by a reduced dimension throat region 116, which forms a shear area enabling the tightening of the screw 100 to a predetermined torque. As will be understood, the adaptor, which is a rigid metallic member, operates in that the screw 106 is tightened by the head 114, using a suitable tool, until such times as the adaptor shears at throat 116, the shearing torque being designed to give predetermined tightening of the screw 100. Other forms of adaptor can be devised, and the advantage of using an adaptor is that it can be made in a different or perhaps cheaper materials, and adaptors can for example be moulded in multiple cavity moulds, whereas screws such as screw 100, or screws 10 of previous embodiments, tend to require machining.

The screws and adaptors according to the invention will normally be fabricated in metal, but the invention is not to be considered limited to such material, as other materials, such as plastics materials can be used.

CLAIMS

1. A shear head screw comprising a threaded stem, and at one end of the stem, there are two tool engaging sections for the turning of the screw, the said two sections being an outer section and an inner section as regards their relationship with the threaded stem, such sections being separated by a shear throat designed so that when the screw is turned, the outer section will shear from the remainder of the screw including the second section and threaded stem in the throat area before failure of the screw threaded stem, leaving the screw to be unscrewed by means of a suitable tool which can engage the second section.

2. A screw according to Claim 1, wherein the throat is a reduced diameter region between the first and second sections.

3. A screw according to Claim 1 or 2, wherein the first and second sections are of hexagonal cross section and are adapted to be turned by suitable spanners.

4. A screw according to Claim 1, 2 or 3, wherein the throat is defined by the end of a tapered conical section between said inner and outer sections.

5. A screw according to Claim 4, wherein the conical section tapers towards the second section.

6. A shear head adaptor for tightening a screw comprising a first portion which is adapted to be engaged by a tool, and a coupling portion adapted to be coupled drivingly to a screw head, and between these portions is a shear area, so that turning of the screw through the medium of the adaptor transmits the torque across the shear area of the adaptor, so that the adaptor will shear at such area when the predetermined torque has been applied to the screw.

7. An adaptor according to Claim 6, wherein the section which is adapted to be coupled drivingly to a screw head comprises a hexagonal socket for receiving the screw head, and said portion adapted to be turned by a suitable tool comprises a hexagonal sectioned portion.

8. A shear head screw substantially as any of the embodiments described with reference to the accompanying drawings Figures 1 to 18.

9. An adaptor for tightening the screw substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to Figure 19 of the accompanying drawings.

Printed in the UK for HMSO, D8818935, 10/84, 7102.
Published by The Patent Office, 25 Southampton Buildings, London, WC2A 1AY, from which copies may be obtained.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	
Filing Date:	
Title of Invention:	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Roger P. Jackson
Filer:	Joshua Pranckun/Helen Miswell
Attorney Docket Number:	JAC023-667905

Filed as Large Entity

Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
UTILITY APPLICATION FILING	1011	1	320	320
UTILITY SEARCH FEE	1111	1	700	700
UTILITY EXAMINATION FEE	1311	1	800	800
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				
Miscellaneous:				
		Total in USD ($)		**1820**

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	41403081
Application Number:	17123499
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	2823
Title of Invention:	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Roger P. Jackson
Customer Number:	24030
Filer:	Joshua Pranckun/Helen Miswell
Filer Authorized By:	Joshua Pranckun
Attorney Docket Number:	JAC023-667905
Receipt Date:	16-DEC-2020
Filing Date:	
Time Stamp:	13:36:40
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	DA
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$1820
RAM confirmation Number	E2020BFD37084871
Deposit Account	501662
Authorized User	Helen Miswell
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: 37 CFR 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees) 37 CFR 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

37 CFR 1.19 (Document supply fees)

37 CFR 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal of New Application	Transmittal.pdf	114393 3cdeafff472e2362d0139f81a8fb6d1b537fde65	no	1
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Application Data Sheet	ApplicationDataSheet.pdf	120414 15fbb090bfc1f907345ed4152366ba6ef7e41dba	no	8
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied ADS fillable form					
3	Oath or Declaration filed	SignedDeclarations.pdf	129885 473943df12dc5e500d581a440f63f42b4215cee5	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Assignee showing of ownership per 37 CFR 3.73	StatementUnder373c.pdf	559744 83035be6a1d2ac12ea25b4e58420cef5ac556853	no	7
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Power of Attorney	PowerofAttorney.pdf	527403 2926c9de8c1306f80a41a2a16d82f8da3ab490c4	no	1
Warnings:					
Information:					
6		Specification.pdf	289407 7edb37f7d219af6b303823a4cb2ea7e53c54ec2b	yes	38

	Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description		
	Document Description	**Start**	**End**
	Specification	1	33
	Claims	34	37
	Abstract	38	38

Warnings:					
Information:					
7	Drawings-only black and white line drawings	Figures.pdf	10329272 cc4b014f0153acde5d06ccbda19d8aec8aaa2394a	no	19
Warnings:					
Information:					
8		InformationDisclosureStatement.pdf	203704 72b8425d25b30ebfe97785fb4a00509d76791d94	yes	15

	Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description		
	Document Description	**Start**	**End**
	Transmittal Letter	1	5
	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	6	7
	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	8	15

Warnings:					
Information:					
9	Foreign Reference	WO9513755A1.pdf	569048 776bc1472014493dfb752b751497459f857de332	no	19
Warnings:					
Information:					
10	Foreign Reference	WO02076314A1.pdf	869985 37b8a31b413b02de25e047ebf38108891ce2b9b8	no	26
Warnings:					
Information:					

11	Foreign Reference	DE20207850U1.pdf	914358 972f1d0ab0cd4832b440654a6ece21fa7f5ace4f	no	42
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	Foreign Reference	EP1316294B1.pdf	666292 8b82ed0b783c58ee878a8bbd968f37d1270b15f1	no	14
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	Foreign Reference	EP1570796B1.pdf	1011229 1e8c7fa2e518ef1ac3edf87ff0f693e859ae8322	no	18
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	Foreign Reference	GB2140523A.pdf	685400 1b953617b5ada126631355aa38ad02935079b2be	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	35383 3c324c63c06101a788cd25a815c749f3d8bae5d3	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
		Total Files Size (in bytes):	17025917		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

PTO/AIA/15 (10-17)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL

(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))

Attorney Docket No.	JAC023-667905
First Named Inventor	Roger P. Jackson
Title	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH S
Priority Mail Express® Label No.	Via EFS Web

APPLICATION ELEMENTS

See MPEP chapter 600 concerning utility patent application contents.

1. ☐ **Fee Transmittal Form** (PTO/SB/17 or equivalent)
2. ☐ **Applicant asserts small entity status.** See 37 CFR 1.27
3. ☐ **Applicant certifies micro entity status.** See 37 CFR 1.29. Applicant must attach form PTO/SB/15A or B or equivalent.
4. ☑ **Specification** [*Total Pages* 38] Both the claims and abstract must start on a new page. *(See MPEP § 608.01(a) for information on the preferred arrangement)*
5. ☑ **Drawing(s)** (35 U.S.C. 113) [*Total Sheets* 19]
6. **Inventor's Oath or Declaration** [*Total Pages* 2] *(including substitute statements under 37 CFR 1.64 and assignments serving as an oath or declaration under 37 CFR 1.63(e))*
   a. ☐ Newly executed (original or copy)
   b. ☑ A copy from a prior application (37 CFR 1.63(d))
7. ☑ **Application Data Sheet** ** See note below.* See 37 CFR 1.76 (PTO/AIA/14 or equivalent)
8. **CD-ROM or CD-R** in duplicate, large table, or Computer Program (*Appendix*)
   ☐ Landscape Table on CD
9. **Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Submission** (*if applicable, items a. – c. are required*)
   a. ☐ Computer Readable Form (CRF)
   b. ☐ Specification Sequence Listing on:
      i. ☐ CD-ROM or CD-R (2 copies); or
      ii. ☐ Paper
   c. ☐ Statements verifying identity of above copies

ADDRESS TO: **Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450**

ACCOMPANYING APPLICATION PAPERS

10. ☐ **Assignment Papers** (cover sheet & document(s)) Name of Assignee _____
11. ☑ **37 CFR 3.73(c) Statement** (*when there is an assignee*) ☑ **Power of Attorney**
12. ☐ **English Translation Document** (*if applicable*)
13. ☑ **Information Disclosure Statement** (PTO/SB/08 or PTO-1449)
    ☐ Copies of citations attached
14. ☐ **Preliminary Amendment**
15. ☐ **Return Receipt Postcard** (*MPEP § 503*) (*Should be specifically itemized*)
16. ☐ **Certified Copy of Priority Document(s)** (*if foreign priority is claimed*)
17. ☐ **Nonpublication Request** Under 35 U.S.C. 122(b)(2)(B)(i). Applicant must attach form PTO/SB/35 or equivalent.
18. ☑ **Other:** Petition to Make Special Based on Age

*Note: (1) Benefit claims under 37 CFR 1.78 and foreign priority claims under 1.55 **must** be included in an Application Data Sheet (ADS).
(2) For applications filed under 35 U.S.C. 111, the application must contain an ADS specifying the applicant if the applicant is an assignee, person to whom the inventor is under an obligation to assign, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter. See 37 CFR 1.46(b).

19. CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

☑ The address associated with Customer Number: 24030 **OR** ☐ Correspondence address below

Name					
Address					
City		State		Zip Code	
Country		Telephone		Email	

Signature	/Joshua J. Pranckun/	Date	December 16, 2020
Name (Print/Type)	Joshua J. Pranckun	Registration No. (Attorney/Agent)	70712

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.53(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/14 (02-18)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	

The application data sheet is part of the provisional or nonprovisional application for which it is being submitted. The following form contains the bibliographic data arranged in a format specified by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as outlined in 37 CFR 1.76.
This document may be completed electronically and submitted to the Office in electronic format using the Electronic Filing System (EFS) or the document may be printed and included in a paper filed application.

Secrecy Order 37 CFR 5.2:

☐ Portions or all of the application associated with this Application Data Sheet may fall under a Secrecy Order pursuant to 37 CFR 5.2 (Paper filers only. Applications that fall under Secrecy Order may not be filed electronically.)

Inventor Information:

Inventor 1 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Roger	P.	Jackson	

Residence Information (Select One) ◉ US Residency ○ Non US Residency ○ Active US Military Service

City	Prairie Village	State/Province	KS	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	4706 W. 86th Street		
Address 2			
City	Prairie Village	State/Province	KS
Postal Code	66207	Country	US

Inventor 2 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	James	L.	Surber	

Residence Information (Select One) ◉ US Residency ○ Non US Residency ○ Active US Military Service

City	Kansas City	State/Province	KS	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	1434 S. 88th Street		
Address 2			
City	Kansas City	State/Province	KS
Postal Code	66111	Country	US

All Inventors Must Be Listed - Additional Inventor Information blocks may be generated within this form by selecting the **Add** button. Add

Correspondence Information:

Enter either Customer Number or complete the Correspondence Information section below.
For further information see 37 CFR 1.33(a).

PTO/AIA/14 (02-18)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	

☐ **An Address is being provided for the correspondence Information of this application.**

Customer Number	24030		
Email Address	patentdocketing@polsinelli.com	Add Email	Remove Email

Application Information:

Title of the Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES		
Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905	**Small Entity Status Claimed** ☐	
Application Type	Nonprovisional		
Subject Matter	Utility		
Total Number of Drawing Sheets (if any)	19	**Suggested Figure for Publication (if any)**	2

Filing By Reference:

Only complete this section when filing an application by reference under 35 U.S.C. 111(c) and 37 CFR 1.57(a). Do not complete this section if application papers including a specification and any drawings are being filed. Any domestic benefit or foreign priority information must be provided in the appropriate section(s) below (i.e., "Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information" and "Foreign Priority Information").

For the purposes of a filing date under 37 CFR 1.53(b), the description and any drawings of the present application are replaced by this reference to the previously filed application, subject to conditions and requirements of 37 CFR 1.57(a).

Application number of the previously filed application	Filing date (YYYY MM DD)	Intellectual Property Authority or Country

Publication Information:

☐ Request Early Publication (Fee required at time of Request 37 CFR 1.219)

☐ **Request Not to Publish.** I hereby request that the attached application not be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) and certify that the invention disclosed in the attached application **has not and will not** be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication at eighteen months after filing.

Representative Information:

Representative information should be provided for all practitioners having a power of attorney in the application. Providing this information in the Application Data Sheet does not constitute a power of attorney in the application (see 37 CFR 1.32). Either enter Customer Number or complete the Representative Name section below. If both sections are completed the customer Number will be used for the Representative Information during processing.

Please Select One:	◉ Customer Number	○ US Patent Practitioner	○ Limited Recognition (37 CFR 11.9)
Customer Number	24030		

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	

Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information:

This section allows for the applicant to either claim benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, 365(c), or 386(c) or indicate National Stage entry from a PCT application. Providing benefit claim information in the Application Data Sheet constitutes the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or 120, and 37 CFR 1.78.
When referring to the current application, please leave the "Application Number" field blank.

Prior Application Status	Pending		Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
	Continuation of	16779304	2020-01-31

Prior Application Status	Patented				Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
16779304	Continuation of	15964502	2018-04-27	10548641	2020-02-04

Prior Application Status	Patented				Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
15964502	Continuation of	15469076	2017-03-24	9956004	2018-05-01

Prior Application Status	Patented				Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
15469076	Continuation of	14566356	2014-12-10	9636146	2017-05-02

Prior Application Status	Patented				Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
14566356	Continuation of	13694849	2013-01-10	8911479	2014-12-16

Prior Application Status	Expired		Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
13694849	Claims benefit of provisional	61634361	2012-02-28

Prior Application Status	Expired		Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
13694849	Claims benefit of provisional	61631746	2012-01-10

Additional Domestic Benefit/National Stage Data may be generated within this form by selecting the **Add** button.

Foreign Priority Information:

PTO/AIA/14 (02-18)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	

This section allows for the applicant to claim priority to a foreign application. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the claim for priority as required by 35 U.S.C. 119(b) and 37 CFR 1.55. When priority is claimed to a foreign application that is eligible for retrieval under the priority document exchange program (PDX)[i] the information will be used by the Office to automatically attempt retrieval pursuant to 37 CFR 1.55(i)(1) and (2). Under the PDX program, applicant bears the ultimate responsibility for ensuring that a copy of the foreign application is received by the Office from the participating foreign intellectual property office, or a certified copy of the foreign priority application is filed, within the time period specified in 37 CFR 1.55(g)(1).

Remove

Application Number	Country[i]	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Access Code[i] (if applicable)

Additional Foreign Priority Data may be generated within this form by selecting the **Add** button.

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications

☐ This application (1) claims priority to or the benefit of an application filed before March 16, 2013 and (2) also contains, or contained at any time, a claim to a claimed invention that has an effective filing date on or after March 16, 2013.
NOTE: By providing this statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78, this application, with a filing date on or after March 16, 2013, will be examined under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA.

PTO/AIA/14 (02-18)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	

Authorization or Opt-Out of Authorization to Permit Access:

When this Application Data Sheet is properly signed and filed with the application, applicant has provided written authority to permit a participating foreign intellectual property (IP) office access to the instant application-as-filed (see paragraph A in subsection 1 below) and the European Patent Office (EPO) access to any search results from the instant application (see paragraph B in subsection 1 below).

Should applicant choose not to provide an authorization identified in subsection 1 below, applicant **must opt-out** of the authorization by checking the corresponding box A or B or both in subsection 2 below.

NOTE: This section of the Application Data Sheet is **ONLY** reviewed and processed with the **INITIAL** filing of an application. After the initial filing of an application, an Application Data Sheet cannot be used to provide or rescind authorization for access by a foreign IP office(s). Instead, Form PTO/SB/39 or PTO/SB/69 must be used as appropriate.

1. Authorization to Permit Access by a Foreign Intellectual Property Office(s)

A. Priority Document Exchange (PDX) - Unless box A in subsection 2 (opt-out of authorization) is checked, the undersigned hereby **grants the USPTO authority** to provide the European Patent Office (EPO), the Japan Patent Office (JPO), the Korean Intellectual Property Office (KIPO), the State Intellectual Property Office of the People's Republic of China (SIPO), the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO), and any other foreign intellectual property office participating with the USPTO in a bilateral or multilateral priority document exchange agreement in which a foreign application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed, access to: (1) the instant patent application-as-filed and its related bibliographic data, (2) any foreign or domestic application to which priority or benefit is claimed by the instant application and its related bibliographic data, and (3) the date of filing of this Authorization. See 37 CFR 1.14(h)(1).

B. Search Results from U.S. Application to EPO - Unless box B in subsection 2 (opt-out of authorization) is checked, the undersigned hereby **grants the USPTO authority** to provide the EPO access to the bibliographic data and search results from the instant patent application when a European patent application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed. See 37 CFR 1.14(h)(2).

The applicant is reminded that the EPO's Rule 141(1) EPC (European Patent Convention) requires applicants to submit a copy of search results from the instant application without delay in a European patent application that claims priority to the instant application.

2. Opt-Out of Authorizations to Permit Access by a Foreign Intellectual Property Office(s)

☐ A. Applicant **DOES NOT** authorize the USPTO to permit a participating foreign IP office access to the instant application-as-filed. If this box is checked, the USPTO will not be providing a participating foreign IP office with any documents and information identified in subsection 1A above.

☐ B. Applicant **DOES NOT** authorize the USPTO to transmit to the EPO any search results from the instant patent application. If this box is checked, the USPTO will not be providing the EPO with search results from the instant application.

NOTE: Once the application has published or is otherwise publicly available, the USPTO may provide access to the application in accordance with 37 CFR 1.14.

PTO/AIA/14 (02-18)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	

Applicant Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

Applicant 1

If the applicant is the inventor (or the remaining joint inventor or inventors under 37 CFR 1.45), this section should not be completed. The information to be provided in this section is the name and address of the legal representative who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.43; or the name and address of the assignee, person to whom the inventor is under an obligation to assign the invention, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.46. If the applicant is an applicant under 37 CFR 1.46 (assignee, person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest) together with one or more joint inventors, then the joint inventor or inventors who are also the applicant should be identified in this section.

Clear

◉ Assignee	○ Legal Representative under 35 U.S.C. 117	○ Joint Inventor
○ Person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign.	○ Person who shows sufficient proprietary interest	

If applicant is the legal representative, indicate the authority to file the patent application, the inventor is:

Name of the Deceased or Legally Incapacitated Inventor:

If the Applicant is an Organization check here. ☐

Prefix	**Given Name**	Middle Name	**Family Name**	Suffix
	Roger	P.	Jackson	

Mailing Address Information For Applicant:

Address 1	4706 W. 86th Street		
Address 2			
City	Prairie Village	**State/Province**	KS
Country US		Postal Code	66207
Phone Number		Fax Number	
Email Address			

Additional Applicant Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.

Assignee Information including Non-Applicant Assignee Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

PTO/AIA/14 (02-18)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	

Assignee 1

Complete this section if assignee information, including non-applicant assignee information, is desired to be included on the patent application publication. An assignee-applicant identified in the "Applicant Information" section will appear on the patent application publication as an applicant. For an assignee-applicant, complete this section only if identification as an assignee is also desired on the patent application publication.

If the Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee is an Organization check here. ☐

Prefix	**Given Name**	Middle Name	**Family Name**	Suffix
	Roger	P.	Jackson	

Mailing Address Information For Assignee including Non-Applicant Assignee:

Address 1	4706 W. 86th Street		
Address 2			
City	Prairie Village	**State/Province**	KS
Country i	US	Postal Code	66207
Phone Number		Fax Number	
Email Address			

Additional Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.

Signature:

NOTE: This Application Data Sheet must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33(b). **However, if this Application Data Sheet is submitted with the INITIAL filing of the application and either box A or B is not checked in subsection 2 of the "Authorization or Opt-Out of Authorization to Permit Access" section, then this form must also be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.14(c).**

This Application Data Sheet **must** be signed by a patent practitioner if one or more of the applicants is a **juristic entity** (e.g., corporation or association). If the applicant is two or more joint inventors, this form must be signed by a patent practitioner, **all** joint inventors who are the applicant, or one or more joint inventor-applicants who have been given power of attorney (e.g., see USPTO Form PTO/AIA/81) on behalf of **all** joint inventor-applicants.

See 37 CFR 1.4(d) for the manner of making signatures and certifications.

Signature	/Joshua J. Pranckun/			Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2020-12-16
First Name	Joshua J.	Last Name	Pranckun	Registration Number	70712

Additional Signature may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.

PTO/AIA/14 (02-18)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	JAC023-667905
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES	

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.76. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 23 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application data sheet form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

PTO/AIA/01 (06-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	MULTI-START CLOSURES FOR OPEN IMPLANTS

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to:

- [■] The attached application, or
- [ ] United States application or PCT international application number _____

filed on _____.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor: Roger P. Jackson Date (Optional) :_____

Signature: Roger P. Jackson

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/01 (06-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	MULTI-START CLOSURES FOR OPEN IMPLANTS

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to:

- [■] The attached application, or
- [ ] United States application or PCT international application number _____

  filed on _____.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor: James L. Surber Date (Optional) :_____

Signature: _____

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/96 (08-12)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

Applicant/Patent Owner: Roger P. Jackson

Application No./Patent No.: _____ Filed/Issue Date: _____

Titled: MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

Roger P. Jackson, a individual

(Name of Assignee) (Type of Assignee, e.g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.)

states that, for the patent application/patent identified above, it is (choose **one** of options 1, 2, 3 or 4 below):

1. ☑ The assignee of the entire right, title, and interest.

2. ☐ An assignee of less than the entire right, title, and interest (check applicable box):

   ☐ The extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest is _____%. Additional Statement(s) by the owners holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for 100% of the ownership interest.

   ☐ There are unspecified percentages of ownership. The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title and interest are:

   Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

3. ☐ The assignee of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete assignment from one of the joint inventors was made). The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title, and interest are:

   Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

4. ☐ The recipient, via a court proceeding or the like (*e.g.*, bankruptcy, probate), of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete transfer of ownership interest was made). The certified document(s) showing the transfer is attached.

The interest identified in option 1, 2 or 3 above (not option 4) is evidenced by either (choose **one** of options A or B below):

A. ☑ An assignment from the inventor(s) of the patent application/patent identified above. The assignment was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

B. ☐ A chain of title from the inventor(s), of the patent application/patent identified above, to the current assignee as follows:

1. From: _____ To: _____

   The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

   Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

2. From: _____ To: _____

   The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

   Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 3.73(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450**.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/96 (08-12)
Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

3. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

4. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

5. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

6. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

☐ Additional documents in the chain of title are listed on a supplemental sheet(s).

☑ As required by 37 CFR 3.73(c)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, or concurrently is being, submitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.11.

[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e., a true copy of the original assignment document(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3, to record the assignment in the records of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

/Joshua J. Pranckun/	December 16, 2020
Signature	Date
Joshua J. Pranckun	70712
Printed or Typed Name	Title or Registration Number

ASSIGNMENT

PARTIES TO THE ASSIGNMENT:

Assignor:

James L. Surber
Kansas City, Kansas
United States of America

Assignee:

Roger P. Jackson
4706 W. 86th St.
Prairie Village, Kansas 66207
United States of America

PATENT APPLICATIONS AND PATENTS SUBJECT TO THE ASSIGNMENT:

Identified in Schedule I attached hereto.

WHEREAS, Assignor, identified above, desires to assign any and all right, title and interest to the patents and applications identified in **Schedule I** attached hereto (collectively the "Patents"), and any provisional, nonprovisional, continuation, continuation-in-part, divisional, international, foreign, regional and convention applications corresponding thereto, and any and all Letters Patent of the United States and countries and regions foreign thereto which may grant or have granted thereto or be lodged in relation thereto, any reissue or reexamination thereof or to be obtained therefor, any renewals, or substitutes thereof, and any and all priority rights or priority claims, International Convention rights, any and all rights to collect past damages for infringement of any and all Letters Patent of the United States and countries and regions foreign thereto which may be published, which may grant, or have granted thereto or be lodged in relation thereto, and other benefits accruing to or to accrue to Assignor with respect to the filing of applications for patents or securing of patents in the United States and countries foreign thereto (the "Patent Rights");

WHEREAS, Assignee, identified above, desires to acquire any and all, right, title, and interest of Assignor in and to the Patents, the Patent Rights, and in, to, and under any and all Letters Patent to be obtained therefor;

NOW THEREFORE, for the sum of $1.00 and other good and valuable consideration to Assignor in hand paid, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, Assignor has sold, assigned, and transferred and by these presents does hereby sell, assign and transfer to the said Assignee, and said Assignee's legal representatives, successors and assigns, any and all of the entire right, title and interest in and to the Patents, Patent Rights, and any and all Letters Patents to be obtained therefor;

UPON SAID CONSIDERATION, the Assignor hereby covenants and agrees with the said Assignee that he will not execute any writing or do any act whatsoever conflicting with these presents, and that he will, at any time upon request, without further or additional consideration, but at the expense of the said Assignee, execute such additional assignments

and other writings and do such additional acts as said Assignee may deem necessary or desirable to perfect the Assignee's enjoyment of this grant, and render all necessary assistance in making application for and obtaining original, continuations, continuations-in-part, continuing prosecutions, divisionals, renewals, reissues, reexamined or extended Letters Patent of the United States, or of any and all foreign countries, on said Patent Rights, and execute confirmatory assignments or acknowledgments of this assignment as necessary for full enjoyment of the Patent Rights and for recording in foreign patent offices, and in enforcing any rights or choses in action accruing as a result of such Patent Rights, by giving testimony in any proceedings or transactions involving such Patent Rights, and by executing preliminary statements and other affidavits, it being understood that the foregoing covenant and agreement shall bind, and inure to the benefit of, the assigns and legal representatives of both parties;

UPON SAID CONSIDERATION, Assignor represents and warrants that Assignor has the right, title, and authority to execute this Assignment and to convey any and all right, title, and interest in the Patent Rights, and that Assignor has not conveyed nor will convey hereafter all or part of the Patent Rights to a third party;

ASSIGNOR HEREBY AUTHORIZES said Assignee, its successors, and assigns, or anyone it may properly designate, to apply for Letters Patent in the U.S. and any and all foreign countries and regions, in its own name if desired, and additionally to claim priority to the filing date of the Patents and Patent Applications and otherwise take advantage of the provisions of any international conventions.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Assignor hereunto has executed this Assignment on the date indicated below.

Date: 2/22/2016 By: _____
James L. Surber

ACCEPTANCE OF ASSIGNMENT

The Assignee hereby acknowledges and accepts the foregoing assignment of rights by Assignor.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, the Assignee confirms its acceptance on the date set forth below.

Date: 2.22.16

Roger P. Jackson

Schedule I

List of Assigned Patents

U.S. Issued Patents

Patent No.	Issue Date	App. No.	Filing Date	Title
8,852,239	10/07/2014	14/181,998	02/17/2014	SAGITTAL ANGLE SCREW WITH INTEGRAL SHANK AND RECEIVER
8,911,478	12/16/2014	14/086,728	11/21/2013	SPLAY CONTROL CLOSURE FOR OPEN BONE ANCHOR
8,926,672	01/06/2015	14/086,079	11/21/2013	SPLAY CONTROL CLOSURE FOR OPEN BONE ANCHOR

U.S. Patent Applications

App. No.	Filing Date	Title
62/137,707	03/24/2015	BONE ANCHOR HAVING A SNAP-FIT ASSEMBLY COUPLING AN ANCHOR HEAD TO AN ANCHOR SHANK
62/137,713	03/24/2015	BONE ANCHOR HAVING A SNAP-FIT ASSEMBLY COUPLING AN ANCHOR HEAD TO AN ANCHOR SHANK
62/194,955	07/21/2015	BONE ANCHOR ASSEMBLIES HAVING NON-PIVOTING RETAINERS AND PIVOTING SHANKS, SOME WITH PIVOTING RETAINERS
62/200,491	08/03/2015	MODULAR MULTI-FUNCTIONAL BONE ANCHOR RECEIVER ASSEMBLIES HAVING PRE-LOADED PIVOTING RETAINERS FOR CONNECTING WITH UNIVERSAL SHANK HEADS HAVING CYLINDRICAL, CONICAL, AND CURVATE CAPTURE STRUCTURES
62/200,501	08/03/2015	MODULAR MULTI-FUNCTIONAL BONE ANCHOR RECEIVER ASSEMBLIES HAVING NON-PIVOTING RETAINERS FOR CONNECTING WITH A UNIVERSAL SHANK HEAD
13/896,842	05/17/2013	POLYAXIAL BONE ANCHOR WITH POP-ON SHANK, FRICTION FIT RETAINER AND WINGED INSERT
14/061,393	10/23/2013	POLYAXIAL BONE ANCHOR WITH POP-ON MULTI-THREAD SHANK, SOME WITH DIAMETRIC INTERFERENCE FIT INSERTS
14/164,882	01/27/2014	POLYAXIAL BONE ANCHOR WITH RECEIVER WITH SPHERIC EDGE FOR FRICTION FIT
14/164,952	01/27/2014	DUAL MEDICAL IMPLANT CLOSURE DRIVE SYSTEM
14/521,030	10/22/2014	CERVICAL BONE ANCHOR WITH COLLET RETAINER AND OUTER LOCKING SLEEVE
14/566,356	12/10/2014	MULTI-START CLOSURES FOR OPEN IMPLANTS
14/567,217	12/11/2014	SPLAY CONTROL CLOSURE FOR OPEN BONE ANCHOR

App. No.	Filing Date	Title
14/569,142	12/12/2014	BONE ANCHOR CLOSURE PIVOT-SPLAY EFFECT SHIFTING GUIDE AND ADVANCEMENT STRUCTURE WITH MODIFIED SQUARE THREAD
14/575,337	12/18/2014	SPLAY CONTROL CLOSURE FOR OPEN BONE ANCHOR
14/581,165	12/23/2014	BONE ANCHOR CLOSURE PIVOT-SPLAY CONTROL FLANGE FORM GUIDE AND ADVANCEMENT STRUCTURE
14/591,651	01/07/2015	BI-RADIAL POP-ON CERVICAL BONE ANCHOR
14/658,721	03/16/2015	POLYAXIAL BONE ANCHOR WITH POP-ON SHANK, FULLY CONSTRAINED FRICTION FIT RETAINER AND LOCK AND RELEASE INSERT
14/730,981	06/04/2015	POLYAXIAL BONE ANCHOR WITH INSERT GUIDES
14/731,064	06/04/2015	POLYAXIAL BONE ANCHOR WITH POLYMER SLEEVE
14/674,517	03/31/2015	POLYAXIAL BONE ANCHOR WITH RETAINER WITH NOTCH FOR MONO-AXIAL MOTION
14/872,621	10/01/2015	POLYAXIAL BONE ANCHOR WITH POP-ON SHANK, FRICTION FIT RETAINER WITH LOW PROFILE EDGE LOCK
14/977,430	12/21/2015	SPINAL CONNECTING MEMBERS WITH TENSIONED CORDS AND RIGID SLEEVES FOR ENGAGING COMPRESSION INSERTS

PTO/AIA/82 (07-12)
Approved for use through 11/30/2014. OMB 0651-0035
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

POWER OF ATTORNEY TO PROSECUTE APPLICATIONS BEFORE THE USPTO

I hereby revoke all previous powers of attorney given in the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c).

I hereby appoint:

■ Practitioners associated with Customer Number: 24030

OR

☐ Practitioner(s) named below (if more than ten patent practitioners are to be named, then a customer number must be used):

Name	Registration Number

Name	Registration Number

As attorney(s) or agent(s) to represent the undersigned before the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in connection with any and all patent applications assigned only to the undersigned according to the USPTO assignment records or assignments documents attached to this form in accordance with 37 CFR 3.73(c).

Please change the correspondence address for the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) to:

■ The address associated with Customer Number: 24030

OR

☐

Firm or Individual Name			
Address			
City		State	Zip
Country			
Telephone		Email	

Assignee Name and Address: Roger P. Jackson
4708 W. 86th St.
Prairie Village, Kansas 66207

A copy of this form, together with a statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) (Form PTO/AIA/96 or equivalent) is required to be Filed in each application in which this form is used. The statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) may be completed by one of The practitioners appointed in this form, and must identify the application in which this Power of Attorney is to be filed.

SIGNATURE of Assignee of Record

The individual whose signature and title is supplied below is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee

Signature	Roger P. Jackson	Date	3-6-16
Name	Roger P. Jackson	Telephone	
Title	Assignee		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.31, 1.32 and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 3 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

[0001] The present application is a continuation of U.S. Patent Application No. 16/779,304, filed January 31, 2020, which is a continuation of U.S. Patent Application No. 15/964,502, filed April 27, 2018, now U.S. Patent No. 10, 548,641, which is a continuation of U.S. Patent Application No. 15/469,076, filed March 24, 2017, now U.S. Patent No. 9,956,004, which is a continuation of U.S. Patent Application No. 14/566,356, filed December 10, 2014, now U.S. Patent No. 9,636,146, which is a continuation of U.S. Patent Application No. 13/694,849, filed January 10, 2013, now U.S. Patent No. 8,911,479, issued December 16, 2014, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/631,746, filed January 10, 2012 and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/634,361, filed February 28, 2012, all of which are incorporated by reference herein for all purposes.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

[0002] The present invention is directed to structure for joining together parts of a medical implant, in particular to closure mechanisms for use with open bone anchors in spinal surgery, and in some embodiments thereof, for use with spinal bone anchors such as polyaxial screws.

[0003] Bone anchors, such as bone screws and hooks are utilized in many types of spinal surgery in order to secure various implants to vertebrae along the spinal column for the purpose of stabilizing and/or adjusting spinal alignment. For example, the most common mechanism for providing vertebral support is to implant bone screws into certain bones which then in turn support a rod or are supported by the rod. Although both closed-ended and open-ended bone anchors are known, open-ended anchors are particularly well suited for connections to longitudinal connecting members such as hard, soft or deformable rods, dynamic or elastic connectors and connector arms, because such rods or other connector members do not need to be passed through a closed bore, but rather can be laid or urged into an open channel within a receiver or head of such a bone anchor. Generally, the anchors must be inserted into the bone as an integral unit or a preassembled unit, in the form of a shank or hook and connected pivotal receiver. In some instances, a portion of such a preassembled unit, such as a shank of a polyaxial bone screw assembly, may be independently implanted into bone, followed by push- or pop-on assembly of a receiver portion of the unit.

[0004] Typical open-ended bone screws include a threaded shank with a head or receiver having a pair of parallel projecting branches or arms which form a yoke with a U-shaped slot or channel to receive a rod or other longitudinal connecting member. Hooks and other types of connectors, as are used in spinal fixation techniques, may also include similar open ends for receiving rods or portions of other fixation and stabilization structure. The open-ended head or rod receiver portion of such implants typically includes a pair of spaced arms forming a channel closed by a closure member after the rod or other longitudinal connecting member is placed in the channel. Known closures include slide-on types, twist-on varieties that are rotated ninety degrees to a locked in position, and a variety of single start helically wound guide and advancement structures including, for example, thread forms having v-thread, reverse-angle buttress or square thread forms, to name a few, as well as other non-threadlike helically wound forms. Sometimes threaded plugs are utilized with outer threaded nuts to prevent splaying of the receiver arms.

[0005] As indicated above, the force required to press a closure structure down onto a rod or other connector located between arms of an open implant is considerable. Even though a head or receiver portion of an open polyaxial bone anchor may be pivoted in a direction to make it easier for the arms of the open implant to receive a rod or other connector, spinal misalignments, irregularities and the placement of other surgical tools make it difficult to place the rod or other connector between the arms of the implant while a closure structure is mated with the open implant as well as used to push the rod or other connector downwardly into the implant. For example, when the closure is a cylindrical plug having a single start helically wound guide and advancement structure, such structure must be aligned with mating structure on one of the implant arms and then rotated until a portion of the structure is captured by mating guide and advancement structure on both arms of the implant, all the while the closure is being pressed down on the rod while other forces are pushing and pulling the rod back out of the implant. Integral or mono-axial open implants that cannot be pivoted to receive the rod are even more difficult to manipulate during the initial placement of the rod and initial mating rotation of a closure plug between the spaced, open arms of the implant. Therefore, extraordinary forces are placed on the implant and closure plug while the surgeon either pushes down on the rod or pulls up on the bone to get the rod in position between the implant arms and to initially push down upon the rod with the closure plug.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[0006] A closure structure, top or plug of the invention for insertion between spaced arms of an open medical implant includes one or more helically wound guide and advancement features, each feature having a start surface or structure located at or near a bottom surface of the closure plug, each start structure simultaneously engaging and being captured by each of the spaced arms of the open implant upon initial rotation of the closure structure with respect to the open implant arms. According to an aspect of the invention, a double-start closure is disclosed having two helically wound forms thereon, each form having a start structure for simultaneously engaging a mating helical form on a respective open implant arm. Each time the illustrated duel- or double-start closure plug is rotated one turn (three hundred sixty degrees) between the implant arms, the closure plug advances axially into the implant and toward the rod by a width of two helical forms. The helically wound forms of the multi-start closure spiral around a cylindrical plug body thereof to an extent that the closure rotates over ninety degrees to fully or substantially receive the entire closure plug between the arms of the open implant. The illustrated closure is sized for at least one complete rotation (three hundred sixty degrees) of the plug with respect to the open implant to substantially receive the plug between the implant arms. Multi-start closures of the invention may have two or more coarse or fine helical forms, resulting in fewer or greater forms per axial distance spiraling about the closure plug body and thus resulting in plugs that rotate less (when more coarse) or more (when thin or fine) than one complete rotation to be fully received between the implant arms, typically, at least a ninety-one degree rotation is preferred.

[0007] An illustrated multi-start closure and mating open implant is in the form of non-threaded, interlocking flange forms. Also disclosed are multi-start closure structures provided with helically wound forms of other geometry, including, but not limited to helically wound threads such as reverse angle, buttress, square and v-threads. The multi-start closure may be cannulated for minimally invasive surgical applications.

[0008] Another illustrated multi-start closure embodiment of the invention is shown with a bone screw assembly having an open receiver with a pair of opposed arms, each arm having guide and advancement structure for simultaneous mating engagement with a start of the helically wound multi-start closure. A further embodiment according to the invention includes an open bone anchor receiver having integral upwardly extending break-off tabs that also have the guide and advancement structure for mating with the multi-start closure. A further embodiment

includes an attachable/detachable guide tool cooperating with such a multi-start open receiver, the tool having inner guide and advancement structures located near a bottom thereof for rotatably and matingly receiving the multi-start closure and being synchronized with the receiver guide and advancement structure for rotating and driving the multi-start closure downward from the guide tool to the receiver.

[0009] Objects of the invention further include providing apparatus and methods that are easy to use and especially adapted for the intended use thereof and wherein the tools are comparatively inexpensive to produce. Other objects and advantages of this invention will become apparent from the following description taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings wherein are set forth, by way of illustration and example, certain embodiments of this invention.

[0010] The drawings constitute a part of this specification and include exemplary embodiments of the present invention and illustrate various objects and features thereof.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

[0011] FIG. 1 is a perspective view of an embodiment of a multi-start closure according to the invention.

[0012] FIG. 2 is another perspective view of the multi-start closure of FIG. 1.

[0013] FIG. 3 is a front elevational view of the closure of FIG. 1 shown with a portion of a receiver of a polyaxial bone screw according to FIG. 8, the receiver shown in partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, and further showing a rod being pressed upon by the closure, the rod also in partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0014] FIG. 4 is a reduced top plan view of the closure of FIG. 1.

[0015] FIG. 5 is a reduced bottom plan view of the closure of FIG. 1.

[0016] FIG. 6 is an enlarged front elevational view of the closure of FIG. 1 with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0017] FIG. 7 is a reduced cross-sectional view taken along the line 7-7 of FIG. 6.

[0018] FIG. 8 a partial front elevational view of an open bone screw assembly, with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, including a receiver, a shank, a compression insert and also shown in engagement with the closure top of FIG. 1 (in reduced view) and a longitudinal connecting member in the form of a hard rod.

[0019] FIG. 9 is a front elevational view of an alternative closure of an embodiment of the invention, similar to the closure of FIG. 1, but including a break-off head, the alternative closure shown with a portion of a receiver of the polyaxial bone screw of FIG. 8 shown in enlarged and partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, and further showing a rod being pressed upon by the alternative closure, the rod also in partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0020] FIG. 10 is another front elevational view of the closure of FIG. 9 with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0021] FIG. 11 is a front elevational view of an alternative square-thread closure of an embodiment of the invention with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, the closure shown with a portion of a receiver of the polyaxial bone screw of FIG. 8 shown in enlarged and partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, and further showing a rod being pressed upon by the alternative closure, the rod also in partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0022] FIG. 12 is a front elevational view of an alternative reverse angle closure of an embodiment of the invention with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, the closure shown with a portion of a receiver of the polyaxial bone screw of FIG. 8 shown in enlarged and partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, and further showing a rod being pressed upon by the alternative closure, the rod also in partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0023] FIG. 13 is a front elevational view of an alternative v-thread closure embodiment of the invention with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, the closure shown with a portion of a receiver of the polyaxial bone screw of FIG. 8 shown in enlarged and partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, and further showing a rod being pressed upon by the alternative closure, the rod also in partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0024] FIG. 14 is a front elevational view of an alternative buttress-thread closure embodiment of the invention with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, the closure shown with a portion of a receiver of the polyaxial bone screw of FIG. 8 shown in enlarged and partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, and further showing a rod being pressed upon by the alternative closure, the rod also in partial front elevation with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0025] FIG. 15 is a partial front elevational view of an embodiment of a multi-start open bone anchor receiver of an embodiment of the invention with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, the receiver including break-off tabs.

[0026] FIG. 16 is an enlarged and partial front elevational view of the receiver of FIG. 15 with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

[0027] FIG. 17 is a partial front elevational view of an embodiment of a bone anchor receiver having a guide and advancement structure that matingly cooperates with the multi-start closure of FIG. 1, also shown in front elevation, the receiver having portions broken away to show the detail thereof, and further shown with a guide tool, shown in phantom, the guide tool having a multi-start guide and advancement structure receiving inner surface synchronized with the bone anchor receiver guide and advancement structure.

[0028] FIG. 18 is an exploded perspective view of the polyaxial bone screw assembly of FIG. 8.

[0029] FIG. 19 is an enlarged perspective view of the receiver of FIG. 18.

[0030] FIG. 20 is a top plan view of the receiver of FIG. 19.

[0031] FIG. 21 is a bottom plan view of the receiver of FIG. 19.

[0032] FIG. 22 is a side elevational view of the receiver of FIG. 19.

[0033] FIG. 23 is an enlarged cross-sectional view taken along the line 23-23 of FIG. 20.

[0034] FIG. 24 is an enlarged cross-sectional view taken along the line 24-24 of FIG. 22.

[0035] FIG. 25 is an enlarged cross-sectional view taken along the line 25-25 of FIG. 20.

[0036] FIG. 26 is an enlarged perspective view of the retainer of FIG. 18.

[0037] FIG. 27 is a top plan view of the retainer of FIG. 16.

[0038] FIG. 28 is a bottom plan view of the retainer of FIG. 26.

[0039] FIG. 29 is an enlarged cross-sectional view taken along the line 29-29 of FIG. 27.

[0040] FIG. 30 is an enlarged perspective view of the compression insert of FIG. 18.

[0041] FIG. 31 is another perspective view of the insert of FIG. 30.

[0042] FIG. 32 is a top plan view of the insert of FIG. 30.

[0043] FIG. 33 is a bottom plan view of the insert of FIG. 30.

[0044] FIG. 34 is a reduced side elevational view of the insert of FIG. 30.

[0045] FIG. 35 is an enlarged cross-sectional view taken along the line 35-35 of FIG. 32.

[0046] FIG. 36 is an enlarged cross-sectional view taken along the line 36-36 of FIG. 32.

[0047] FIG. 37 is an enlarged front elevational view of the receiver and retainer of FIG. 18 with portions of the receiver broken away to show the detail thereof and shown in an early stage of assembly with the retainer.

[0048] FIG. 38 is a front elevational view with portions broken away of the receiver and retainer, similar to FIG. 37, further showing the retainer and also the compression insert of FIG. 18 in a later stage of assembly, the compression insert shown in side elevation.

[0049] FIG. 39 is a reduced front elevational view with portions broken away, similar to FIG. 38, showing the insert in a stage of being rotated into a desired position within the receiver.

[0050] FIG. 40 is a reduced front elevational view with portions broken away, similar to FIG. 39 showing the insert being rotated into the desired position.

[0051] FIG. 41 is an enlarged and partial perspective view of the assembly as shown in FIG. 40, further showing portions of the receiver pressed or crimped toward the insert to prohibit further rotation of the insert with respect to the receiver.

[0052] FIG. 42 is an enlarged and partial, partially exploded front elevational view of the shank of FIG. 18 and also the receiver, retainer and compression insert of FIG. 18 as assembled as in FIG. 32, with portions broken away to show the detail thereof, the shank being shown implanted in a vertebra, shown in phantom, as the shank may be assembled with the receiver either before or after implantation.

[0053] FIG. 43 is a partial front elevational view, similar to FIG. 42, with portions broken away to show the detail thereof and showing the shank in a stage of assembly with the retainer.

[0054] FIG. 44 is an enlarged partial front elevational view, similar to FIG. 43, with portions broken away to show the detail thereof and showing the shank in a subsequent stage of assembly with the retainer wherein the retainer is at maximum expansion with the receiver cavity.

[0055] FIG. 45 is a reduced and partial front elevational view, similar to FIG. 44, with portions broken away to show the detail thereof wherein the shank is fully assembled with the retainer.

[0056] FIG. 46 is a partial front elevational view, similar to FIG. 45, with portions broken away to show the detail thereof and showing the retainer dropped down to a seated position within the receiver.

[0057] FIG. 47 is an enlarged and partial front elevational view with portions broken away, similar to FIG. 46 and further showing the insert after being pressed downwardly into friction fit engagement with the shank.

[0058] FIG. 48 is an enlarged and partial front elevational view with portions broken away of the assembly of Fig. 18, shown with the closure top partially assembled as also shown in FIG. 3.

[0059] FIG. 49 is an enlarged and partial front elevational view with portions broken away, similar to FIG. 48 and further showing the closure fully assembled between arms of the receiver.

[0060] FIG. 50 a reduced and partial front elevational view with portions broken away of the assembly of FIG. 49, but with the rod and closure top thereof removed and replaced with an alternative deformable rod and an alternative multi-start closure of the invention, the insert remaining locked against the receiver and thus keeping the shank locked in place during removal and replacement of the rod and closure top.

[0061] FIG. 51 is a reduced and partial perspective view of the assembly of FIG. 49.

[0062] FIG. 52 is a partial perspective view, similar to FIG. 51, but showing the shank disposed at an eighteen degree angle (cephalic) with respect to the receiver.

[0063] FIG. 53 is a partial perspective view, similar to FIG. 52, but showing the shank disposed at an eighteen degree angle (caudal) with respect to the receiver.

[0064] FIG. 54 is a partial perspective view, similar to FIG. 53, but showing the shank disposed at an eighteen degree angle (lateral) with respect to the receiver.

[0065] FIG. 55 is a partial perspective view, similar to FIG. 54, but showing the shank disposed at a forty-two degree (medial) by eight degree (cephalic) angle with respect to the receiver.

[0066] FIG. 56 is a partial perspective view, similar to FIG. 55, but showing the shank disposed at a forty-two degree (medial) angle with respect to the receiver.

[0067] FIG. 57 is a partial perspective view, similar to FIG. 56, but showing the shank disposed at a forty-two degree (medial) by eight degree (caudal) angle with respect to the receiver.

[0068] FIG. 58 is an enlarged front elevational view of the assembly of FIG. 57 with portions broken away to show the detail thereof.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0069] As required, detailed embodiments of the present invention are disclosed herein; however, it is to be understood that the disclosed embodiments are merely exemplary of the invention, which may be embodied in various forms. Therefore, specific structural and functional details disclosed herein are not to be interpreted as limiting, but merely as a basis for the claims and as a representative basis for teaching one skilled in the art to variously employ the present invention in virtually any appropriately detailed structure. It is also noted that any reference to the words top, bottom, up and down, and the like, in this application refers to the alignment shown in the various drawings, as well as the normal connotations applied to such devices, and is not intended to restrict positioning of the bone attachment structures in actual use.

[0070] Furthermore, the terms lead, pitch and start, as such terms are used to describe helically wound guide and advancement structures, are to be understood as follows: Lead is a distance along the axis of a closure plug that is covered by one complete rotation (360 degrees) of the closure plug with respect to a mating open implant. Pitch is the distance from a crest (or outer point or location) of one guide and advancement structure form to the next. For example in a single-start thread-form, such as a single start, helically wound v-thread closure plug, lead and pitch are the same. Single start means that there is only one ridge or helically wound form wrapped around a cylindrical core, or in the case of the present invention, wrapped around a cylindrical closure plug body and thus there is only one start structure or surface at a base or forward end of the closure body that initially engages a mating structure on the open implant. Each time a single start closure rotates one turn (360 degrees), the closure has advanced axially by a width of one ridge or one helical form. Double-start means that there are two ridges or forms wrapped around a core body and thus there are two starting surfaces or structures on the closure plug. Therefore, each time a double-start body rotates one turn (360 degrees), such a body has advanced axially by a width of two ridges or forms. Multi-start means that there are at least two and may be up to three or more of such ridges or forms wrapped around a core body.

[0071] With reference to FIGS. 1-8 and 18-58, and in particular to FIGS. 8 and 18, the reference number 1 generally represents an open implant in the form of a polyaxial bone screw apparatus or assembly that includes a shank 4, that further includes a body 6 integral with an upwardly extending upper portion or capture structure 8; a receiver 10; a retaining structure or retainer 12, a compression or pressure insert 14, and a multi-start closure structure or plug 18 of the invention in the form of a cylindrical plug having a double start helically wound flange-form. It is noted that multi-start closure embodiments of the invention, such as the closure 18 may be used with a variety of open implants including, but not limited to a wide variety of polyaxial screws, mono-axial or fixed screws, hooks and other types of open implants requiring a plug or closure mechanism to fix a rod or other implant member to a vertebra or other bone. Thus, the assembly 1 is only one example of how multi-start closures of the invention may be used.

[0072] The closure structure 18 presses against and captures a longitudinal connecting member, for example, a rod 21 which in turn engages the compression insert 14 that presses against the shank upper portion 8 that is attached to the retaining structure that in turn presses against an inner surface of the receiver 10, so as to capture and fix the longitudinal connecting member 21 within the receiver 10 and thus fix the member 21 relative to a vertebra (not shown).

The illustrated receiver 10 and the shank 4 cooperate in such a manner that the receiver 10 and the shank 4 can be secured at any of a plurality of angles, articulations or rotational alignments relative to one another and within a selected range of angles both from side to side and from front to rear, to enable flexible or articulated engagement of the receiver 10 with the shank 4 until both are locked or fixed relative to each other near the end of an implantation procedure.

[0073] The illustrated rod 21 is hard, stiff, non-elastic and cylindrical, having an outer cylindrical surface 22. However, in other embodiments, the rod 21 may be elastic, deformable and/or of a different cross-sectional geometry. The rod 21 may be made from a variety of metals, metal alloys and deformable and less compressible plastics, including, but not limited to rods made of elastomeric, polyetheretherketone (PEEK) and other types of materials, such as polycarbonate urethanes (PCU) and polyethylenes. Furthermore, in lieu of a rod, longitudinal connecting members for use with the assembly 1 may take a variety of shapes, and/or may include a tensioned cord as described in greater detail herein.

[0074] It is noted that the receiver 10 includes guide and advancement structures 168 that are shown as interlocking flange forms described in greater detail in applicant's U.S. Pat. No. 6,726,689, also incorporated by reference herein. Alternately, when the closure structure includes a different helical form, the receiver cooperating structures (e.g., 168) must also be of a cooperating, mating geometry, such as a square-shaped thread receiving form, a buttress thread receiving form, a reverse angle thread receiving form or other thread-like or non-thread-like helically wound discontinuous advancement structure receiving forms for operably guiding under rotation and advancing a multi-start closure structure downward between the receiver arms 160, as well as eventual torqueing when the closure structure abuts against the rod 21 or other connecting member.

[0075] With particular reference to FIGS. 1-7, the illustrated multi-start closure structure 18 is a double start closure having a substantially cylindrical plug body 40 having an axis of rotation that is the same as that of the receiver 10 and including a helically wound guide and advancement structure in the form of a pair of helically wound forms 42 and 43, each illustrated as an interlocking flange form that operably joins with mating flange form guide and advancement structures 168 disposed on the arms of the receiver 10. The form 42 includes a start surface or structure 46 and the form 43 includes a start surface or structure 47. Each helically wound form 42 and 43 may take a variety of forms and geometries, including those described in Applicant's U.S. Pat. No. 6,726,689, which is incorporated by reference herein. It is

noted (and also described in greater detail subsequently herein) that each of the closure structure guide and advancement structures or forms 42 and 43 could alternatively be in the form of a buttress thread, a square thread, a reverse angle thread, a v-thread or other thread like or non-thread like helically wound advancement structures, for operably guiding under rotation and advancing the closure structure downward between the arms of the receive 10 and preferably having such a nature as to resist splaying of the receiver arms when the closure structure 18 is advanced into the receiver channel. The specific flange forms 42 and 43 illustrated in FIGS. 1-7, as well as acceptable alternative locking forms, are described in detail in Applicant's U.S. Pat. No. 6,726,689, incorporated by reference herein, and thus shall not be discussed further herein. Such interlocking flange forms are preferred as the added strength provided thereby beneficially cooperate with and counter any reduction in strength caused by the any reduced profile of the receiver 10 that may more advantageously engage longitudinal connecting member components.

[0076] The illustrated closure structure 18 also includes a top surface 54 with an internal drive 56 in the form of an aperture that is illustrated as a star-shaped internal drive such as that sold under the trademark TORX, or may be, for example, a hex drive, or other internal drives such as slotted, tri-wing, spanner, two or more apertures of various shapes, and the like. A driving tool (not shown) sized and shaped for engagement with the internal drive 56 is used for both rotatable engagement and, if needed, disengagement of the closure 18 from the receiver 10 at arms 160. It is also foreseen that the closure structure 18 may alternatively include a break-off head designed to allow such a head to break from a base of the closure at a preselected torque, for example, 70 to 140 inch pounds. Such a closure structure would also include a body surface having an internal drive to be used for closure removal. A base or bottom surface 58 of the closure is planar and further includes a rim 60 for engagement and penetration into the surface 22 of the rod 21 in certain embodiments of the invention. The closure top 18 further includes a cannulation through bore 62 extending along a central axis thereof and through a drive base surface 63 and the bottom surface 58 thereof. Such a through bore provides a passage through the closure 18 interior for a length of wire (not shown) inserted therein to provide a guide for insertion of the closure top into the receiver arms 160.

[0077] The closure structure 18 helically wound flange form start structures 46 and 47 of the respective forms 42 and 43 are located on opposite sides of the closure plug body 40 and are both located adjacent the bottom surface 58. As illustrated in FIG. 3, for example, when the closure structure 18 is rotated into the receiver 10 between receiver arms 160, each having a

guide and advancement structure 168, the start 46 engages mating guide and advancement structure 168 on one arm 160 and the start 47 simultaneously engages guide and advancement structure 168 on the opposing arm 160, both forms 42 and 43 being simultaneously captured by the mating forms 168 on the opposed arms 160. As the structure 18 is rotated, the structure advances axially downwardly between the arms 160 and presses evenly down upon the captured rod 21. Each time the illustrated duel- or double-start closure plug 18 is rotated one complete turn or pass (three hundred sixty degrees) between the implant arms, the closure plug 18 advances axially into the implant and toward the rod by a width of two helical flange forms. The illustrated closure 18 is sized for at least one complete rotation (three hundred sixty degree) of the plug 18 with respect to the receiver 10 open arms 160 to substantially receive the plug between the implant arms. Each of the start structures 46 and 47 includes a leading face having at least one curvate surface. The at least one curvate surface includes at least one radius of curvature. In one embodiment, the at least one curvate surface is both concave and convex. Multi-start closures of the invention may have two or more coarse or fine helical forms, resulting in fewer or greater forms per axial distance spiraling about the closure plug body and thus resulting in plugs that rotate less or more than one complete rotation to be fully received between the implant arms. Preferably, helically wound forms of the multi-start closure of the invention are sized so as to spiral around a cylindrical plug body thereof to an extent that the closure rotates at least ninety-one degrees to fully or substantially receive the closure plug between the arms of the bone screw receiver or other open implant. Particularly preferred guide and advancement structures are sized for at least one complete turn or pass (three-hundred sixty degree) of the closure between the receiver 10 arms and as many as two to three rotations to be fully received between implant arms.

[0078] An alternative closure top, such as the top 18' shown in FIG. 50 for use with a deformable rod, such as a PEEK rod 21', for example, includes a bottom surface 58' that has a domed portion 66' with a central nub 68' in lieu of the flat and rimmed surfaces of the closure top 18. Otherwise, the closure top 18' includes a guide and advancement structures 42' and 43', a top surface 54' and an internal drive feature 56' the same or substantially similar to the respective guide and advancement structures 42 and 43, top surface 54 and internal drive feature 56 of the closure top 18.

[0079] The shank 4, best illustrated in FIGS. 18 and 42-49, is elongate, with the shank body 6 having a helically wound bone implantable thread 124 (single or dual lead thread form) extending from near a neck 126 located adjacent to the upper portion or capture structure 8, to

a tip 128 of the body 6 and extending radially outwardly therefrom. During use, the body 6 utilizing the thread 124 for gripping and advancement is implanted into the vertebra 17 leading with the tip 128 and driven down into the vertebra with an installation or driving tool (not shown), so as to be implanted in the vertebra to near the neck 126, as more fully described in the paragraphs below. The shank 4 has an elongate axis of rotation generally identified by the reference letter A.

[0080] The neck 126 extends axially upward from the shank body 6. The neck 126 may be of the same or is typically of a slightly reduced radius as compared to an adjacent upper end or top 132 of the body 6 where the thread 124 terminates. Further extending axially and outwardly from the neck 126 is the shank upper portion 8 that provides a connective or capture apparatus disposed at a distance from the upper end 132 and thus at a distance from the vertebra 17 when the body 6 is implanted in such vertebra.

[0081] The shank upper portion 8 is configured for a pivotable connection between the shank 4 (with attached retainer 12) and the receiver 10 prior to fixing of the shank 4 in a desired position with respect to the receiver 10. The shank upper portion 8 has an outer, convex and substantially spherical lower surface 134 that extends outwardly and upwardly from the neck 126 and terminates at a substantially planar ledge or shelf 136 that is annular and disposed perpendicular to the shank axis A. The spherical lower surface 134 has an outer radius that is the same or substantially similar to an outer radius of the retainer 12 as will be described in greater detail below, the surface 134 as well as the retainer 12 outer surface participating in the ball and socket joint formed by the shank 4 and attached retainer 12 within the partially spherical surface defining an inner cavity of the receiver 10. Extending upwardly from the ledge 136 is a cylindrical surface 138, the surface 138 having a radius that is smaller than the radius of the lower spherical surface 134. Extending outwardly from the cylindrical surface 138 is another annular surface or upper ledge 140 that faces toward the ledge 136 and is also substantially perpendicular to the axis A. As will be discussed in greater detail below, the lower ledge 136, cylindrical surface 138 and upper ledge 140 cooperate to capture and fix the resilient open retainer 12 to the shank upper portion 8, prohibiting movement of the retainer 12 along the axis A once the retainer 12 is located between the ledges 136 and 140. Extending upwardly from the upper ledge 140 is a cylindrical surface 142 having a radius smaller than the radius of the spherical surface 134 but larger than the radius of the cylindrical surface 138. Extending upwardly from the surface 142 is an upper partially spherical or domed surface 144. The spherical surface 144 has an outer radius configured for sliding cooperation and ultimate

frictional mating with a substantially spherical concave surface of the compression insert 14 that has the same or substantially similar radius as the surface 144. The radius of the surface 144 is smaller than the radius of the lower spherical surface 134. Located near or adjacent to the surface 144 is an annular top surface 146. In the illustrated embodiment a bevel 147 extends about the spherical surface 144 and is located between the spherical surface 144 and the annular planar top surface 146.

[0082] A counter sunk substantially planar base or seating surface 149 partially defines an internal drive feature or imprint 150. The illustrated internal drive feature 150 is an aperture formed in the top surface 146 and has a multi-lobular or star-shaped aperture, such as those sold under the trademark TORX, the aperture designed to receive a tool (not shown)of an Allen wrench type, into the aperture for rotating and driving the bone screw shank 4. It is foreseen that such an internal tool engagement structure may take a variety of tool-engaging forms and may include one or more apertures of various shapes, such as a pair of spaced apart apertures or hex shape, or other geometric shape. The seat or base 149 of the drive feature 150 is disposed perpendicular to the axis A with the drive feature 150 otherwise being coaxial with the axis A. In operation, a driving tool is received in the internal drive feature 150, being seated at the base 149 and engaging the faces of the drive feature 150 for both driving and rotating the shank body 6 into the vertebra 17, either before the shank 4 is attached to the receiver 10 as shown in FIG. 42 or after the shank 4 is attached to the receiver 10, with the shank body 6 being driven into the vertebra 17 with the driving tool extending into the receiver 10.

[0083] The shank 4 shown in the drawings is cannulated, having a small central bore 151 extending an entire length of the shank 4 along the axis A. The bore 151 is defined by an inner cylindrical wall of the shank 4 and has a circular opening at the shank tip 128 and an upper opening communicating with the internal drive 150 at the surface 149. The bore 151 is coaxial with the threaded body 6 and the upper portion 8. The bore 151 provides a passage through the shank 4 interior for a length of wire (not shown) inserted into the vertebra 17 prior to the insertion of the shank body 6, the wire providing a guide for insertion of the shank body 6 into the vertebra 17.

[0084] To provide a biologically active interface with the bone, the threaded shank body 6 may be coated, perforated, made porous or otherwise treated. The treatment may include, but is not limited to a plasma spray coating or other type of coating of a metal or, for example, a calcium phosphate; or a roughening, perforation or indentation in the shank surface, such as by

sputtering, sand blasting or acid etching, that allows for bony ingrowth or ongrowth. Certain metal coatings act as a scaffold for bone ingrowth. Bio-ceramic calcium phosphate coatings include, but are not limited to: alpha-tri-calcium phosphate and beta-tri-calcium phosphate ($Ca_3(PO_4)_2$), tetra-calcium phosphate ($Ca_4P_20_9$), amorphous calcium phosphate and hydroxyapatite ($Ca_{10}(PO_4)_6(OH)_2$). Coating with hydroxyapatite, for example, is desirable as hydroxyapatite is chemically similar to bone with respect to mineral content and has been identified as being bioactive and thus not only supportive of bone ingrowth, but actively taking part in bone bonding.

[0085] With particular reference to FIGS. 18-25, the receiver 10 has a generally U-shaped appearance with a partially discontinuous substantially cylindrical inner profile and a partially cylindrical and partially faceted outer profile. The receiver 10 has an axis of rotation B that is shown in FIG. 18 as being aligned with and the same as the axis of rotation A of the shank 4, such orientation being desirable, but not required during assembly of the receiver 10 with the shank 4. After the receiver 10 is pivotally attached to the shank 4, either before or after the shank 4 is implanted in a vertebra 17, the axis B is typically disposed at an angle with respect to the axis A, as shown, for example, in FIGS. 54-58.

[0086] The receiver 10 includes a substantially cylindrical base 158 integral with a pair of opposed upstanding arms 160. A cavity, generally 161, is located within the base 158. The arms 160 form a cradle and define a U-shaped channel 162 with an upper opening, generally 163, and a U-shaped lower seat 164, the channel 162 having a width for operably snugly receiving the rod 21 between the arms 160. The channel 164 communicates with the base cavity 161. Each of the arms 160 has an interior surface, generally 166 that has a cylindrical profile and further includes a partial helically wound guide and advancement structure 168 extending radially inwardly from the surface 166 and located adjacent top surfaces 169 of each of the arms 160. In the illustrated embodiment, the guide and advancement structures 168 are each in the form of a partial helically wound interlocking flange form configured to mate under rotation with the dual start closure structure 18. Thus, unlike single start advancement structures, the helical forms 168 on the opposing arm surfaces 166 that are configured to mate with the dual start closure top 18 are reverse or flipped images of one another, the structures 168 on each arm 160 being aligned with respect to the receiver axis B, so that each closure structure start and are simultaneously engaged and captured at each arm 160 at the same time.

[0087] The arms 160 further include an opposed pair of vertically extending outer grooves, generally 174, running substantially parallel to the receiver axis B that are centrally formed in outer curved (illustrated as faceted, both curved and planar) surfaces 176. Each groove 174 runs centrally from the respective arm top surface 169 and terminates at a through aperture 177. Each aperture 177 extends through the respective arm surface 176 and also through the respective interior arm surface 166 and is located spaced from the receiver base 158. Each groove 174 has an upper opening partially defined by a pair of opposed surfaces 179 and a substantially planar outer wall surface 181 extending between the surfaces 179. The planar wall surface 181 terminates at the top arm surface 169 and at a lower surface 182 partially defining the aperture 177. The illustrated opposed surfaces 179 are parallel and extend below the lower surface 182, partially defining the through aperture 177. The opposed surfaces 179 are sized to receive portions of an elongate tool (not shown) for locking and unlocking the insert 14 with respect to the receiver as will be described in greater detail below. In some embodiments, the surfaces 179 may be disposed at a slight angle with respect to each other, forming a dovetail-like space for maintaining a close relationship between an elongate tool (not shown) that enters into the groove 174 at the arm top surface 169 and is slidingly received between the surfaces 179. The surfaces 179 terminate at a lower surface 183 that also partially defines the through aperture 177. The surface 183 is substantially perpendicular to the surfaces 179. Thus, the illustrated through aperture 177 located below each of the grooves 174 is substantially the same width as the groove 174 there-above, resulting in the aperture 177 having a substantially rectangular profile. The through apertures 177 are sized and shaped for receiving tooling and portions of the compression insert 14 as will be described in greater detail below.

[0088] With particular reference to FIGS. 19, 22, 24, and 41, formed in the arm surfaces 176 and located on either side of the through apertures 177 are lateral crimping apertures 186. The four crimping apertures 186 are substantially circular in profile and do not extend completely through the respective arms 160, but rather terminate at a location between the arm outer surface 176 and the interior surface 166 to provide a crimping portion or wall 187. The crimping portions or walls 187 are sized and shaped for pressing or crimping some or all of the wall material inwardly onto front and rear surfaces of the insert 14 to prohibit rotation and misalignment of the insert 14 with respect to the receiver 10 as will be described in greater detail below.

[0089] The receiver 10 is a one-piece or integral structure and is devoid of any spring tabs or collet-like structures. Preferably the insert and/or receiver are configured with structure for

blocking rotation of the insert with respect to the receiver, such as the crimp walls 187, but allowing some up and down movement of the insert with respect to the receiver during the assembly and implant procedure. Also formed in each outer arm surface 176 near the top surface 169 is an undercut tool receiving and engaging groove 189. Some or all of the apertures and grooves described herein, including, but not limited to grooves 174, apertures 177, and grooves 189 may be used for holding the receiver 10 during assembly with the insert 14, the retainer 12 and the shank 4; during the implantation of the shank body 6 into a vertebra when the shank is pre-assembled with the receiver 10; during assembly of the bone anchor assembly 1 with the rod 21 and the closure structure 18; and during lock and release adjustment of inserts according to the invention with respect to the receiver 10, either into or out of frictional engagement with the inner surfaces of the receiver 10 as will be described in greater detail below. It is foreseen that tool receiving grooves or apertures may be configured in a variety of shapes and sizes and be disposed at other locations on the receiver arm 160 outer surfaces 176 and/or inner surfaces 166 as well as surfaces defining the base 158.

[0090] Returning to the interior arm surfaces, generally 166, of the receiver arms 160, located below the discontinuous guide and advancement structure 168 is a discontinuous cylindrical surface 190 partially defining a run-out feature for the guide and advancement structure 168. Adjacent to and above the surface 190 is a discontinuous upper annular ceiling surface 191. The upper annular surface 191 includes the surface 182 that partially defines the aperture 177 and also includes bottom surfaces of the guide and advancement structure 168. Also adjacent to and below the surface 190 is a discontinuous annular surface or step 192 that in turn is adjacent to a discontinuous frusto-conical surface 193 that extends from the surface 192 inwardly toward the receiver central axis B. Adjacent the surface 193 is another substantially cylindrical discontinuous surface 194 that may in some embodiments run frusto-conical either toward or away from the axis B, depending upon, for example, clearance requirements for the top loading of assembly components, such as the retainer and a compression insert or inserts and also modifying (enlarging or reducing) a thickness for the crimping walls 187, if desired. In the current embodiment, the surface 194 terminates at a small discontinuous ledge or lip 195 directed inwardly toward the axis B. The through apertures 177 extend through both the cylindrical surfaces 190 and the surfaces 193 and 194. A cylindrical surface 196 is adjacent to and runs downwardly from the lip 195 towards the base cavity 161. A lower portion of the cylindrical surface 196 is continuous and thus partially defines the base cavity 61. The cylindrical surface 196 has a diameter smaller than a diameter of the cylindrical

surface 190, but larger than a diameter of the surface 194. The receiver inner arm surfaces 166 may further include other sloped, stepped or chamfered surfaces between the cylindrical surfaces 190, 194, and 196 as desired for ease in assembly of the other top loaded components.

[0091] With particular reference to FIGS. 23-25, the continuous portion of the inner cylindrical surface 96 terminates at a downwardly sloping, annular ledge surface 197 that extends from the surface 196 and runs inwardly toward the receiver axis B. The surface 197 terminates at a substantially cylindrical surface 198. The surface 198 terminates at another annular surface 199 that faces a lower portion of the receiver cavity 161. The surfaces 197, 198, and 199 form an abutment or ceiling stop for the retainer 12 as will be described in greater detail below. The ceiling surface 199 runs substantially perpendicular to the axis B. Cut or otherwise formed into the surfaces 197, 198, and 199 under one of the arms 160 is a curved c-shaped notch, creating a substantially cylindrical surface 200 having a radius greater than a radius of the surface 198, the opening partially defined by the surface 200 providing clearance within the assembly 1, allowing the retainer 12 to move above the surface 197 when the shank 4 and attached retainer 12 are pivoted at a favored angle, for example, as shown in FIG. 58 and discussed in more detail below.

[0092] As stated above, the surface 199 is substantially annular and defines an upper ceiling or stop of a retainer 12 expansion portion or chamber of the inner cavity 161 that is further defined by a substantially spherical surface 202 that is adjacent to the surface 199. The surface 202 partially defines a recess that is sized and shaped to receive the retainer 12 as it expands around the shank upper portion 8 as the shank 8 is moved upwardly toward the channel 162 during assembly. Located below and adjacent to the spherical surface 202 is another curved surface 203 extending downwardly and inwardly toward the axis B. The surface 203 is illustrated as spherical, but in some embodiments the surface may be frusto-conical. The surface 203 is a seating surface for the retainer 12, the surface 203 slidingly receiving the retainer 12 until the retainer is frictionally locked against the surface 203 when downward pressure is placed on the shank 4 by the insert 14. A cylindrical surface 204 is adjacent the spherical surface 203 and an outwardly flaring surface 205, illustrated as frusto-conical, spans between the cylindrical surface 204 and a bottom surface 206 of the receiver 10. The surface 205 communicating with the bottom surface 206 to define a lower opening, generally 207 into the receiver base inner cavity 161. The cylindrical surface 204, as well as the frusto-conical surface 203 are sized and shaped to be smaller than an upper outer radial dimension of the

retainer 12 when the retainer 12 is fixed to the shank upper portion 8, so as to form a restriction to prevent the structure 12 and attached shank portion 8 from passing through the cavity 161 and out the lower exterior 206 of the receiver 10 during operation thereof.

[0093] In various embodiments of the invention, a cut-out or aperture made of one or more notches or curved, cupped or stepped surfaces may be cut into or otherwise formed in a portion of the base surface 206, as well as in portions of the surfaces 202, 203, 204, and 205, the cupped or stepped surfaces being typically located substantially centrally and directly below one of the arm 160. Such a cupped or stepped surface or surfaces may be sized and shaped for providing clearance for an increased angle of articulation between the shank 4 and the receiver 10 in a particular or desired direction. In the present embodiment, one such arrangement of stepped surfaces, generally 208 is illustrated. In particular, the cut-out portion 208 includes a plurality of graduated, partially annular surfaces 209 connecting with a plurality of graduated partially planar and partially curved surfaces 210, the surfaces 209 and 210 defining edges for gripping the shank 4 as shown, for example in FIG. 58. The cut-out 208 is located directly below the cut-out portion 200 that provides clearance for the retainer 12 during such a favored angle pivoting of the shank 4 and attached retainer 12.

[0094] With particular reference to FIGS. 18 and 26-29, the open retainer 12 that operates to capture the shank upper portion 8 within the receiver 10 has a central axis C that is operationally the same as the axis A associated with the shank 4 when the shank upper portion 8 and the retainer 12 are installed within the receiver 10. The retainer 12 is made from a resilient material, such as a stainless steel or titanium alloy, so that the retainer 12 may be expanded during assembly as will be described in greater detail below. However, because there is little or no need to compress the retainer 12 during assembly, the opening or slit that allows for expansion of the retainer 12 is designed to be very narrow, advantageously providing substantial or almost full surface contact between the retainer and the shank upper portion 8 and also between the retainer and the receiver seating surface 203.

[0095] The retainer 12 has a central channel or hollow through bore, generally 221, that passes entirely through the structure 12 from a top surface 222 to a bottom surface 224 thereof. The bore 221 is primarily defined by a discontinuous inner cylindrical surface 225 that runs from the top surface 222 to the bottom surface 224. In some embodiments of the invention, notches or grooves may be formed in the inner and/or bottom surfaces to more evenly distribute stress across the entire retainer during expansion thereof. The retainer 12 further includes an outer

substantially spherical surface 227 running between the top surface 222 and the bottom surface 224, the surface 227 has an identical or substantially similar radius as the receiver seating surface 203 and also the shank lower spherical surface 134. The resilient retainer 12 further includes first and second end surfaces, 230 and 231 disposed in spaced relation to one another when the retainer is in a neutral state. Both end surfaces 230 and 231 are disposed substantially perpendicular to the top surface 222 and the bottom surface 224. The embodiment shown in FIGS. 26-29 illustrates the surfaces 230 and 231 as substantially parallel, however, it is foreseen that it may be desirable to orient the surfaces obliquely or at a slight angle to the top and bottom surfaces.

[0096] With particular reference to FIGS. 18 and 30-36, the locking compression insert 14 is illustrated that is sized and shaped to be received by and down-loaded into the receiver 10 at the upper opening 166. The compression insert 14 has an operational central axis that is the same as the central axis B of the receiver 10. In operation, the insert advantageously frictionally engages the bone screw shank upper portion 8 as well as engaging the receiver 10 in an interference fit engagement, locking the shank 4 in a desired angular position with respect to the receiver 10 that remains in such locked position even if, for example, a rod and closure top are later removed and the rod is replaced with another rod or other longitudinal connecting member or member component, such as a sleeve of a tensioned cord connecting member. Such locked position may also be released by the surgeon if desired with insert engaging tools (not shown). In some embodiments of the invention, an alternative insert is provided that does not have the receiver interference fit feature, but is otherwise substantially similar to the insert 14. Such an insert includes outer surfaces that are slidingly received along the receiver 10 surfaces defining the arms 160 and the cavity 161. The locking insert 14 (as well as the non-locking alternative insert not shown) is preferably made from a solid resilient material, such as a stainless steel or titanium alloy, so that portions of the insert 14 may be grasped, pinched or pressed, if necessary, and un-wedged from the receiver 10 with a release tool (not shown).

[0097] The locking compression insert 14 includes a body 256.with cylindrical surfaces of a variety of diameters as well as planar surfaces and chamfers and cut-outs to provide clearance between the insert 14 and the retainer 12 during various steps of assembly as well as when the assembly 1 is in a final locked position. The body 256 is integral with a pair of upstanding arms 257. Located between the arms 257, the body 256 has an outer partial cylindrical surface 258. Each arm outer surface is substantially cylindrical in profile but is made from a variety of facets or faces as well as cut-outs to provide for clearance with other components of the assembly 1.

Located on the body 256 below each upstanding arm 257 is a substantially cylindrical interference fit surface or band 159 that extends outwardly from and between an upper cylindrical surface 260 and a lower cylindrical surface 261. The lower surface 261 is adjacent to an annular bottom surface 264 of the insert 14. Each upper cylindrical surface 260 partially defines one of the insert arms 257. The interference fit band 159 runs substantially parallel to the bottom surface 264. A diameter of the insert 14 measured at the band surface 259 is larger than a diameter measured at surfaces 260 or 261. As best shown in FIG. 36, in the illustrated embodiment, the bottom surface 264 is disposed at an angle with respect to the lower surface 261, but may be perpendicular to the lower surface 261 in other embodiments. The insert 14 further includes substantially planar arm top surfaces 265 located opposite the bottom surface 264. The arms 257 are each further defined by substantially planar front and rear surfaces 266 that run from the top surfaces 265 to the bottom surface 264. At the bottom surface 264, the front and rear surfaces 266 are narrow due to clearance cut-outs 267 located at each corner of the insert 14. Each arm 257 also includes an outwardly extending wing, generally 268 located centrally on and extending outwardly from an upper cylindrical surface 269 of the arm 257, the surface 269 being adjacent to the arm top surface 265. Each arm top surface 265 also extends along the respective wing 268 to a substantially cylindrical outer surface 270. Each wing is also defined by a lower surface 271 and opposed planar side surfaces 272, the upper surfaces 265 and the lower surfaces 271 being substantially parallel to one another. The juncture between the planar side surfaces 272 and the cylindrical surface 270 may include one or more chamfered, planed, or otherwise angled or curved surface to aid in rotational assembly of the insert 14 within the receiver 10. The opposed side surfaces 272 generally span between top and bottom surfaces 265 and 271 respectively, of each wing 268, the side surfaces 272 being substantially perpendicular to adjacent top and bottom surfaces 265 and 271. The cylindrical surfaces 270 are sized and shaped for sliding rotation within the receiver arm cylindrical surfaces 190 during assembly of the insert 14 with the receiver 10 as will be described in greater detail below. The illustrated wings 268 include indicator stripes 273 that provide a surgical staff with an indication of the location of the insert 14 with respect to the receiver 10 during surgery. For example, the location of the stripe 273 with respect to the receiver 10 indicates whether the insert 14 is in a non-floppy, but movable, frictional engagement with the shank head 8 or whether the insert 14 is fully locked down on the shank head 8. The indicator stripes 273 are conveniently located on the wing cylindrical surface 270 that is visible when the wings 268 are extending through the receiver apertures 177.

[0098] Returning to the inner surfaces of the insert 14, a through bore, generally 275, is disposed primarily within and through the body 256 and communicates with a generally U-shaped through channel formed by a saddle surface 278 that is substantially defined by the upstanding arms 257. Near the top surfaces 265, the saddle surface 278 is substantially planar. The saddle 278 has a curved lower seat 279 sized and shaped to closely, snugly engage the rod 21 or other longitudinal connecting member. It is foreseen that an alternative embodiment may be configured to include planar holding surfaces that closely hold a square or rectangular bar as well as hold a cylindrical rod-shaped, cord, or sleeved tensioned cord longitudinal connecting member. A pair of opposed, inwardly facing grooves or apertures 280 are located in the saddle 278 beginning near a juncture of the substantially planar upper portion of the saddle 278 and extending toward the curved lower seat 279. The grooves 280 are sized and shaped to receive tooling for rotation, locking, unlocking and other manipulation of the insert 14.

[0099] The bore, generally 275, is substantially defined at the body 256 by an inner cylindrical surface 282 that communicates with the seat 279 and also communicates with a lower concave, radiused or otherwise curved portion 284, that in some embodiments may include shank gripping surfaces or ridges, the surface portion 284 generally having a radius for closely mating with the surface 144 of the shank upper portion 8. The portion 284 terminates at the base surface 264. It is foreseen that the lower shank engaging portion 284 may additionally or alternatively include a roughened or textured surface or surface finish, or may be scored, knurled, or the like, for enhancing frictional engagement with the shank upper portion 8. Formed in a portion of the surface 284 and in a portion of the bottom surface 264 is a notch 286 sized and shaped to receive a portion of the retainer 12 when the shank 4 and attached retainer 12 are pivoted into a favored angle position as shown, for example, in FIG. 58. The notch 286 is located directly beneath one of the arms 257 and has a geometry for receiving a portion of the top 222 and outer spherical surface 227 of the retainer 12 when the shank upper portion 8 is fully locked into place by the insert surface 284 and the shank 4 is pivoted toward the receiver cut-out 208.

[0100] The compression insert 14 through bore 275 is sized and shaped to receive a driving tool (not shown) therethrough that engages the shank drive feature 146 when the shank body 6 is driven into bone with the receiver 10 attached. Also, in some locking embodiments of the invention, the bore receives a manipulation tool (not shown) used for releasing the insert 14 from a locked position with the receiver 10, the tool pressing down on the shank head 8 and also gripping the insert 14 at the apertures 280, or with other tool engaging features. Each of the

arms 257 and the insert body 256 may include more surface features, such as cut-outs notches, bevels, etc. to provide adequate clearance for inserting the insert 14 into the receiver and cooperating with the retainer 12 during the different assembly steps as will be described in greater detail below.

[0101] The insert body 256 cylindrical surface 258 has a diameter slightly smaller than a diameter between crests of the guide and advancement structure 168 of the receiver 10, allowing for top loading of the compression insert 14 into the receiver opening 163, with the arms 257 of the insert 14 being located between the receiver arms 160 during insertion of the insert 14 into the receiver 10 as shown, for example, in FIG. 38. Once the arms 257 of the insert 14 are generally located beneath the guide and advancement structure 168, the insert 14 is rotated into place about the receiver axis B with the wings 268 entering the receiver groove formed by the cylindrical surface 190, the adjacent upper annular surface 191 and the adjacent lower annular surface 192 until the wings 268 are located in the apertures 177 as will be described in greater detail below.

[0102] With reference to FIGS. 18 and 48-50, the illustrated elongate rod or longitudinal connecting member 21 (of which only a portion has been shown) can be any of a variety of implants utilized in reconstructive spinal surgery, but is typically a cylindrical, elongate structure having the outer substantially smooth, cylindrical surface 22 of uniform diameter. The rod 21 may be made from a variety of metals, metal alloys and deformable and less compressible plastics, including, but not limited to rods made of elastomeric, polyetheretherketone (PEEK) and other types of materials, such as polycarbonate urethanes (PCU) and polyethylenes.

[0103] Longitudinal connecting members for use with the assembly 1 may take a variety of shapes, including but not limited to rods or bars of oval, rectangular or other curved or polygonal cross-section. The shape of the insert 14 may be modified so as to closely hold the particular longitudinal connecting member used in the assembly 1. Some embodiments of the assembly 1 may also be used with a tensioned cord. Such a cord may be made from a variety of materials, including polyester or other plastic fibers, strands or threads, such as polyethylene-terephthalate. Furthermore, the longitudinal connector may be a component of a longer overall dynamic stabilization connecting member, with cylindrical or bar-shaped portions sized and shaped for being received by the compression insert 14 of the receiver having a U-shaped, rectangular- or other- shaped channel, for closely receiving the longitudinal connecting member. The longitudinal connecting member may be integral or otherwise fixed to a bendable or

damping component that is sized and shaped to be located between adjacent pairs of bone screw assemblies 1, for example. A damping component or bumper may be attached to the longitudinal connecting member at one or both sides of the bone screw assembly 1. A rod or bar (or rod or bar component) of a longitudinal connecting member may be made of a variety of materials ranging from deformable plastics to hard metals, depending upon the desired application. Thus, bars and rods of the invention may be made of materials including, but not limited to metal and metal alloys including but not limited to stainless steel, titanium, titanium alloys and cobalt chrome; or other suitable materials, including plastic polymers such as polyetheretherketone (PEEK), ultra-high-molecular weight-polyethylene (UHMWP), polyurethanes and composites, including composites containing carbon fiber, natural or synthetic elastomers such as polyisoprene (natural rubber), and synthetic polymers, copolymers, and thermoplastic elastomers, for example, polyurethane elastomers such as polycarbonate-urethane elastomers.

[0104] Preferably, the receiver 10, the retainer 12 and the compression insert 14 are assembled at a factory setting that includes tooling for holding, alignment and manipulation of the component pieces, as well as crimping a portion of the receiver 10 toward the insert 14. In some circumstances, the shank 4 is also assembled with the receiver 10, the retainer 12 and the compression insert 14 at the factory. In other instances, it is desirable to first implant the shank 4, followed by addition of the pre-assembled receiver, retainer and compression insert at the insertion point (see, e.g., FIG. 42). In this way, the surgeon may advantageously and more easily implant and manipulate the shanks 4, distract or compress the vertebrae with the shanks and work around the shank upper portions or heads without the cooperating receivers being in the way. In other instances, it is desirable for the surgical staff to pre-assemble a shank of a desired size and/or variety (e.g., surface treatment of roughening the upper portion 8 and/or hydroxyapatite on the shank 6), with the receiver, retainer and compression insert. Allowing the surgeon to choose the appropriately sized or treated shank 4 advantageously reduces inventory requirements, thus reducing overall cost.

[0105] Pre-assembly of the receiver 10, retainer 12 and compression insert 14 is shown in FIGS. 37-41. With particular reference to FIG. 37, first the retainer 12 is inserted into the lower receiver opening 207, leading with the outer surface 227, the top surface 222 slightly angled to face upwardly and toward one arm 160 that is located above the stepped, cut-out 208. The retainer 12 is then moved upwardly and at an angle toward the annular ceiling surface 199 located opposite the cut-out surface 200 and then past the stepped cut-out 298 in such an

angled and upward manner into the chamber 161, followed by tilting the retainer 12 such that the top surface 222 is moved into a position within the receiver cavity 161 axially aligned with the receiver axis B and spaced from the surface 199. Then the retainer 12 is allowed to drop until the retainer spherical surface 227 is seated on the receiver spherical surface 203 as shown in FIG. 38.

[0106] Also with reference to FIG. 38 and with further reference to FIGS. 39 and 40, the. compression insert 14 is then downloaded into the receiver 10 through the upper opening 163 with the bottom surface 264 initially facing the receiver arm top surfaces 169 and the insert arms 257 located between the opposed receiver arms 160. The insert 14 is then lowered toward the channel seat 164 until the insert 14 arm upper surfaces 265 are adjacent the receiver arm inner surfaces located below the guide and advancement structures 168. Thereafter, the insert 14 is rotated in a clockwise or counter-clockwise manner about the receiver axis B until the upper arm surfaces 265 are directly below the guide and advancement structure 168 of each arm as illustrated in FIG. 40 with the U-shaped channel 278 of the insert 14 aligned with the U-shaped channel 162 of the receiver 10. In some embodiments, the insert arms 257 may need to be compressed slightly during rotation to clear inner surfaces of the receiver arms 160. As the insert 14 is rotated about the axis B, the insert wings, generally 268 slidingly rotate within the circular groove formed by the receiver surfaces 190, 191, and 192.

[0107] With particular reference to FIGS. 40 and 41, at this time, the four crimping wall portions 187 are pressed inwardly towards the insert 14 and crimping wall material thus engages the insert near front and rear surfaces 266 thereof, specifically at the four surfaces or facets 267 as best shown in FIG. 41. The crimping wall material of the wall 187 pressing against the insert 14 at a total of four locations thereby prohibits the insert 14 from rotating with respect to the receiver axis B. At this time, there can be some upward and downward movement of the insert 14, but such movement is limited as the upper wall 182 defining the receiver aperture 177 (that is also the surface 191) stops further upward movement of the insert wings 268. Downward movement of the insert 14 is prohibited by the bands 259 resting on receiver ledge surface 195 adjacent the cylindrical surface 196. The retainer 12 and the insert 14 are now in a desired position for shipping as an assembly along with the separate shank 4 and also ready for assembly with the shank 4 either at the factory, by surgery staff prior to implantation, or directly upon an implanted shank 4 as will be described herein.

[0108] As illustrated in FIG. 42, the bone screw shank 4 or an entire assembly 1 made up of the assembled shank 4, receiver 10, retainer 12 and compression insert 14, is screwed into a bone, such as the vertebra 17, by rotation of the shank 4 using a suitable driving tool (not shown) that operably drives and rotates the shank body 6 by engagement thereof at the internal drive 150. Specifically, the vertebra 17 may be pre-drilled to minimize stressing the bone and have a guide wire (not shown) inserted therein to provide a guide for the placement and angle of the shank 4 with respect to the vertebra. A further tap hole may be made using a tap with the guide wire as a guide. Then, the bone screw shank 4 or the entire assembly 1 is threaded onto the guide wire utilizing the cannulation bore 151 by first threading the wire into the opening at the bottom 128 and then out of the top opening at the drive feature 150. The shank 4 is then driven into the vertebra using the wire as a placement guide. It is foreseen that the shank and other bone screw assembly parts, the rod 21 (also having a central lumen in some embodiments) and the closure top 18 having the central bore 62 can be inserted in a percutaneous or minimally invasive surgical manner, utilizing guide wires. When the shank 4 is driven into the vertebra 17 without the remainder of the assembly 1, the shank 4 may either be driven to a desired final location or may be driven to a location slightly above or proud to provide for ease in assembly with the pre-assembled receiver, compression insert and retainer.

[0109] With further reference to FIG. 42, the pre-assembled receiver, insert and retainer are placed above the shank upper portion 8 until the shank upper portion is received within the opening 207. With particular reference to FIGS. 43-45, as the shank upper portion 8 is moved into the interior 161 of the receiver base, the shank upper portion 8 presses upwardly against the retainer 12 in the recess partially defined by the spherical surface 202. As the portion 8 continues to move upwardly toward the channel 162, the shank surface 144 forces outward movement of the retainer 12 towards the surface 202 in the receiver expansion chamber or area as the shank 4 presses the retainer 12 up against the receiver annular ledge surface or ceiling 199. The retainer 12 initially expands about the shank upper spherical surface 144 and then slides along the cylindrical surface 142, and finally snapping or popping into the recessed cylindrical surface 138, the surface 225 of the retainer 12 fully contacting and frictionally engaging the cylindrical surface 138 between the shank lower ledge 136 and the upper ledge 140. At this time, the retainer 12 is in a neutral or slightly expanded state, fully snapped onto the shank upper portion 8 with both the retainer 12 and shank upper portion 8 in pivotal relation with the receiver 10.

[0110] With reference to FIG. 46, the shank 4 and attached retainer 12 are then moved downwardly into a desired position with the retainer seated on the surface 203. With reference to FIG. 47, the insert 14 may be pressed downwardly by a tool (not shown) entering at the receiver grooves 174, for example, and pressing down on the insert wings 268, to result in a frictional engagement between the insert inner spherical surface 284 and the shank upper domed surface 144 to an extent that the shank is pivotable with respect to the receiver, but in a non-floppy manner. The insert 14 remains in such position due to interference fit engagement between the insert outer band surfaces 259 and the receiver cylindrical surfaces 196. Alternatively, the insert 14 may be pushed into such interference fit by a rod 21 and closure top 18. Typically, tools are first used to provide the non-floppy arrangement between the insert 14 and the shank head 8, followed by performing a locking engagement utilizing the rod 21 and closure top 18 as shown in FIG. 48. In some embodiments, when the receiver 10 is pre-assembled with the shank 4, the entire assembly 1 may be implanted after the insert 14 is pressed into non-floppy frictional engagement with the shank head 8 by inserting the driving tool (not shown) into the receiver and the shank drive 150 and rotating and driving the shank 4 into a desired location of the vertebra 17.

[0111] Again, with reference to FIG. 48 and also FIG. 49, the rod 21 is eventually positioned in an open or percutaneous manner in cooperation with the at least two bone screw assemblies 1. The closure structure 18 is then inserted into and advanced between the arms 160 of each of the receivers 10. The closure structure 18 is rotated, using a tool engaged with the inner drive 56 until a selected pressure is reached at which point the rod 21 engages the U-shaped seating surface 278 of the compression insert 14, further pressing the insert spherical surface 284 against the shank spherical surface 144, pressing the shank upper portion 8 and attached retainer 12 into locked frictional engagement with the receiver 10. With specific reference to FIGS. 3, 48, and 49, as the multi-start closure structure 18 rotates and moves downwardly into the respective receiver 10, the rim 60 engages and penetrates the rod surface 22, the closure structure 18 pressing downwardly against and biasing the rod 21 into compressive engagement with the insert 14 that urges the shank upper portion 8 and attached retainer 12 into locking engagement with the receiver, the retainer 12 spherical surface 227 frictionally abutting the spherical seating surface 203 of the receiver 10. For example, about 80 to about 120 inch pounds of torque on the closure top may be applied for fixing the bone screw shank 6 with respect to the receiver 10. Also, for example, with reference to FIGS. 52-58, when the shank 4 is disposed at an angle with respect to the receiver 10, the lower spherical surface 134 of the

shank upper portion 8 may also be in frictional engagement with a portion of the receiver spherical seating surface 203. The retainer 12 may also expand slightly upon locking, providing a full and secure frictional locking engagement with the receiver at the surface 203.

[0112] If removal of the rod 21 from any of the bone screw assemblies 1 is necessary, or if it is desired to release the rod 21 at a particular location, disassembly is accomplished by using the driving tool (not shown) that mates with the internal drive 56 on the closure structure 18 to rotate and remove such closure structure from the cooperating receiver 10. Disassembly is then accomplished in reverse order to the procedure described previously herein for assembly.

[0113] With further reference to FIG. 49 and also with reference to FIG. 50, at this time, the closure top 18 may be loosened or removed and/or the rod 21 may be adjusted and/or removed and the frictional engagement between the insert 14 and the receiver 10 at the receiver surface 196 will remain locked in place, advantageously maintaining a locked angular position of the shank 4 with respect to the receiver 10. Thus, at this time, another rod, such as the deformable rod 21' and cooperating alternative multi-start closure top 18' may be loaded onto the already locked-up assembly to result in an alternative assembly. It is noted that the closure drive 56' may advantageously be made smaller than the drive of the closure 18, such that the deformable rod 21' is not unduly pressed or deformed during assembly since the polyaxial mechanism is already locked.

[0114] With reference to FIGS. 51-58, prior to locking the insert 14 against the shank head 8, the shank 4 may be pivoted to a plurality of potentially desirable positions with respect to the receiver 10, followed by locking of the polyaxial mechanism by fully mating the multi-start closure top 18 with the receiver 10. For example, different angular or articulated positions of the shank 4 with respect to the receiver 10 are shown, some making full use of the stepped cut-out 208 and the c-shaped groove forming the surface 200 of the receiver and/or the notch 286 of the insert 14. For reference, FIG. 51 illustrates a zero degree relationship between the shank 4 and the receiver 10. In other words, the axis A of the shank is aligned with the axis B of the receiver. FIG. 52 shows the shank 4 pivoted laterally of the receiver cut-out portion 208 in an eighteen degree cephalic relationship. FIG. 53 shows the shank 4 pivoted away from the receiver cut-out portion 208 in an eighteen degree caudal relationship. FIG. 54 illustrates the shank 4 being pivoted with respect to the receiver 10 at an eighteen degree lateral relationship. FIG. 55 shows the shank 4 pivoted toward the receiver cut-out portion 208 at a forty-two degree medial by eight degree cephalic relationship. FIG. 56 shows the shank 4 pivoted toward the

receiver cut-out portion 208 at a forty-two degree medial relationship. FIGS. 57 and 58 show the shank 4 pivoted toward the receiver cut-out portion 208 at a forty-two degree medial by eight degree caudal relationship. FIG. 58 also shows that in such a pivoted relationship between the shank 4 and the receiver 10, a portion of the retainer 12 moves past the receiver surface 200 and is received by the notch 286 in the insert 14.

[0115] With reference to FIGS. 9 and 10, an alternative closure top 18' is shown that is almost identical to the closure top 18. However, the top 18' differs from the top 18 in that the top 18' includes a break-off head 70' that further includes a top surface 72' having tooling notches 73', an outer faceted driving surface 74', illustrated as having a hex-shaped profile, and an inner bore 76'. Otherwise, the closure top 18' includes a body 40', a first helical form 42', a second helical form 43', a body top surface 54', a body internal drive 56', a base 58', a rim 60', a cannulation bore 62' and a drive base surface 63' that is the same or substantially similar to the respective body 40, first helical form 42, second helical form 43, body top surface 54, internal drive 56, base 58, rim 60, cannulation bore 62 and drive base surface 63 previously described herein with respect to the closure top 18. The break-off head 70' is integral with the body 40' at the body top surface 54'. The inner bore 76' communicates with the inner drive 56' and the cannulation bore 62'. The break-off head 70' is designed to allow such head 70' to break from the body 40' at or near the top surface 54' at a preselected torque, for example, 70 to 140 inch pounds, when a hex-shaped tool (not shown) engages the outer surfaces 74' and drives the closure structure 18' into the receiver 10 as shown in FIG. 9. The inner drive 56' is used for disassembly or loosening of the closure 18' from the receiver 10, and re-tightening, if needed.

[0116] With reference to FIG. 11, another alternative multi-start closure top 318 is shown that is almost identical to the closure top 18 with the exception that the two flange forms 42 and 43 with respective starts 46 and 47 have been replaced with square threads 342 and 343 with respective starts 346 (not shown) and 347. Otherwise, the dual or double start closure top 318 includes a body 340, a body top surface 354, a body internal drive 356, a base 358, a rim 360', a cannulation bore 362 and a drive base surface 363 that is the same or substantially similar to the respective body 40, body top surface 54, internal drive 56, base 58, rim 60, cannulation bore 62 and drive base surface 63 previously described herein with respect to the closure top 18. In FIG. 11, the closure top 318 is shown partially wound into a polyaxial bone screw receiver 310 having opposed arms 360 with inner surfaces equipped with guide and advancement structures 368 that are sized and shaped to simultaneously closely receive and mate with the square

threads 342 and 343 of the double closure structure 318. Otherwise, the receiver 310 is identical or substantially similar to the receiver 10.

[0117] With reference to FIG. 12, an alternative multi-start closure top 418 is shown that is almost identical to the closure top 18 with the exception that the two flange forms 42 and 43 with respective starts 46 and 47 have been replaced with reverse angle threads 442 and 443 with respective starts 446 (not shown) and 447. Otherwise, the dual or double start closure top 418 includes a body 440, a body top surface 454, a body internal drive 456, a base 458, a rim 460', a cannulation bore 462 and a drive base surface 463 that is the same or substantially similar to the respective body 40, body top surface 54, internal drive 56, base 58, rim 60, cannulation bore 62 and drive base surface 63 previously described herein with respect to the closure top 18. The closure top 418 is shown partially wound into a polyaxial bone screw receiver 410 having opposed arms 460 with inner surfaces equipped with guide and advancement structures 468 that are sized and shaped to simultaneously closely receive and mate with the reverse angle threads 442 and 443 of the double start closure structure 418. Otherwise, the receiver 410 is identical or substantially similar to the receiver 10.

[0118] With reference to FIG. 13, another alternative multi-start closure top 518 is shown that is almost identical to the closure top 18 with the exception that the two flange forms 42 and 43 with respective starts 46 and 47 have been replaced with v-threads 542 and 543 with respective starts 546 (not shown) and 547. Otherwise, the dual or double start closure top 518 includes a body 540, a body top surface 554, a body internal drive 556, a base 558, a rim 560', a cannulation bore 562 and a drive base surface 563 that is the same or substantially similar to the respective body 40, body top surface 54, internal drive 56, base 58, rim 60, cannulation bore 62 and drive base surface 63 previously described herein with respect to the closure top 18. The closure top 518 is shown partially wound into a polyaxial bone screw receiver 510 having opposed arms 560 with inner surfaces equipped with guide and advancement structures 568 that are sized and shaped to simultaneously closely receive and mate with the threads 542 and 543 of the double start closure structure 518. Otherwise, the receiver 510 is identical or substantially similar to the receiver 10.

[0119] With reference to FIG. 14, another alternative multi-start closure top 618 is shown that is almost identical to the closure top 18 with the exception that the two flange forms 42 and 43 with respective starts 46 and 47 have been replaced with buttress threads 642 and 643 with respective starts 446 and 447 (not shown). Otherwise, the dual or double start closure top 618

includes a body 640, a body top surface 654, a body internal drive 656, a base 658, a rim 660', a cannulation bore 662 and a drive base surface 663 that is the same or substantially similar to the respective body 40, body top surface 54, internal drive 56, base 58, rim 60, cannulation bore 62 and drive base surface 63 previously described herein with respect to the closure top 18. The closure top 618 is shown partially wound into a polyaxial bone screw receiver 610 having opposed arms 660 with inner surfaces equipped with guide and advancement structures 668 that are sized and shaped to simultaneously closely receive and mate with the buttress threads 642 and 643 of the double start closure structure 618. Otherwise, the receiver 610 is identical or substantially similar to the receiver 10.

[0120] With reference to FIGS. 15 and 16, an open receiver 710 is illustrated that is substantially similar to the receiver 10 previously described herein with the exception that the receiver 710 includes opposed arms 760, each having an integral upstanding break-off extension 761. Each receiver arm 760 and integral extension 761 has an inner helically wound guide and advancement structure 768 that is sized and shaped to mate with the flange forms 42 and 43 of the dual start closure 18 previously described herein. The break-off extensions 761 are initially integral with the respective arms 760 and are then broken off by a user after the closure 18 has been rotatingly advanced along the arm extensions 761 and into the channel located between the receiver arms 760. In the illustrated embodiment, in addition to an outer groove or notch 770 located at or near a top surface 769 of each of the arms 760 where the extensions 761 break off from the receiver arms, illustrated inner arm surfaces include a recess or cut 771, best shown in FIG. 16, that runs substantially horizontally. Each recess 771 is curved and elongate and disposed somewhat cross-wise or transverse to the respective flange form 768. For example, with reference to the arm 760 shown in FIG. 16, the recess 771 cuts into a weakened region, generally 780, where the arm 760 joins with the respective attached adjacent extension 761, the curved and elongate recess 771 beginning at a lower portion or location 781 of the flange form recess or segment and terminating at an opposed upper end location of the flange form segment, while otherwise leaving the flange form 768 intact. Stated in another way, the substantially horizontally extending recess 771 cuts into both a lead portion and a trailing portion of each of the flange form segments located near and directly above the opposed arms 760 and substantially opposite the notch 770, thus further weakening the region where the extension and the arm attach, without destroying the flange form path, so that the closure 18 is not derailed by the recess 771 or otherwise prohibited from moving downwardly into the receiver channel formed between the receiver arms 760.

[0121] With reference to FIG. 17, the multi-start closure 18 is shown cooperating with a spinal implant receiver, such as a bone screw receiver 10' and a discrete, detachable guide tool 801. The elongate guide tool 801, only partially shown in FIG. 17, is typically sized for extending from the bone screw receiver 10' upwardly to a location outside of a patient, the tool providing a guide channel for operably guiding the rod 21 or other longitudinal connecting member from a position exterior of the bone screw receiver 10' toward and into the bone screw receiver 10'. The illustrated guide tool has opposed arms 805, each arm having a helical guide and advancement structure 810 thereon that is illustrated as a square thread form, but may be of other geometry, including a flange form the same or similar to the flange forms 168' of the receiver 10' that mates with the flange forms 42 and 43 of the closure structure 18. Thus, the illustrated structures 810 are sized and shaped for receiving and rotating engagement with a dual start closure. The closure 18 is shown partially wound into the receiver 10' that is identical or substantially similar to the receiver 10 with the exception of certain outer arm surface features (not shown). Thus, the receiver 10' includes opposed arms 160' with inner surfaces having guide and advancement structures 168' that are sized and shaped to simultaneously closely receive and mate with the flange forms 42 and 43 of the dual start closure structure 18. The guide tool 801 includes attachment structure for detachable attachment to the receiver 10'(not shown), that may take a variety of forms and methods, including, but not limited to a slide-on, slide-off attachment, a snap-on, rotate off attachment, a rotate-on and rotate-off attachment, to name a few. For example, cooperating attachment structure for both the tool and the receiver may be used that is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 7,470,279 and incorporated by reference herein. Returning to the inner helically wound guide and advancement structure 810 formed on each arm 804 of the guide tool 801, the structure 810 is sized and shaped for being aligned with the receiver arms 160' during removable attachment of the tool 801 with the respective bone screw receiver 10' so as to continue the helical pathway for the closure 18, the structures 810 being synchronized with the flange forms 168' to allow for the rotation and driving transfer of the closure 18 from the tool 801 into the receiver 10'.

[0122] It is to be understood that while certain forms of the present invention have been illustrated and described herein, it is not to be limited to the specific forms or arrangement of parts described and shown.

CLAIMS

1. A medical implant assembly comprising:

a receiver having a first arm and a second arm spaced apart from each other by a channel, the first arm and the second arm each having a top surface and an inner surface, the first and second arms each having a discontinuously helically wound thread extending up to the top surface, the channel being formed by the first arm and the second arm opening onto the top surfaces and configured to receive a rod; and

a closure being threaded and configured to close the channel, the closure having an axis of rotation and a continuously helically wound thread form, the continuously helically wound thread form having a start structure and an upper loading surface extending between a root and a crest of the continuously helically wound thread form, the start structure having a leading face extending below the upper loading surface, the leading face including a partial concave surface adjacent the root and a partial convex surface adjacent the crest, the partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other.

2. The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the partial concave surface tangentially blends with the partial convex surface.

3. The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the start structure is a first start structure disposed at a diametrically opposite location on the closure from a second start structure.

4. The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the continuously helically wound thread form of the closure includes a lower surface disposed between the root and the crest, and wherein the leading face of the start structure extends between the upper loading surface and the lower surface.

5. The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the leading face of the start structure includes at least a partial planar surface.

6. The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the first arm includes a first breakoff extension coupled to the top surface of the first arm, and the second arm includes a second breakoff extension coupled to the top surface of the second arm, each of the first and second breakoff extensions including an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread

form, the discontinuously helically wound thread form of the first breakoff extension configured to cooperate with the discontinuously helically wound thread of the first arm, and the discontinuously helically wound thread form of the second breakoff extension configured to cooperate with the discontinuously helically wound thread of the second arm to rotatably transfer the closure there between prior to the first and second breakoff extensions being separated from the first and second arms, respectively.

7. The medical implant assembly of claim 6, wherein a first outer radiused notch is located at a convergence of the first breakoff extension and the first arm at the top surface thereof, and a second outer radiused notch is located at a convergence of the second breakoff extension and the second arm at the top surface thereof, the first outer radiused notch being located opposite a first inner radiused recess, and the second outer radiused notch being located opposite a second inner radiused recess.

8. The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the start structure includes a bottom beveled surface.

9. The medical implant assembly of claim 1, wherein the upper loading surface of the continuously helically wound thread form of the threaded closure slopes rearward from the root to towards the crest.

10. The medical implant assembly of claim 9, wherein the slope of the upper loading surface is greater than five degrees measured from a horizontal line drawn tangent along the upper loading surface.

11. A medical implant assembly comprising:

a receiver having a first arm and a second arm spaced apart from each other by a channel, the first arm and the second arm each having a top surface and an inner surface, the first and second arms having discontinuously helically wound threads extending up to the top surface, the channel being formed by the first arm and the second arm opening onto the top surfaces and configured to receive a rod; and

a closure configured to close the channel, the closure having an axis of rotation and a continuously helically wound thread form comprising a first thread and a second thread, the first thread comprising a first start structure and a first upper loading surface extending between a first root and a first crest of the first thread, the first start structure including a first leading face

extending below the first upper loading surface, the second thread comprising a second start structure and a second upper loading surface extending between a second root and a second crest of the second thread, the second start structure including a second leading face extending below the second upper loading surface, the first and second leading faces each including a partial concave surface adjacent the first and second root, respectively, and a partial convex surface adjacent the first and second crest, respectively, the partial concave and partial convex surfaces of the first and second leading faces each defined by a radius that is substantially equal with respect to each other.

12. The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first start structure and the second start structure are disposed at diametrically opposite locations from each other on the closure.

13. The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first leading face includes a first inflection point between the partial concave surface and the partial convex surface of the first leading face, and the second leading face includes a second inflection point between the partial concave surface and the partial convex surface of the second leading face.

14. The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first thread includes a first lower surface disposed between the first root and the first crest and the second thread includes a second lower surface disposed between the second root and the second crest, and wherein the first leading face extends between the first upper loading surface and the first lower surface and the second leading face extends between the second upper loading surface and the second lower surface.

15. The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first and second leading faces each includes at least a partial planar surface.

16. The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the top surfaces of the first and second arms each include a breakoff extension with an inner surface having a discontinuously helically wound thread form, the first and second arm breakoff extension thread forms being continuous with the respective discontinuously helically wound thread form on the inner surface of the first and second arms.

17. The medical implant assembly of claim 11, wherein the first start structure includes a first bottom beveled surface and the second start structure includes a second bottom beveled surface.

ABSTRACT

A medical implant assembly including a receiver and a closure. The receiver having first and second arms each having a discontinuously helically wound thread extending up to a top surface thereof. The closure being threaded and configured to close the channel. The closure having an axis of rotation and a continuously helically wound thread form. The continuously helically wound thread form having a start structure and an upper loading surface extending between a root and a crest of the continuously helically wound thread form. The start structure having a leading face extending below the upper loading surface. The leading face including a partial concave surface adjacent the root and a partial convex surface adjacent the crest. The partial concave and partial convex surfaces each defined by a radius of curvature that is substantially equal with respect to each other.

Fig. 1.

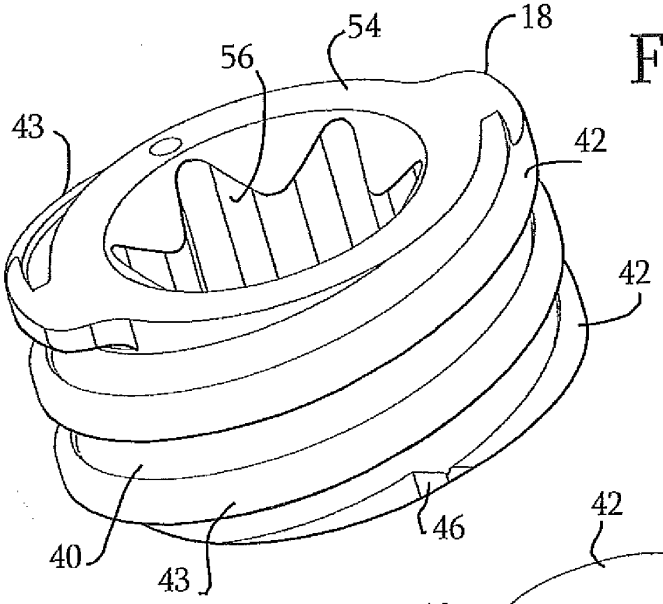


Fig. 2.

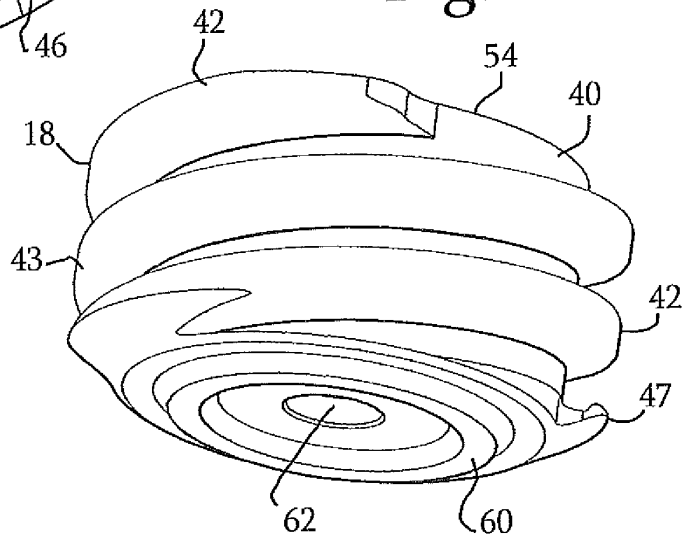
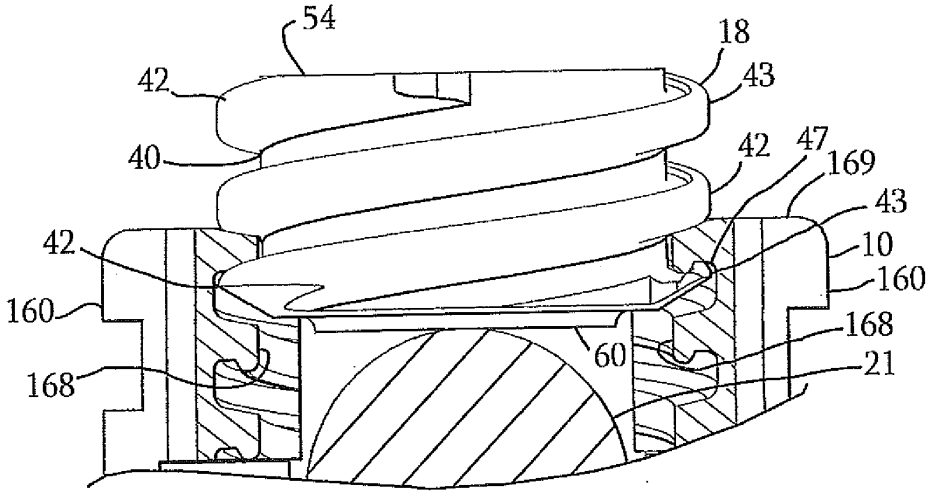


Fig. 3.



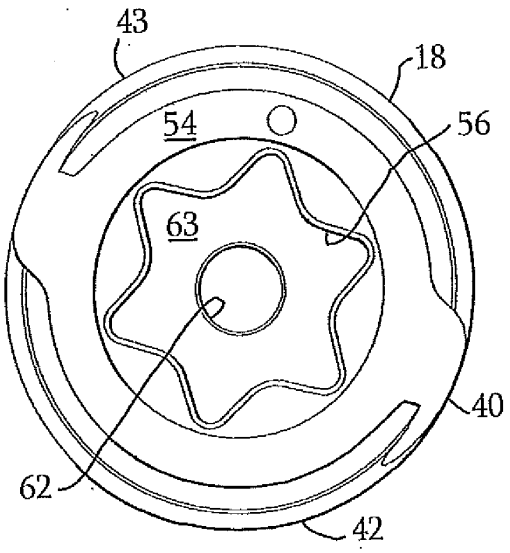


Fig. 4.

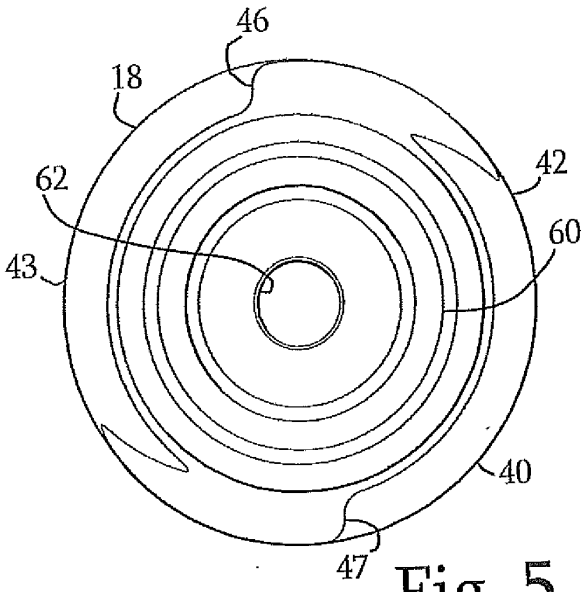


Fig. 5.

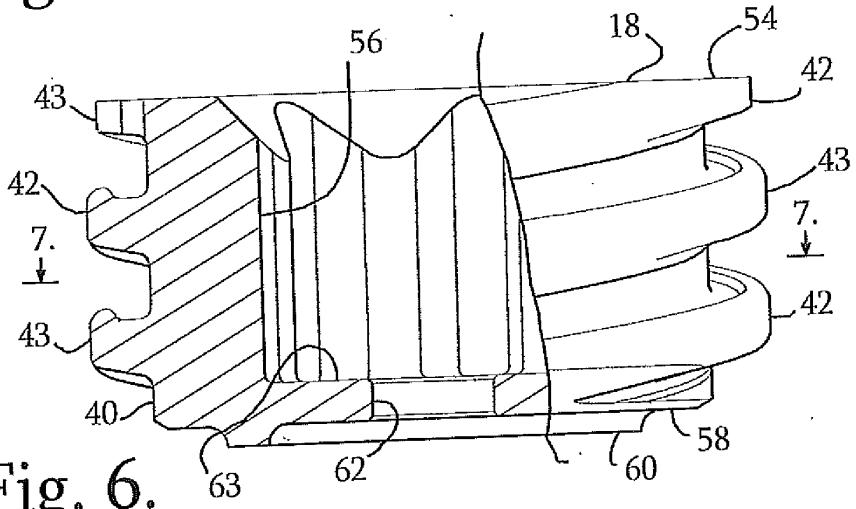


Fig. 6.

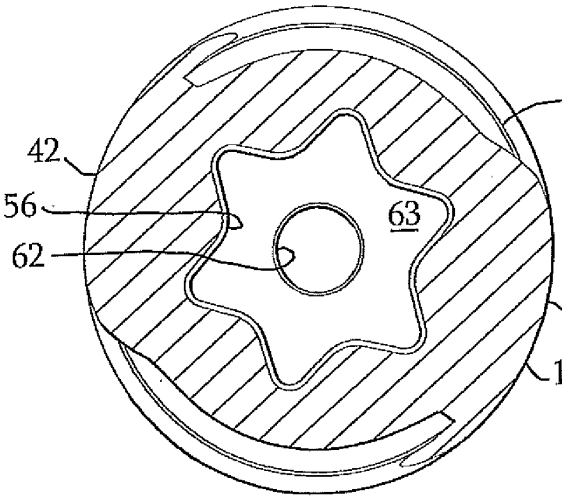


Fig. 7.

Fig. 8.

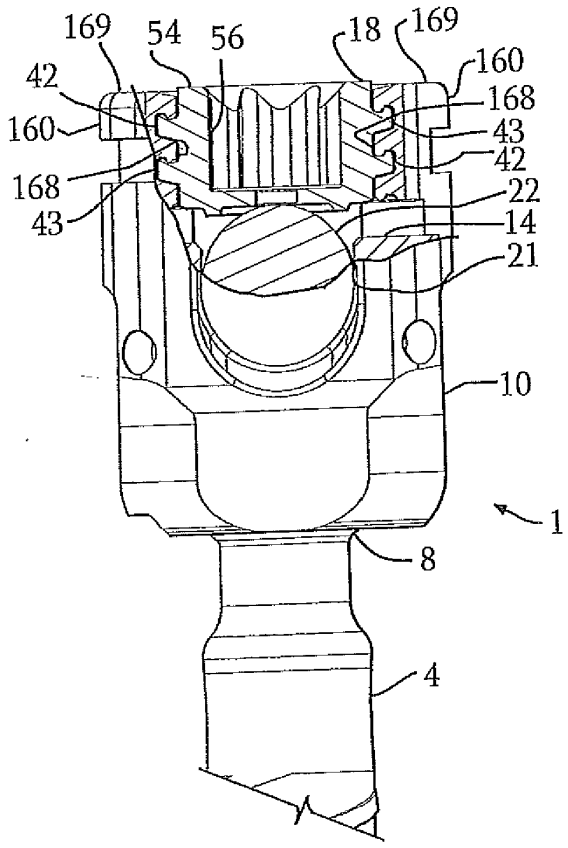


Fig. 9.

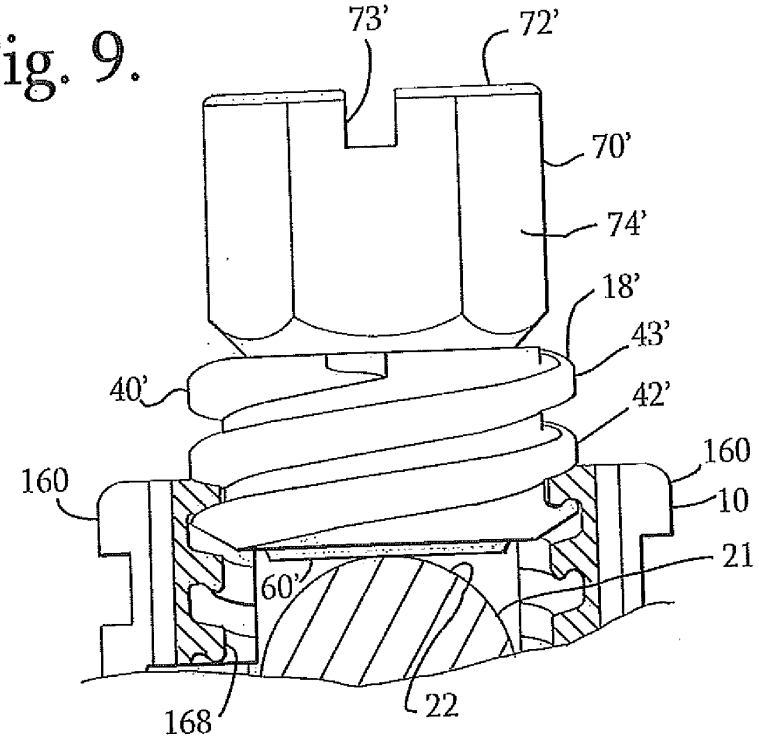

73'
72'
70'
74'
18'
43'
40'
42'
160
160
10
21
60'
168
22

Fig. 10.

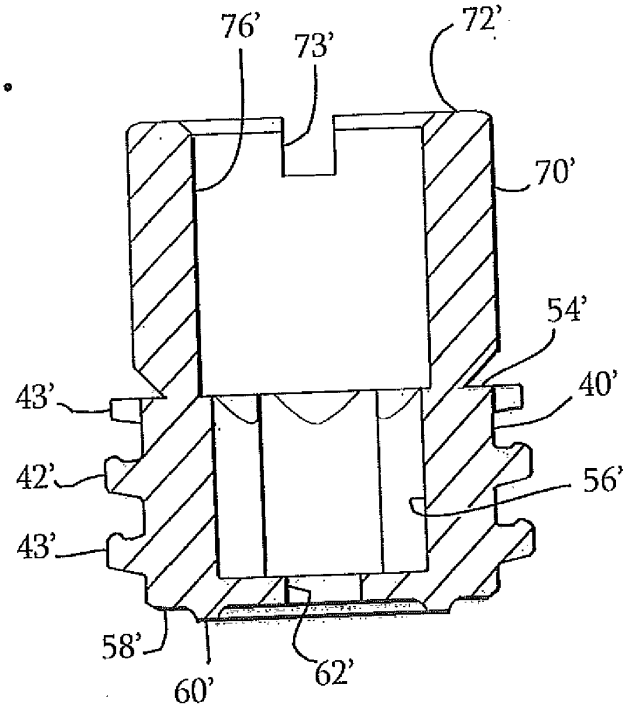

76'
73'
72'
70'
54'
43'
40'
42'
56'
43'
58'
60'
62'

Fig. 11.

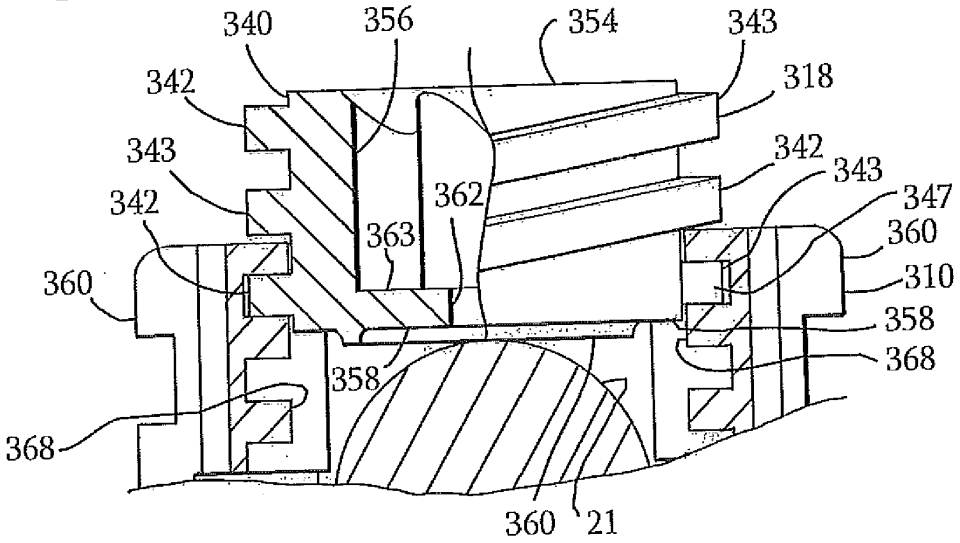

340
356
354
343
342
318
343
342
343
342
347
362
363
360
360
310
358
368
358
368
360
21

Fig. 12.

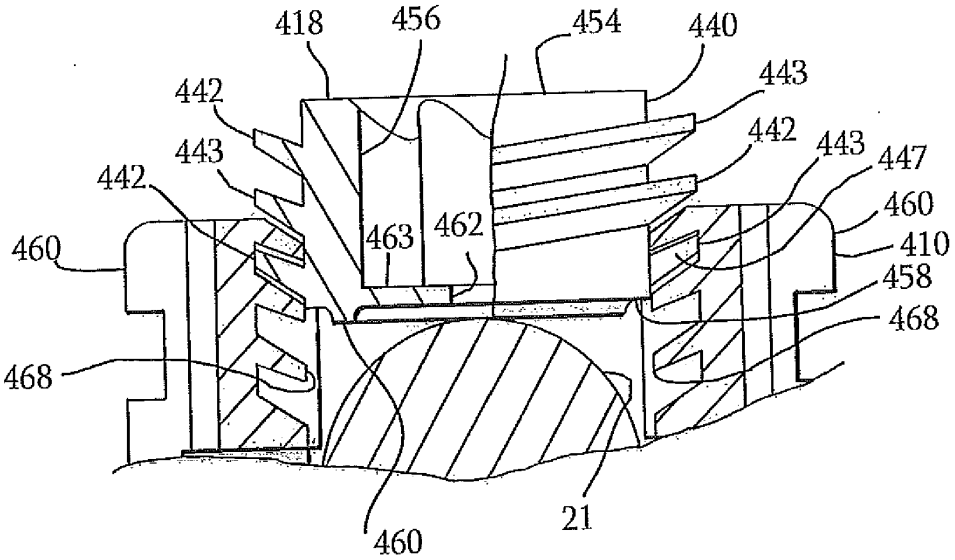

418
456
454
440
443
442
442
443
443
447
442
460
463
462
460
410
458
460
468
468
460
21

Fig. 13.

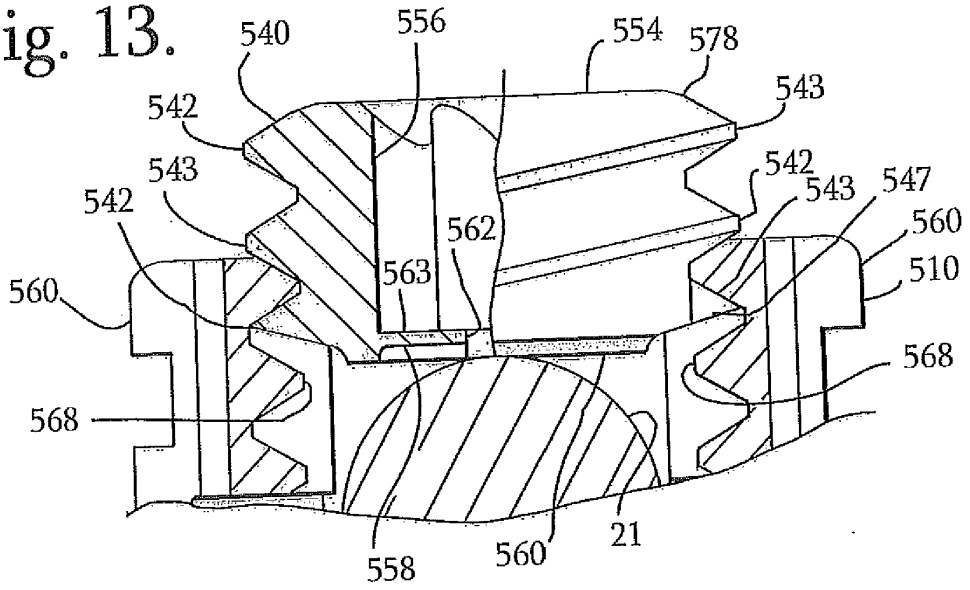

540
556
554
578
543
542
543
542
543
547
542
562
560
563
510
560
568
568
558
560
21

Fig. 14.

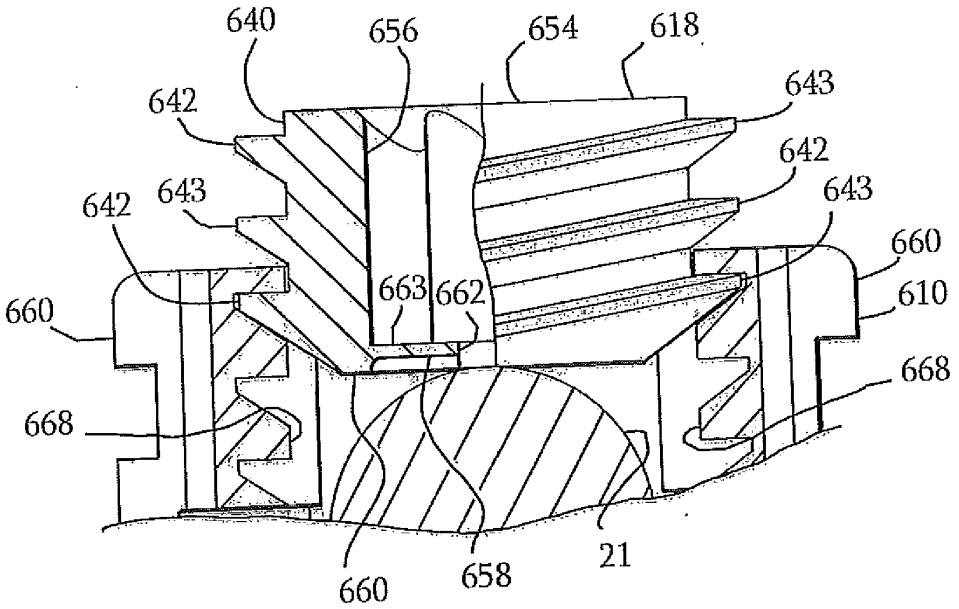
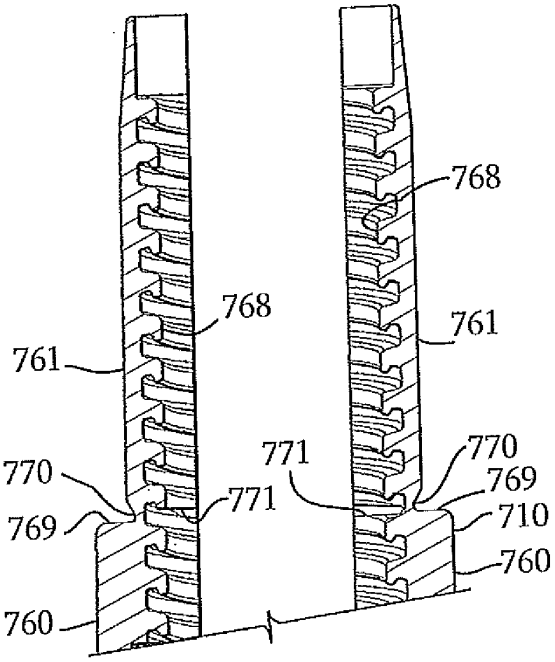

640
656
654
618
643
642
642
643
642
643
660
663
662
610
660
668
668
660
658
21

Fig. 15.



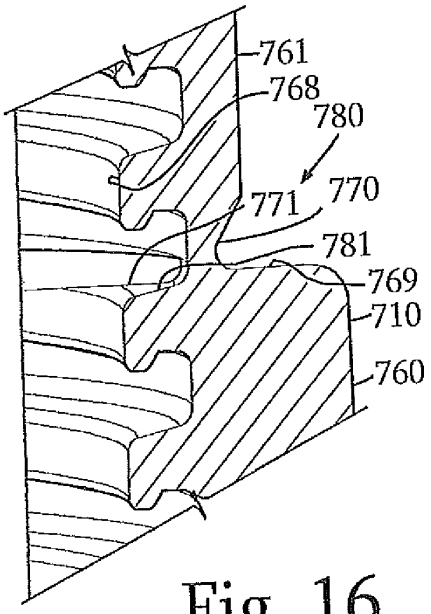


Fig. 16.

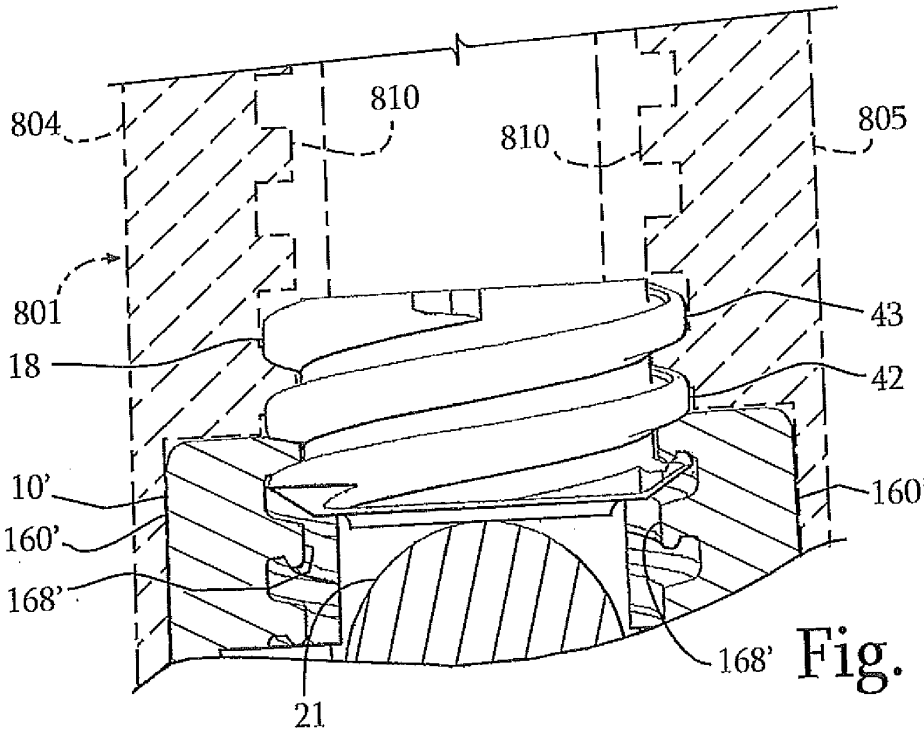


Fig. 17.

Fig. 18.

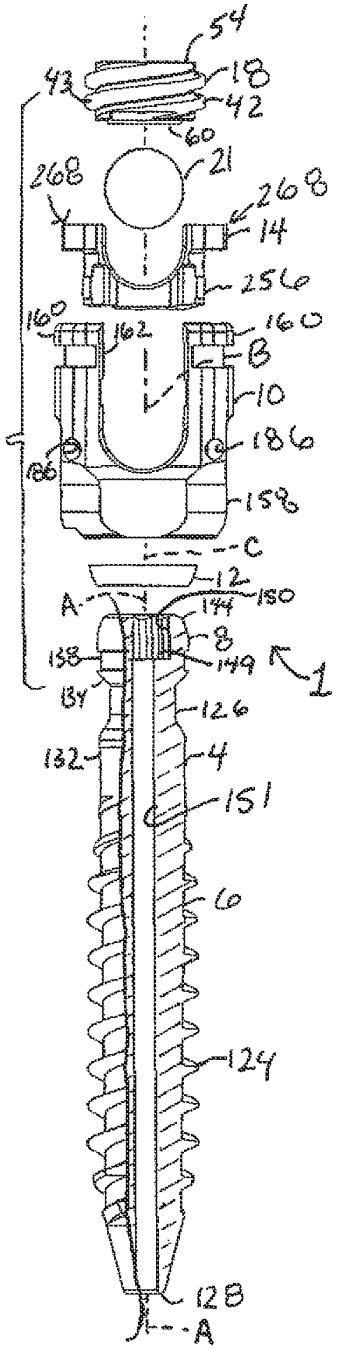


Fig. 19.

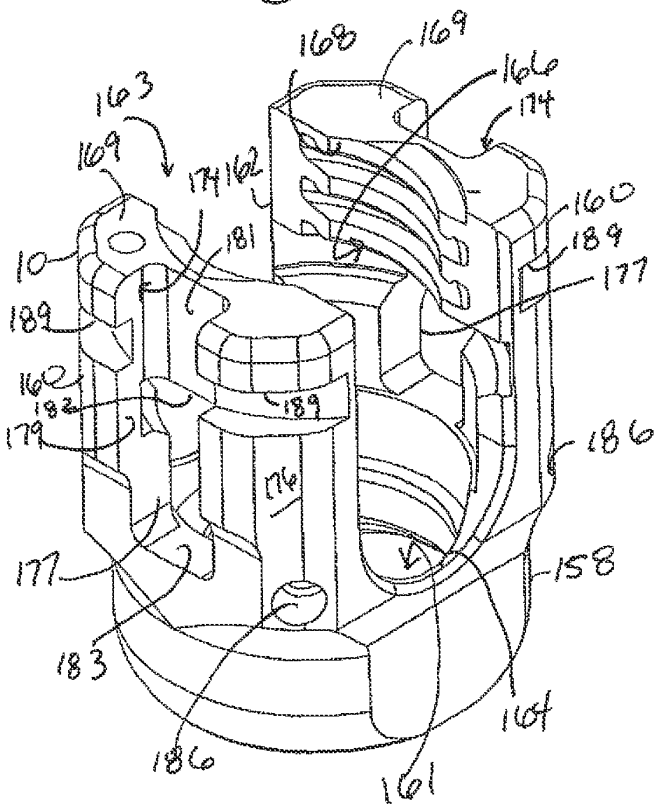


Fig. 20.

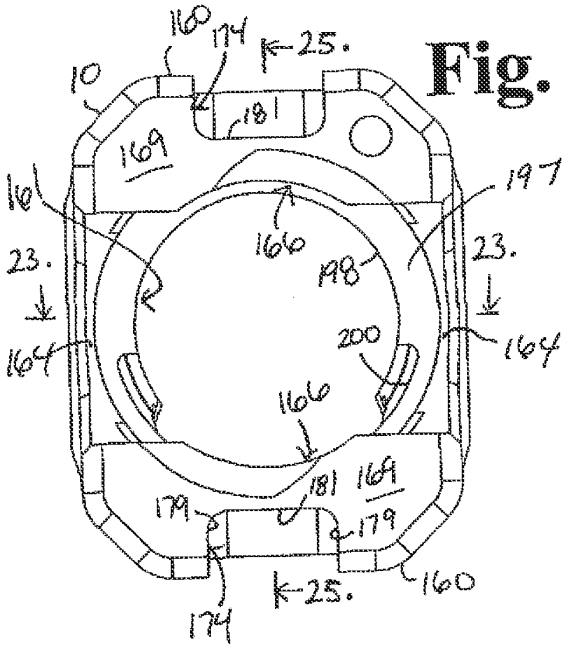


Fig. 21.

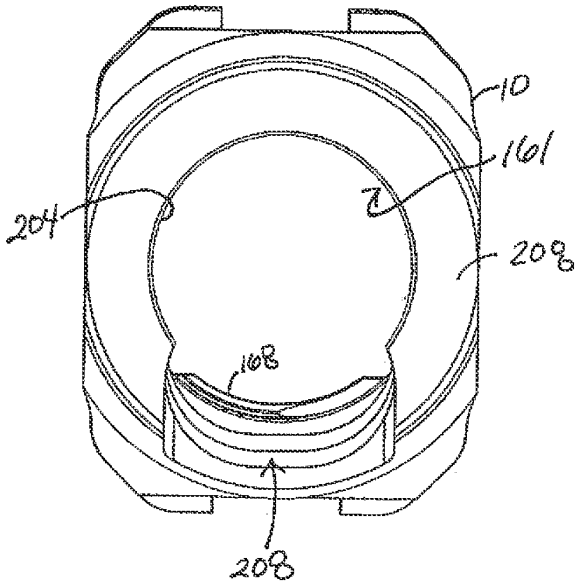


Fig. 22.

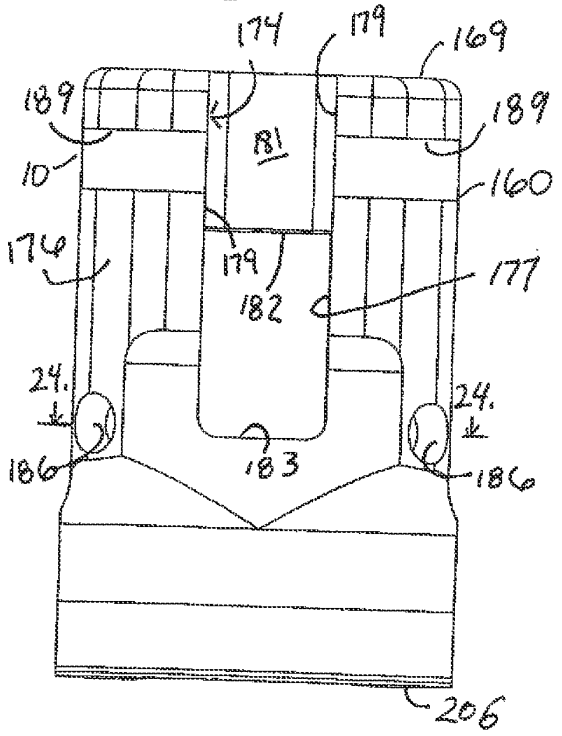


Fig. 23.

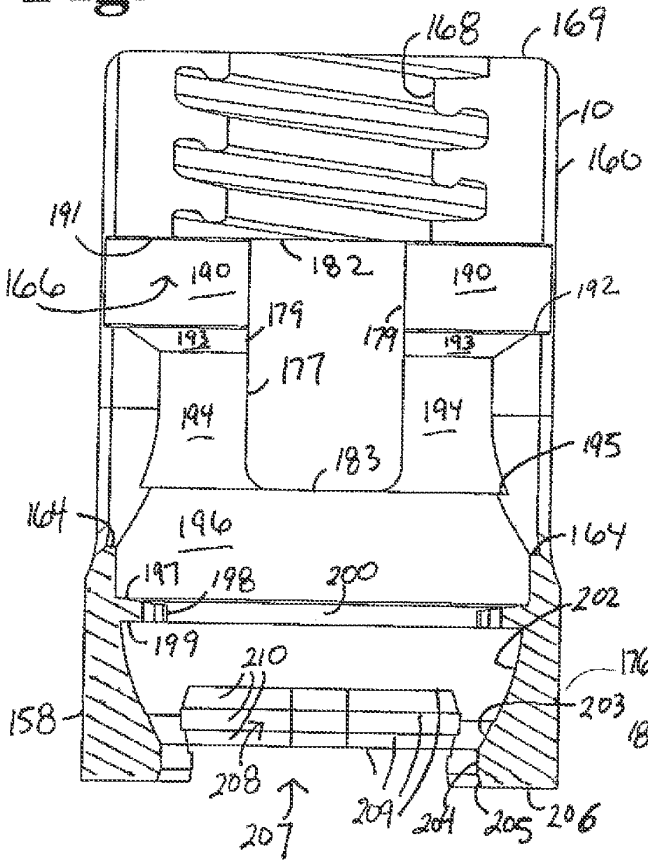


Fig. 24.

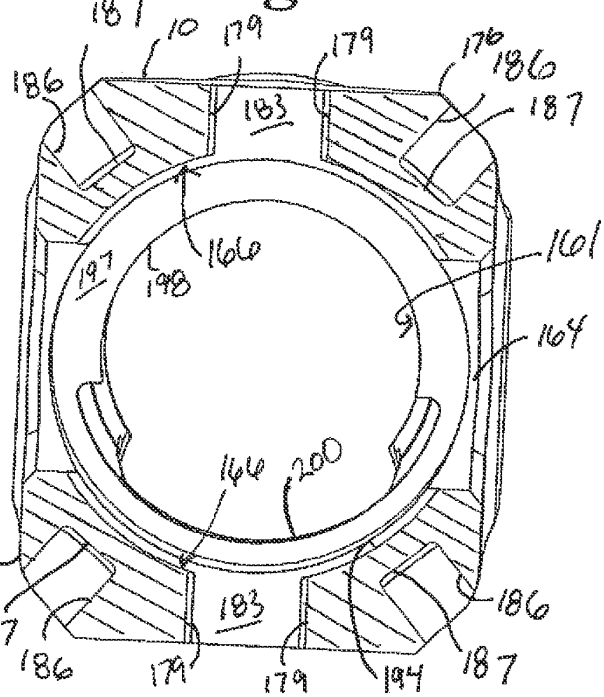


Fig. 25.

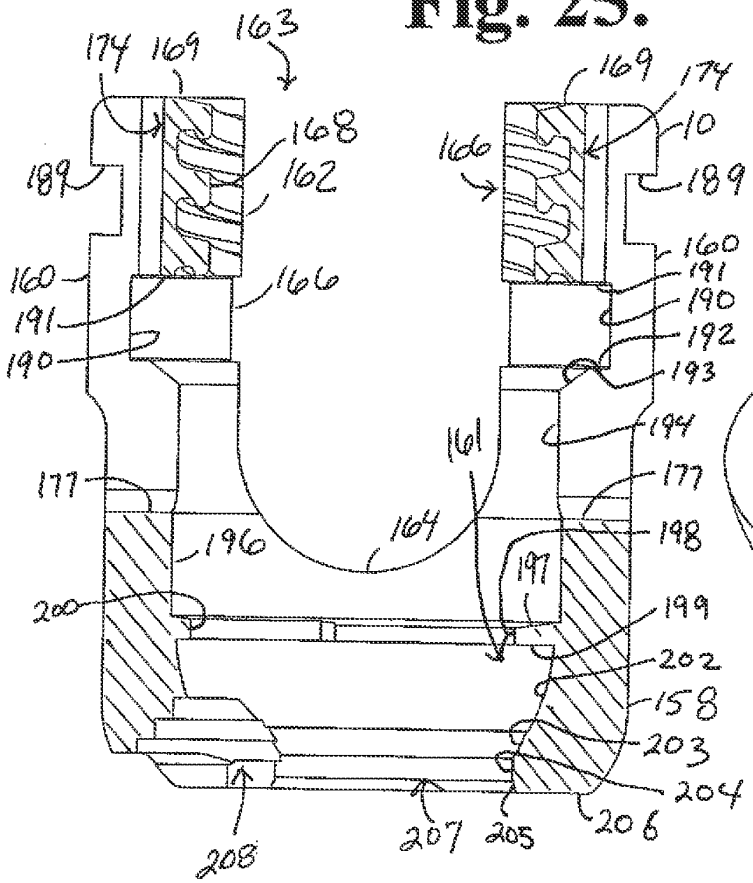


Fig. 26.

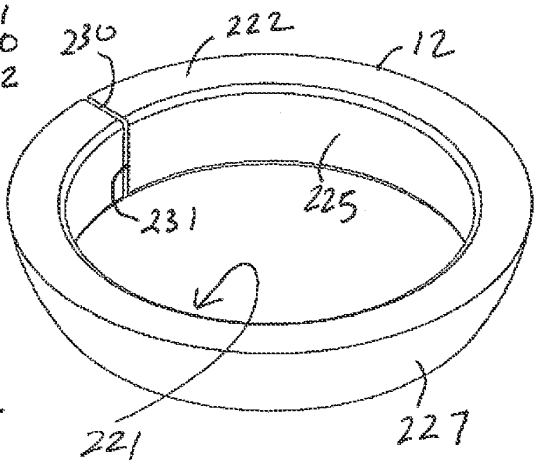
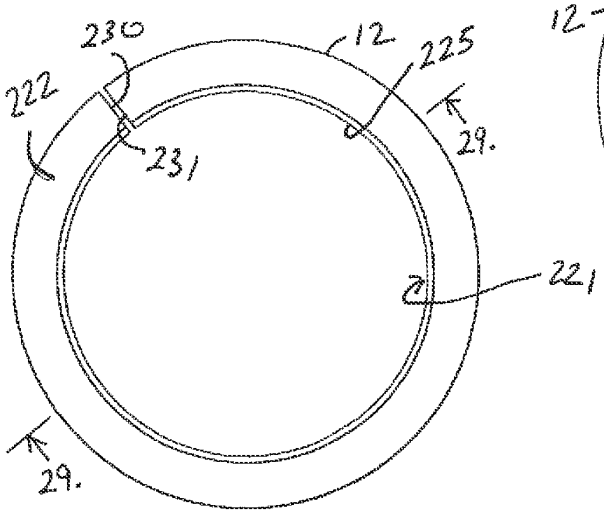


Fig. 27.



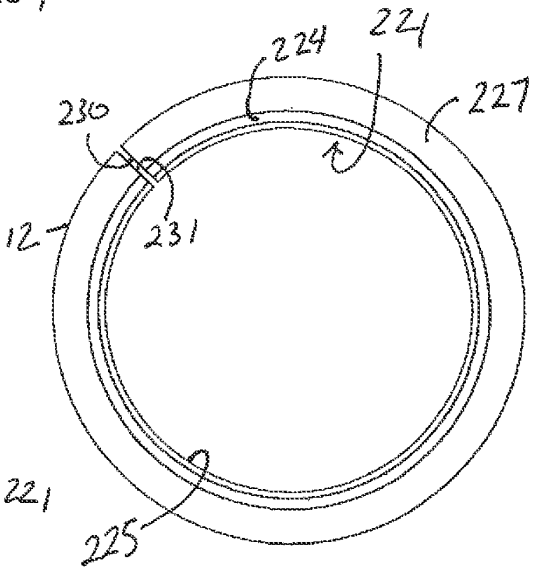


Fig. 28.

Fig. 29.

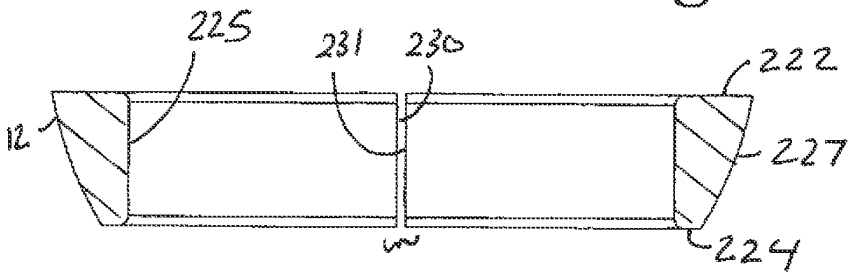


Fig. 30.

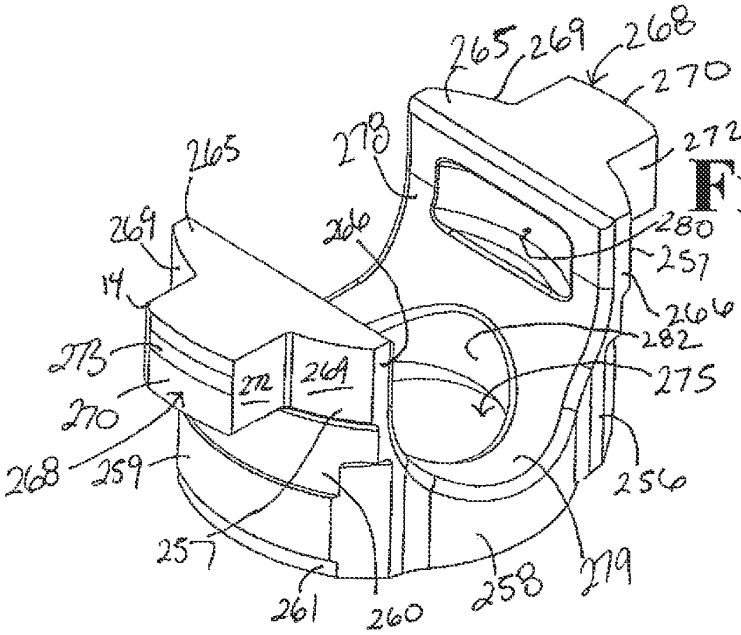


Fig. 31.

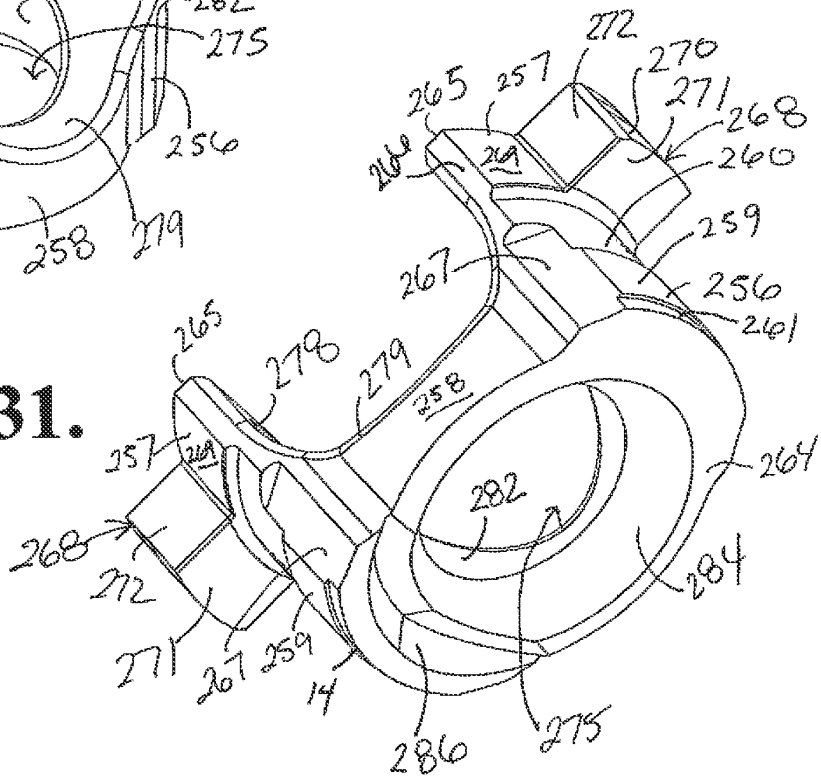


Fig. 32.

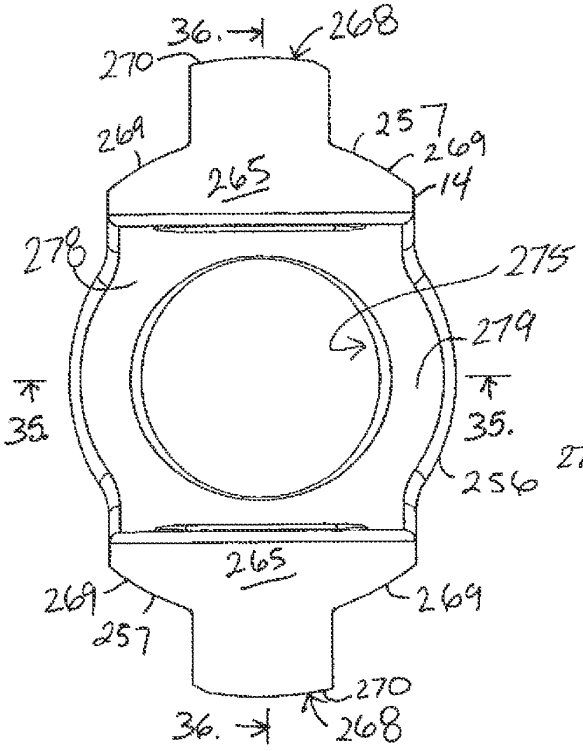


Fig. 33.

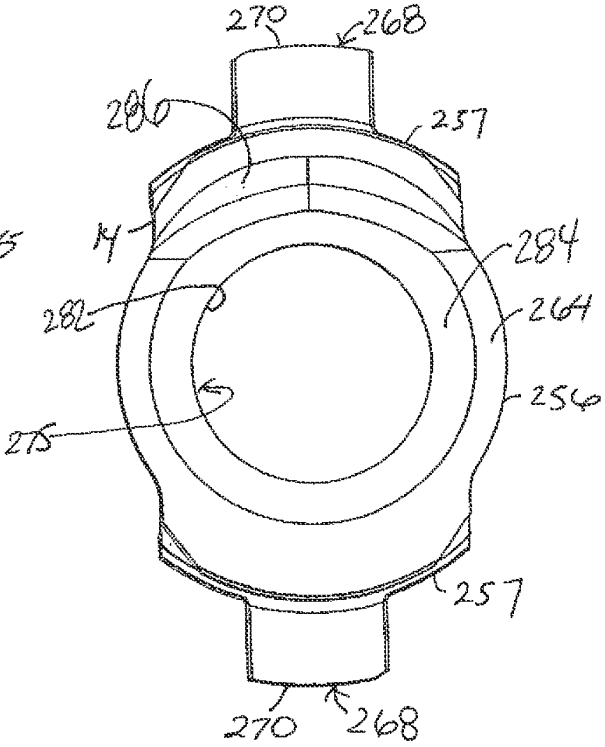


Fig. 34.

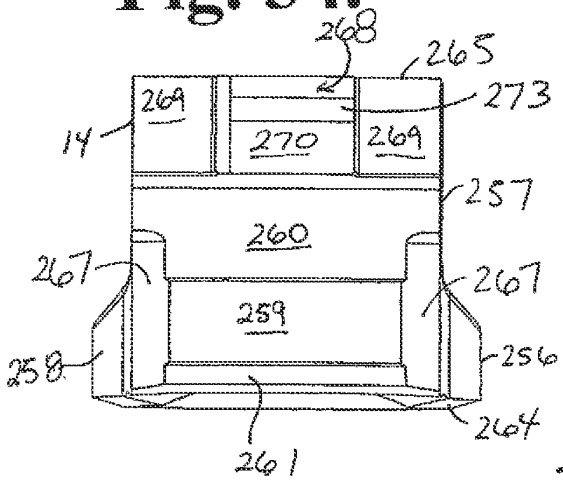
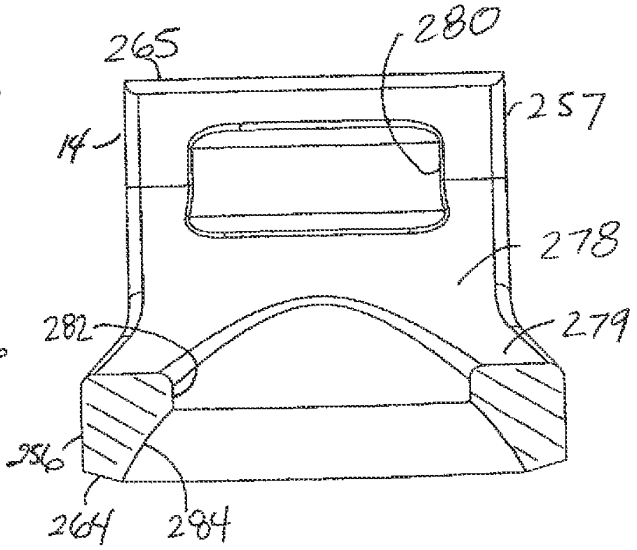


Fig. 35.



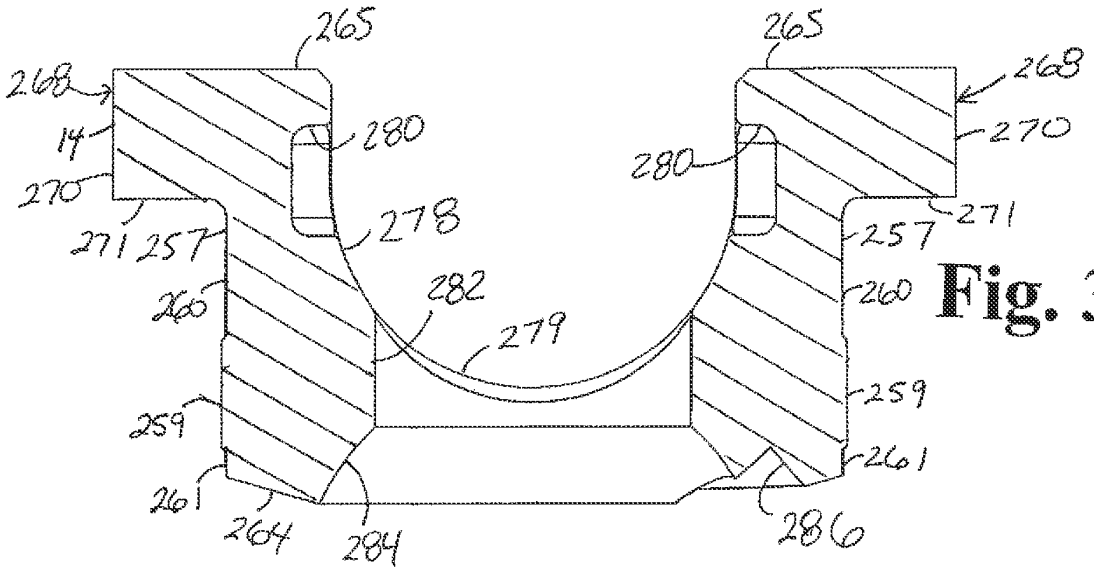


Fig. 36.

Fig. 37.

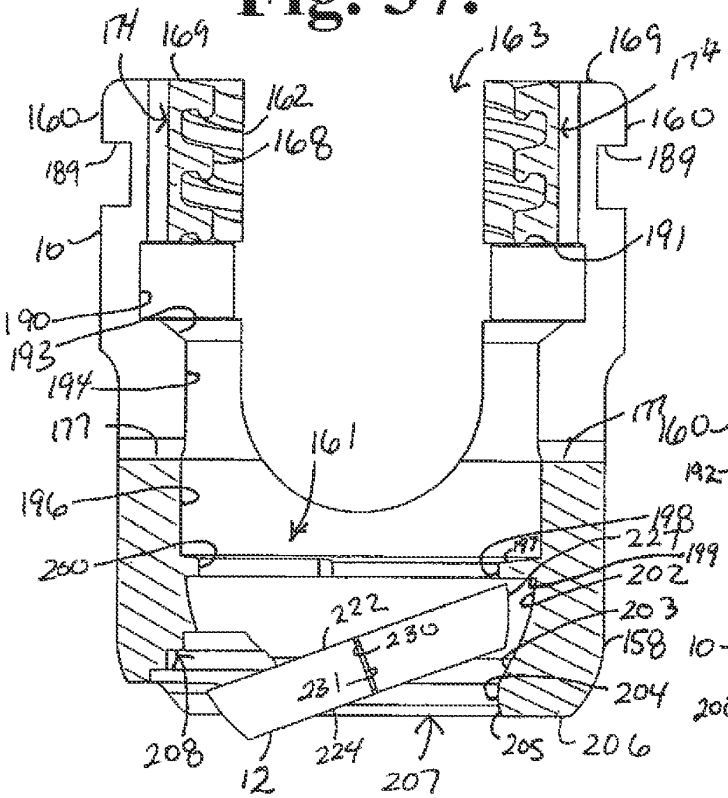


Fig. 38.

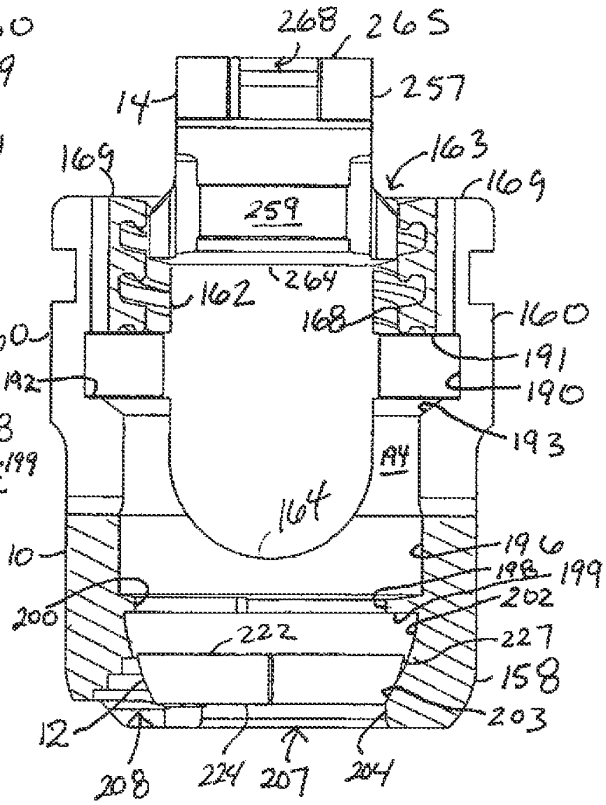


Fig. 39.

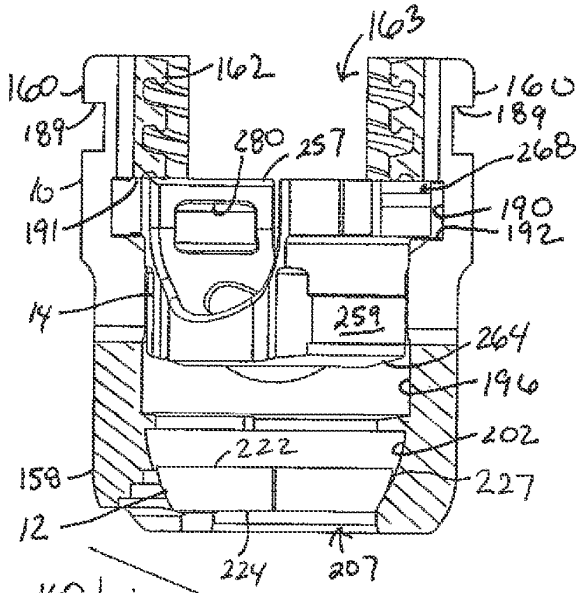


Fig. 40.

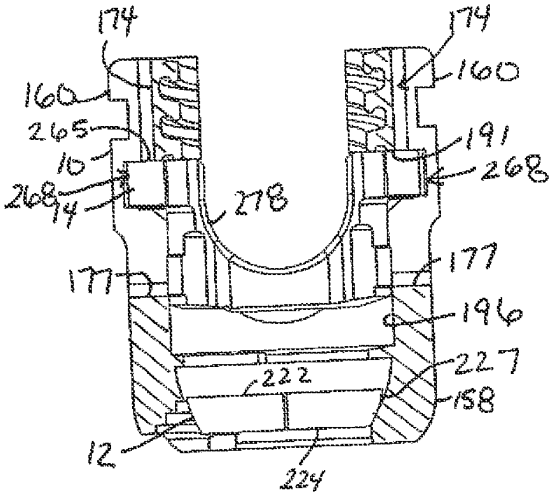


Fig. 41.

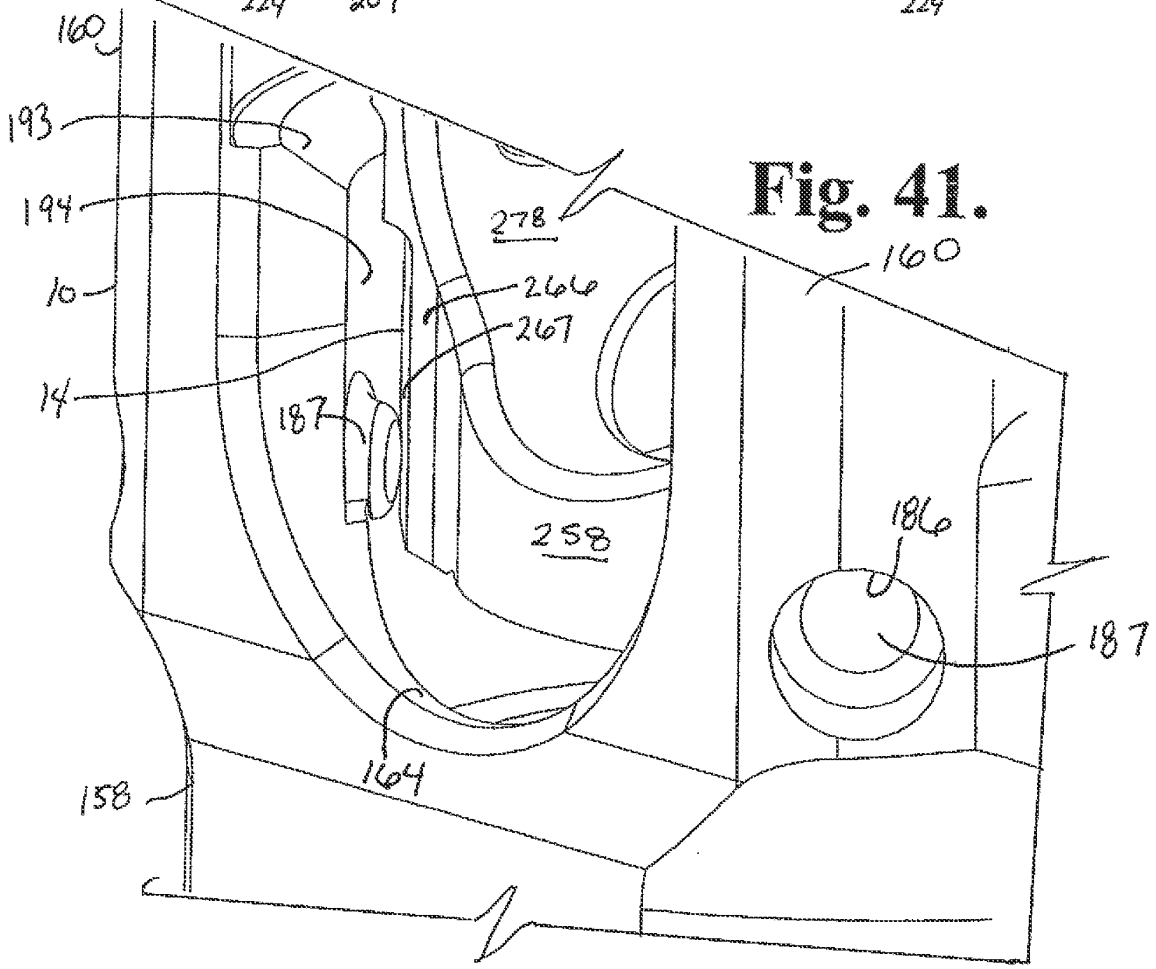


Fig. 42.

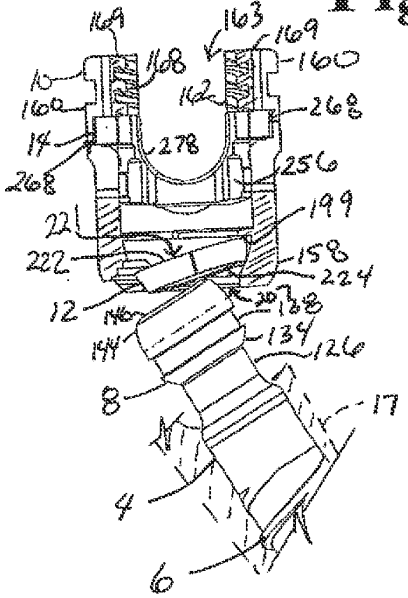


Fig. 43.

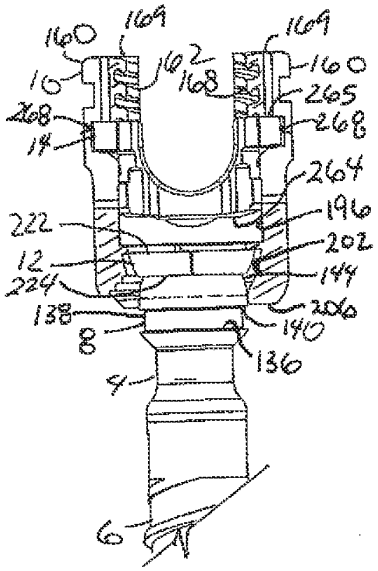


Fig. 44.

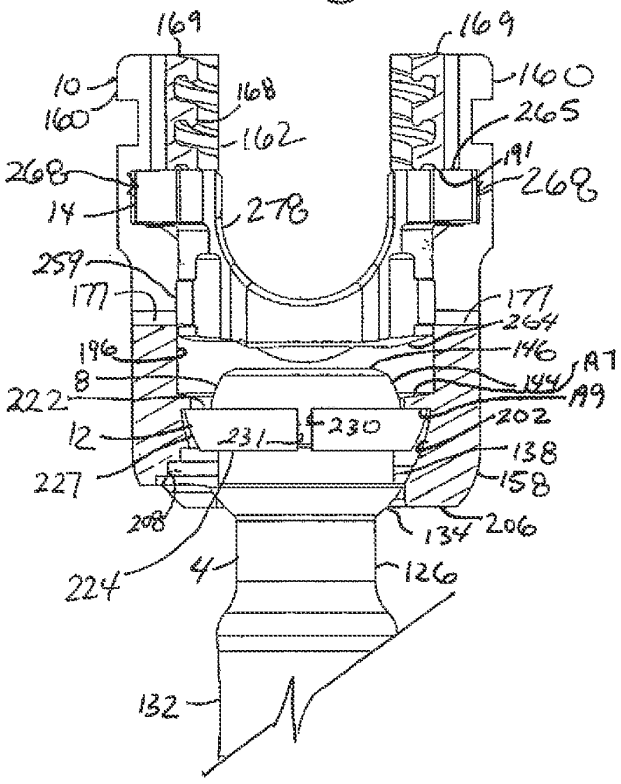


Fig. 45.

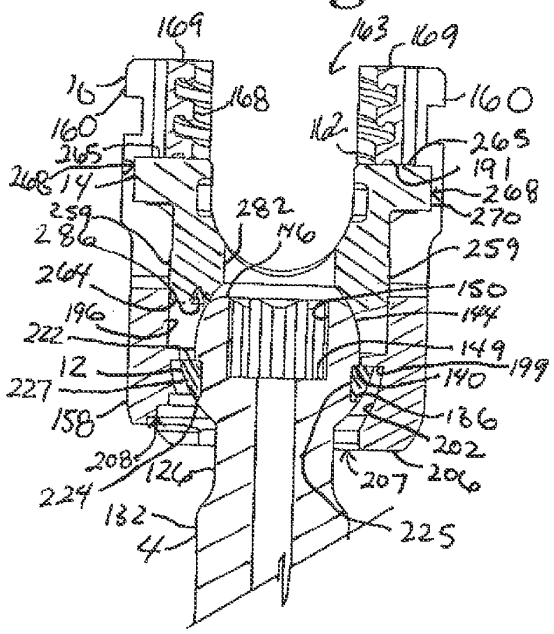


Fig. 46.

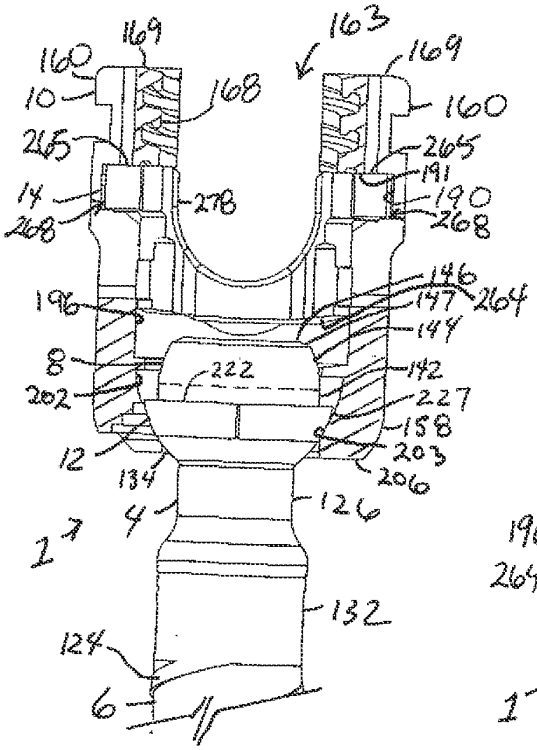


Fig. 47.

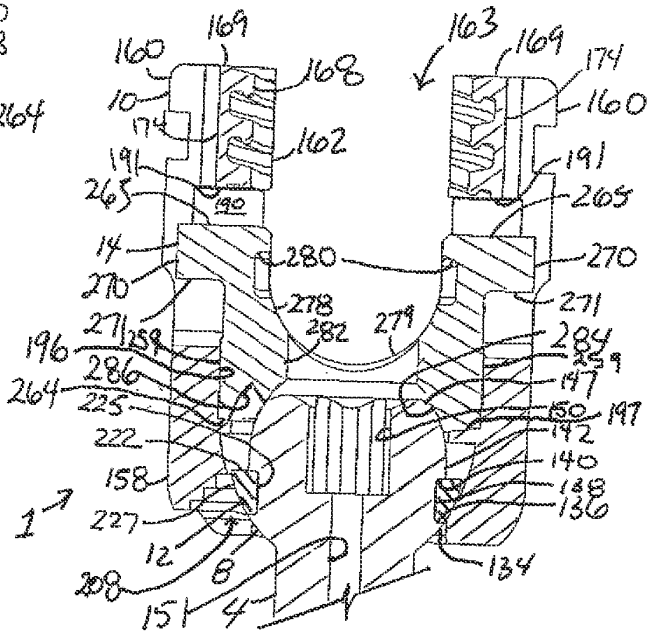


Fig. 48.

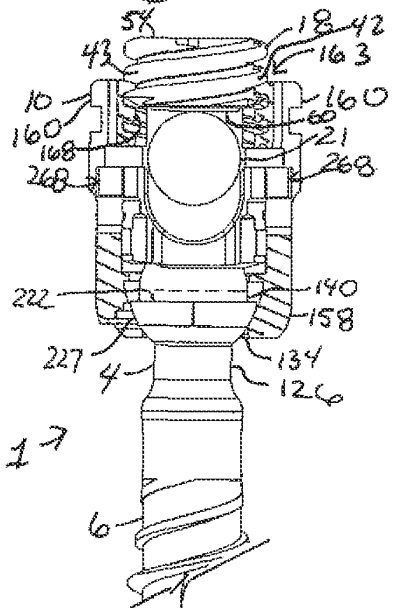


Fig. 49.

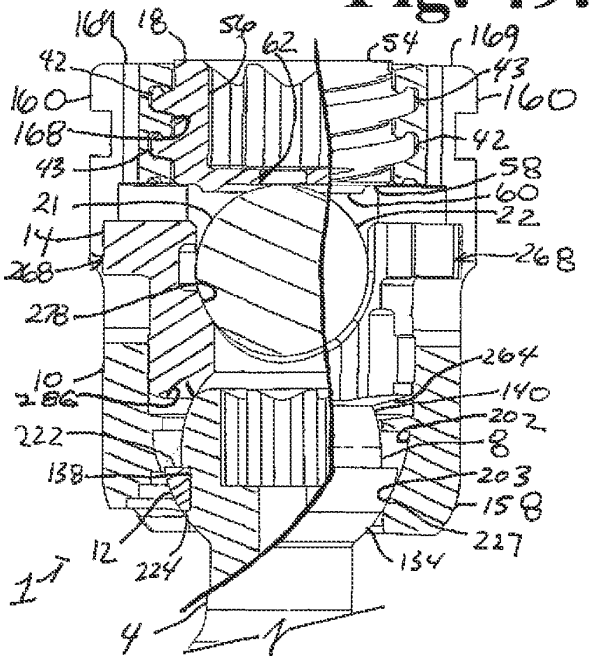


Fig. 50.

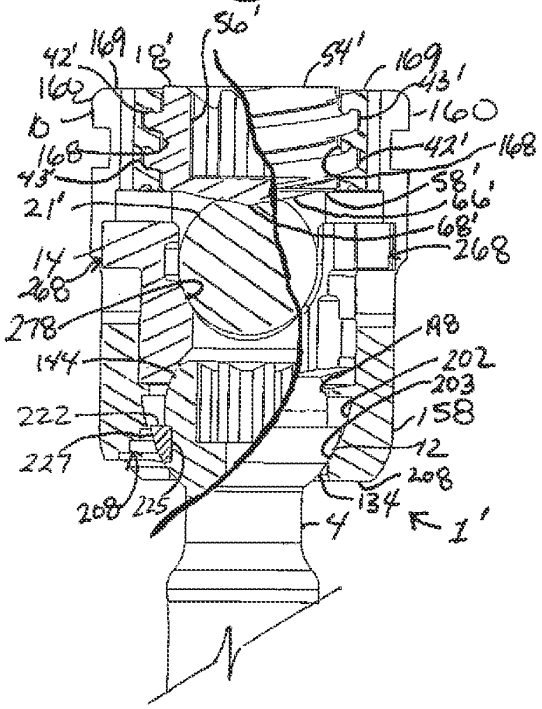


Fig. 51.

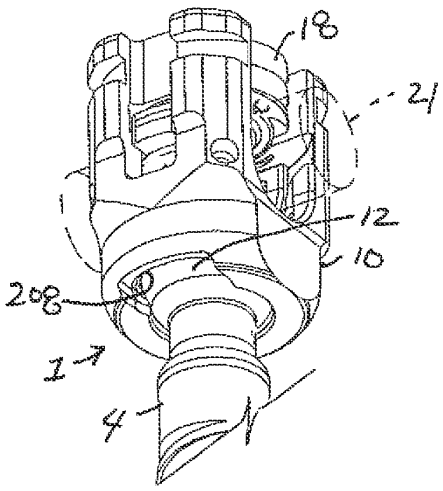


Fig. 52.

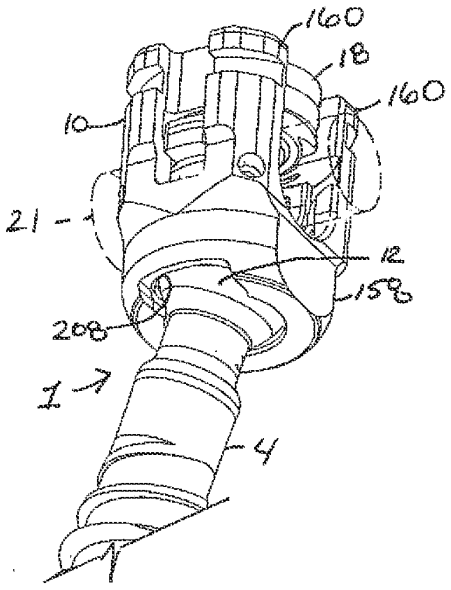


Fig. 53.

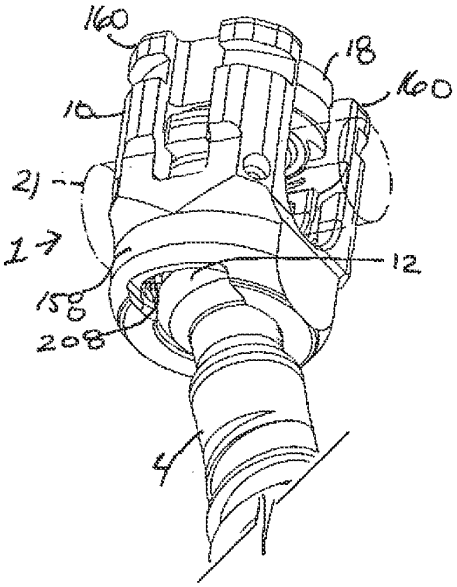


Fig. 54.

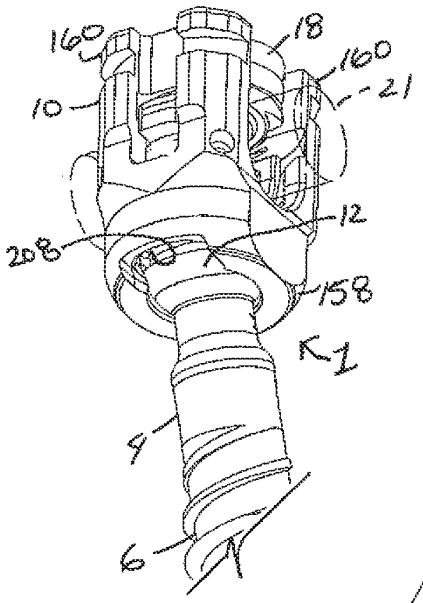


Fig. 55.

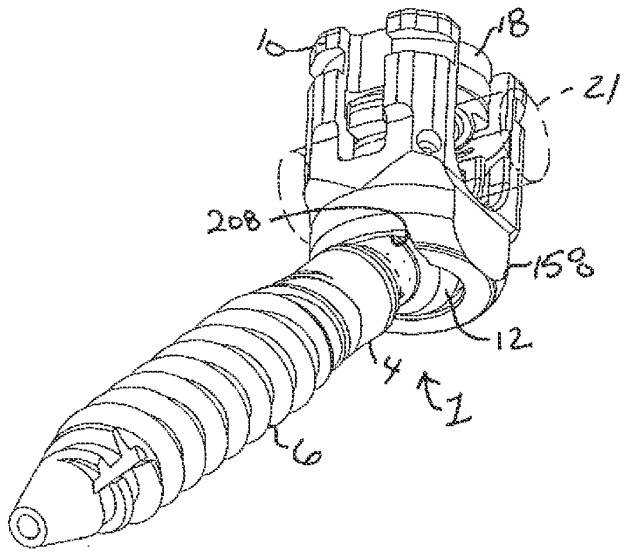


Fig. 56.

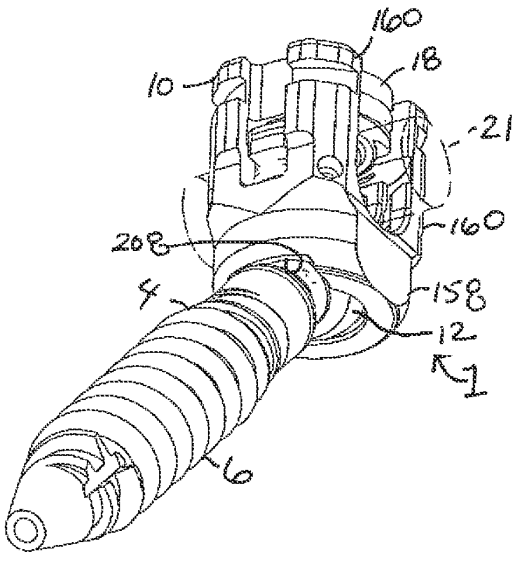


Fig. 57.

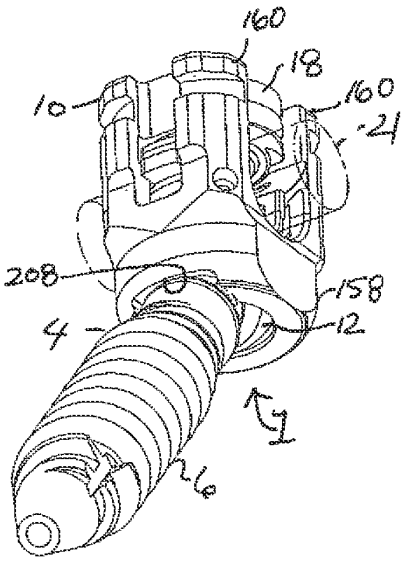
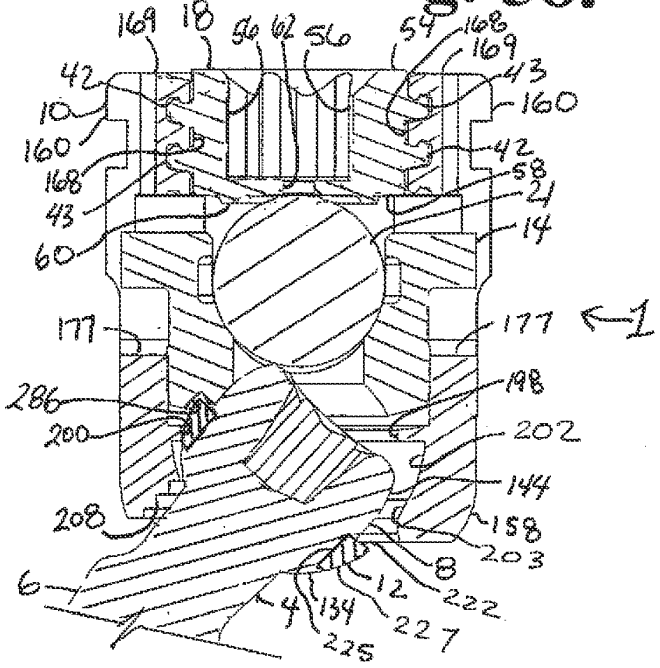


Fig. 58.


169
18
50
62
56
54
168
169
42
43
10
160
160
42
168
58
43
21
60
14
177
177
1
286
198
200
202
144
208
158
203
8
6
12
222
4
134
227
225

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Application No.	: TBD	Confirmation No.	:	
First Applicant	: Roger P. Jackson	Art Unit	:	
Filed	: Herewith	Examiner	:	
Title	MEDICAL IMPLANT THREADED CLOSURE HAVING A START STRUCTURE WITH SYMMETRICALLY SHAPED CONCAVE AND CONVEX LEADING SURFACES			
Docket No.	: JAC023-667905			
Customer No.	: 24030	Entity Status	:	Undiscounted

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
PURSUANT TO 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.56, 1.97, AND 1.98

Commissioner:

The Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the patents, patent applications, publications, or other information cataloged on the enclosed Form PTO/SB/08A during examination of the above-identified patent application. The order of presentation of the references should not be construed as an indication of importance. These references are submitted for the Examiner's consideration and are submitted pursuant to an Applicant's duty of disclosure under 37 C.F.R. § 1.56.

Copies of all of the cited documents

☐ are enclosed unless otherwise indicated on the enclosed Form PTO/SB/08a.

☐ have been previously furnished to the Office in prior application No. _____, filed _____, which the present application relies upon for an earlier effective filing date under 35 U.S.C. § 120. Therefore, no copies of the cited documents are included herewith pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(d); MPEP § 609(III)(A)(2).

☒ are enclosed unless they are U.S. patents or U.S. patent application publications pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a).

I
BASIS

This information disclosure statement is filed pursuant to

☒ 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(b).
This information disclosure statement is filed either (1) within three months of the filing date of a national application other than a continued prosecution application under 37 C.F.R. § 1.53(d); (2) within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in 37 C.F.R. § 1.491 in an international application; (3) before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits; or (4) before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under 37 C.F.R. § 1.114, whichever event occurs last.

Accordingly, this information disclosure statement requires no fee and no certification.

☐ 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c).
This information disclosure statement is filed after the period specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(b), but before the mailing date of any of (1) a final action under 37 C.F.R. § 1.113; (2) a notice of allowance under 37 C.F.R. § 1.311; or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application.

Accordingly, this information disclosure statement requires either the fee specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(p) for submission of an information disclosure statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c), or a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e).

☐ 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(d).
This information disclosure statement is filed after the period specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c) since a

☐ final action under 37 C.F.R. § 1.113

☐ notice of allowance under 37 C.F.R. § 1.311

was mailed to the Applicant(s) on _____. The issue fee has not been paid herein.

Accordingly, this information disclosure statement requires the fee set forth in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(p) to consider an information disclosure statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(d), and a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e).

If this statement crosses in the mail with an Office action, or is otherwise not in the indicated category of 37 C.F.R. § 1.97, it is respectfully requested that this statement be treated in the next appropriate category and made of record. To the extent required, please treat this paper as a conditional petition for acceptance of the information disclosure statement.

II
FEES

Any required fee is being paid as indicated below by an enclosed check or our deposit account.

☒ No fee is due.

☐ The $____ fee specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(p) for submission of an information disclosure statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c) or (d) is due.

☐ A check is enclosed for the required fee.

☐ Payment by credit card is submitted simultaneously herewith for the required fee.

☐ Please charge the required fee to our deposit account no. 50-1662.

☐ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional required fees or credit any overpayments associated with this information disclosure statement to our deposit account no. 50-1662.

III
CERTIFICATION

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e), I state as follows:

☒ No statement is necessary.

☐ Each item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e)(1).

☐ No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to my knowledge after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e)(2).

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.704(d), I state as follows:

☐ Each item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart application, and this communication was not received by any individual designated in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(c) more than thirty days prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

IV
FOREIGN LANGUAGE REFERENCES

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a)(3)(i), any information disclosure statement filed under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97 shall include a concise explanation of the relevance, as it is presently understood by the individual designated in § 1.56(c) most knowledgeable about the content of the information, of each patent, publication, or other information listed that is not in the English language. The concise explanation may be either separate from the specification or incorporated therein. In compliance with the rules, the Applicant states as follows:

☐ No concise explanation is required since all cited references are in English.

☐ A concise explanation of the relevance of one or more foreign language references is attached.

☐ No English language version was available for one or more foreign language references.

☒ According to the procedural policy adopted by the PTO with regard to disclosure requirements, the Applicant is satisfying the disclosure requirement pursuant to MPEP § 609.04(a)(III) by submitting herewith the following:

- ☒ An English language version of one or more non-English language documents.
- ☐ An English language equivalent application or patent of one or more non-English language applications or patents.
- ☐ An English language version of one or more search reports or other actions by one or more foreign patent offices in one or more counterpart foreign applications, which indicate the degree of relevance found by the foreign office(s).
- ☒ An English language abstract of one or more non-English language references.

The Applicant has not analyzed these documents and, therefore, declines to comment on their relevance at this time.

V
REMARKS

☐ Pursuant to the doctrines established by the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit in *McKesson Information Solutions, Inc. v. Bridge Medical, Inc.*, 487 F.3d 897 (Fed. Cir. 2007) and *Dayco Products, Inc. v. Total Containment, Inc.*, 329 F.3d 1358 (Fed. Cir. 2003), Applicant(s) submit documents herewith reflecting the prosecution history of applications that Applicant(s) believe may be considered related to the present application.

☒ In satisfaction of the duty of disclosure under 37 C.F.R. § 1.56, and as required by M.P.E.P. § 2001.06(b), the Examiner is requested to consider the pending U.S. patent applications listed in "Attachment A," which are owned by the Assignee of the present

application. The pending patent applications may include subject matter similar to that of the present application.

It is respectfully requested that

(1) the Examiner sign the enclosed Form PTO/SB/08a to evidence that the cited information has been fully considered by the Patent and Trademark Office during the examination of this application; and

(2) the citations for the cited information be printed on any patent that issues from this application.

The submission of this information disclosure statement by the Applicant(s) shall not be construed as a representation that a search has been performed or that no other material information under 37 C.F.R. § 1.56 exists. See 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(g).

The submission of this information disclosure statement by the Applicant(s) shall not be construed as an admission that any information cited or referred to herein is, or is considered to be, material to the patentability of one or more of the pending claims in this application pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(b), unless specifically designated by the Applicant(s) as such. See 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(h).

The submission of this information disclosure statement by the Applicant(s) shall not be construed as an admission that any information cited or referred to herein is, or is considered to be, or even qualifies as "prior art" under 35 U.S.C. § 102 with respect to this invention, unless specifically designated by the Applicant(s) as such.

Notwithstanding any statements by the Applicant(s), the Examiner is urged to form his or her own conclusion regarding the relevance of the cited information.

VI
CONCLUSION

The Examiner is encouraged to contact the undersigned attorney to discuss any questions concerning this information disclosure statement or any of the information cited or referred to herein.

Respectfully submitted December 16, 2020

/ Joshua J. Pranckun /

Joshua J. Pranckun, Registration No. 70712
Attorney for Assignee
USPTO Customer No.

Polsinelli PC
1401 Lawrence Street
Suite 2300
Denver, CO 80202
Phone: (303) 583-8469
Fax: (303) 942-3621